

UC-NRLF



B 4 016 954

















# GRAMMAR

OF THE

## BÓRNU OR KÁNURĪ LANGUAGE.

BY

REV. S. W. KOELLE,

MISSIONARY OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY



LONDON

CHURCH MISSIONARY HOUSE,

SALISBURY SQUARE.

—  
1854.

IESA. XVIII, 7.

בָּעֵת הַהִיא יִבְלֶשׂי לַיהוָה זָבָאוֹת עִם מְמַשְׁדָּי וּמוֹרָט  
וּמַעַם נוֹרָא מִן־הוּא וְהִלָּאָה גִּוֵי קוֹקוֹ וּמְבוֹסָה אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵאֻי  
נְהָרִים אֲרָצוֹ אֶל־מְקוֹם שֵׁם־יְהוָה זָבָאוֹת הַר־צִיּוֹן:

PL 8361

.1  
K64  
1854

10

THE REV. HENRY VENN, B.D.,

THE HONORARY CLERICAL SECRETARY OF THE

CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY,

WITHOUT WHOSE COMPREHENSIVE MIND

IT WOULD NEITHER HAVE BEEN COMMENCED NOR COMPLETED,

THIS GRAMMAR

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY AND AFFECTIONATELY INSCRIBED

BY THE AUTHOR.







## PREFACE.

It is with heartfelt gratitude to the Giver of every good gift, that I take up my pen to write a few remarks prefatory to the following Grammar of the Kanuri language, which is spoken in the very heart of Africa. God has been pleased to preserve my life, to bestow fresh health after many an attack of fever, and to grant me energy and perseverance for the pursuit of my solitary and difficult studies, in the unhealthy and enervating climate of Sierra Leone, till the work was thus far accomplished. During my stay on the Western Coast of Africa (from December 1847 till February 1853), the cultivation of the Kanuri language occupied me almost three full years. As there was no native literature, considerable time was required, merely to bring some satisfactory portion of the language before my view: and then what a chaos of forms did it present! I had often just flattered myself to have discovered a rule, when, all at once, a new expression from my interpreter not only disappointed my hopes, but added to the previous difficulties. When I commenced my Kanuri studies, nothing whatever had been written on the grammar of that language, neither was any thing known as to its general character; so that I was left to pursue my way through an entirely unknown region, where every step brought new and strange objects under my notice, contrary to every thing that I could have anticipated. Under such circumstances, two opposite errors are to be avoided: on the one hand there is the danger of being carried away by a desire for the new and the strange, so as to make common things look uncommon; and, on the other hand, that incredulity is to be guarded against, which postulates that the languages, hitherto unknown,

cannot present features actually new. I endeavoured to avoid these extremes by tracing, as far as I was able, the grammatical forms to their proper origin, and by comparing the Kanuri with as many other languages as were ✓ within my reach. But I must confess, that in spite of my honest wish not to *make* a grammar for the Kanuri, but modestly and diligently to *learn* the grammar which the Kanuri has long ago made for itself, it from time to time required fresh exertion to keep my mind free from prejudice and preconceived notions; and whenever a new feature in the language came under my notice for the first time, the sensation which it produced in me was generally that of suspicion, and a desire to attribute it to incorrectness in my interpreter, till a frequent recurrence of the same convinced me of its reality. When, on such occasions, I remonstrated with my interpreter, he used to say in his broken English: "Please, Massa, we country no stand like white man country: white man talk every thing straight, but we can talk one thing in many different ways"—*i. e.* Please, sir, our language is not like white men's language: white men have only one expression for one and the same thing, but we can express the same thing in many different ways." This richness of grammatical forms, especially in the verb, is a real difficulty in the language, and, as may be easily imagined, appeared to me at first rather formidable; and it required no little perseverance and exertion on my part to reduce to order such a confused mass of forms, and to ascertain the often strange peculiarities and fine differences in their use. For be it remembered, that an unlettered negro, speaking the English but very imperfectly, cannot be requested to decline a noun, or conjugate a verb, or to define the difference between given tenses and moods: all these things can only be ascertained by the diligent research of the grammarian himself, and he cannot look to his interpreter for more than the supply of his working materials. Many a rule which is expressed in the grammar by a few words

required days and weeks for its discovery. To learn the Kanuri language, for the first time, is certainly no easy task; and my interpreter often told me that he had never heard a black man, who was not a native of Bornu, speak it correctly; whereas they, the Bornuese, easily learn the language of the surrounding nations. It would be presumptuous in me to suppose that I have fully mastered the entire extent of the multifarious forms of this language, or that this first Grammar should be a perfect one; but this much I hope, that it will be found an essential help to a thorough acquisition of the language, and, eventually, to the translation of the word of God. The spiritual conquest and subjugation of the world is a gradual work, whose achievement employs many hands, and the bare consciousness of contributing in some measure towards that end is satisfactory, even though this contribution consist only in digging the metallic ore from the hidden bowels of the earth, which will afterward be converted into swords of victory. All the actions performed in the service of God for the good of mankind form one organic whole, from which no part may be missing: they are all required to bring about the final consummation, to usher in the eternal sabbath. Hence the meanest service which has a bearing in this direction is honourable, and may be rendered with that cheerfulness and confidence which is always inspired by the conviction that our objects are bound up with a great cause, and that we labour for a brighter future.

This leads to a direct answer to the question: "Why I, as a Christian Missionary, devoted so much time to the study of the Kanuri language?" The Church Missionary Society, who, from a praiseworthy Christian compassion for the most degraded portion of our race, made the evangelization of Africa one of their chief objects, have long ago felt the necessity of bringing to light, and rendering available by grammatical cultivation the languages of that mysterious continent, before they could reasonably expect to christianize

the tribes by which they are spoken. With this view they for many years urged their Missionaries in Sierra Leone to study the native languages; but frequent deaths, and the pressure of other labours, prevented their instructions from producing the desired effect. But Sierra Leone, where slaves from almost every quarter of Africa had found an asylum of liberty, was too inviting a field to be left any longer unoccupied. The Committee appointed one of their Missionaries, the Rev. F. Schön, to devote himself exclusively to the study of languages. He spent several years in the study of the Hausa language, till the failure of his health compelled him to quit this field of labour. The results of his studies are preserved in his Hausa Grammar. It then fell to my lot to become his successor, and, at the same time, to take part in the instruction of the Fourah-Bay Institution. The directions of the Committee required of me, not only to furnish information respecting the whole question of African philology, but also to select some one language for my particular study. In its selection I was to be guided by the probability of "its becoming a sort of key to the study of other languages." At that time, however, the African languages were so little known, that, in deciding this question, I could not be guided by any strictly lingual data. The local Committee of Missionaries agreed with me in its being desirable that I should fix upon the Kanuri or Bornu language, as this was spoken by one of the mightiest nations in central Africa, and in the vicinity of Hausa, of which we already possessed a grammar. Accordingly, I selected one of the most suitable Bornuese of Sierra Leone as my interpreter, and commenced the language. In the progress of my studies it became more and more evident that the Kanuri had no important affinities with other Negro languages, and that, for the present, it cannot be used for direct Missionary purposes, from the fanatical Muhammadan character of the Bornuese. For, whilst Muhammadanism has been waning in Europe, it has experienced a signal revival

in the interior of Africa, owing, as I learnt from my interpreter, to the Pulo movement, which has been in operation since the beginning of the present century. But by the time I had become possessed of this information, I had made such progress in the language, that it was considered advisable that I should proceed still farther, and then publish the results for the benefit of philology, and, as it is hoped, for the benefit of future Missionary enterprise.

The language of this Grammar is the *Kanuri*, as it is spoken in the large province of *Gazir*, in the empire of *Bornu*, or, perhaps more correctly, as it *was* spoken there at the time when my interpreter left his home. This explanation is necessary; for the wars in the interior of Africa are so sanguinary, that whole districts often become depopulated by them, which are afterwards taken possession of by strangers. Whole tribes sometimes flee before their enemies and seek new places of abode. The old people of Sierra Leone often hear, from their newly imported countrymen, that the most radical social and political changes have taken place since they were torn from their native lands. The Kanuri may be considered as *the language of Bornu proper*, although it is not the only language of that country; for just as at present Ireland is united with England in one principality, so, also, the Kanuri or Bornu kings have subjugated many surrounding tribes, of different languages, and annexed their territory to Bornu. But the ancient dynasty of Bornu kings always spoke pure *Kanuri*, which, as being the language of the ruling class, was considered the *national language*. About thirty years ago a new dynasty came to the throne of Bornu. The priest Laminu, after having killed the king with his own hand, ruled the country under the title of Shiekh, and on his death his son succeeded him as king. Shiekh Laminu was a Kanumma (*i. e.* a native of Kanum), and his select soldiers were likewise Kanumbu (*i. e.* natives of Kanum), so that the court language of Bornu, at the present day, is the Kanum dialect, which somewhat differs from and seems to be less pure than the Kanuri of this Grammar.

Respecting the names *Kanuri* and *Bornu* I obtained the following information. Kanuri is the name of the people and of the language, Bornu the name of the country. A man says of himself, either simply, *wáma Kánurì*, "I am a Kanuri;" or *wáma Bórñūma*, "I am a Bornuese;" or *wáma Bórñubē*, "I am of Bornu;" he either says, "I speak Kanuri," or "I speak the language of Bornu." The Kanuris or Bornuese are known under different names to the different Negro tribes with whom they come in contact; thus the Hausas call them *Balébalì*; the Nufes, *Bínō*; the Bodes, *Kágātsan*; and the Akus, *Kánike*.

Bornu proper is divided (or at any rate was so under the late dynasty) into the following *tsédi* or *lárde*, *i. e.* countries or provinces, in all of which the same language is spoken, but, of course, with more or less important dialectical differences:—*Gázir*, "the largest of all;" *Débišāgé*, "next to Gazir in size;" *Máfōni*, "as large as *Débišāgé*;" *Ngumáti*, *Múlgū*, *Hába*, *Ábełam*, *Deia*, *Gúdu*, *Túrō*, *Búlzer*, *Kóreram*, *Māntšimtšim*, *Girgásei*, *Kábū tīlōa*, *Dāleingérib*, *Márma*, *Lábuk*, *Túlīwa*, *Tawólo*, *Deima*, *Dábira*, *Dábāgu*, *Gámboram*, *Késāwa*, *Karawawáru*, *Māgī*—*Bérrem*, *Dásu*, *Keiāwa*, *Bádūma* (not to be mistaken with the Buduma on the Tsáde-islands), *Kádīwa*, *Kébdī*, *Ngígīwa*, *Máfā*, *Ngúdōa*, *Legarwa*, *Bámma*, *Tšérāwá*, *Gámutsō*, *Kaigálwa*, *Tšúntšéná*, *Gubuló*, *Bórgō* or *Bárgō*, *Mélēram*, *Bánōa*, &c. The Bornu empire is bounded on the north by the great desert and the Lake of *Tsáde* (by the *Munios* and others pronounced *Tšáde*); on the west by *Núfe*, *Áfuno* (*i. e.* Hausa), *Bóde*, *Kareikarei*, *Gézeré*; on the south by *Píka* and *Kōána*; on the south-east and east by *Mándara*, *Ngála*, *Múdzugū*, *Gámargū*, *Márgī* and *Báber*.

The province of *Gázir* is so large, that the saying has become proverbial: *kām bēlāntšē Gázir tsénia*, *bēlāntšē gerátē tšerágō*, *i. e.* "If one says that his native place is *Gazir*, he wishes to conceal his native place." To traverse *Gazir* from one end to the other requires several

days. Its capital town is *Gázargumó*, from which *Tapsóúa Magirári*, *Ali Eísam's* birth-place, is at the distance of about one day's journey; and another large town is *Kalígimóram*, from which *Tapsóúa Magirári* is five miles distant. *Gazir* itself is divided into the following smaller districts—*Ngálibūa*, *Kíbire*, *Bārīram*, *Kārīwa*, *Bérber* (containing from twenty to thirty towns and villages), *Bérgem*, *Naugúlam*, *Kálatāwa*, *Modzánganāwe*, *Kábuiwa*, *Kaliári*, *Ngallimári*, *Meivamri*, *Diambóri*, *Kugátsoro*, *Dómāri*, *Mētārammári*, *Mulimári*, *Sáberri*, *Ágedimí*, *Tóróro*, *Dádui*, *Šiál*, *Šégou*, *Álinwa*, *Māgulgé*, *Sánīe*, *Gélermi*, *Mētāram*, *Mógunō*, *Múlintšeri*, *Wótsagal*, &c.

My *interpreter*, who furnished me with the materials on which the Grammar is based, is *Áli Eísami Gázirma*, i. e. *Ali* of *Gazir*, whose mother was *Eisa*, or, according to his English name, *William Harding*, a man of good common sense, of more than ordinary strength of memory, and of an unblameable moral character, although he is merely a *baptized Christian*, without making any special profession of religion. The portrait facing the title page faithfully represents him, as he was sitting with me in my study, from eight to twelve and from one to four, day after day, during the sixty-first, sixty-third, and sixty-fourth years of his age. His age is ascertained in the following way:—According to his marriage certificate, which I have seen, he was brought to *Sierra Leone* by a British cruiser on April 12th, 1818, and this was in about his thirtieth year; for his father, who was a *Muhammadan priest*, informed him, at the commencement of the *Pulo* inroads upon *Bornu*, that his age was nineteen years and seven months; and between this and the time of his being kidnapped five years elapsed, so that he was about twenty-five years old when he was torn from his native country. On his way to the sea he only stopped in *Yoruba*, where he remained about five years, which brings his age, on his arrival in *Sierra Leone*, to about thirty. Accordingly, the year of his birth must have been about 1787 or 1788.

Other incidents of his early life are the following:—He was circumcised in his ninth year, attended a school, where he learnt to read the Koran, from his seventh to his eleventh year. In about his thirteenth year they saw a total eclipse of the sun, which converted day into night, and was considered as an evil omen. The fulfilment of this was recognised in a severe visitation of locusts, and of the pestilence or plague, which happened the year after. In Sierra Leone Ali Eisami lived amongst a good many of his country-people, and had abundant opportunity for speaking his native tongue. At the time of my leaving Sierra Leone, there were still thirty of them alive, and in the years 1820—1830 their number was about 200. But natives of dry and arid countries, as *e. g.* Bornu, Hausa, the Sahara, &c., die very fast in Sierra Leone: their acclimatisation there seems to be almost as difficult as that of Europeans. Besides Ali Eisami, and chiefly with a view of testing his accuracy, I also employed some other Bornu interpreters. One of them had only been five years away from Bornu, and served as corporal in Her Majesty's first West-Indian Regiment. He informed me, that at the time when he was kidnapped, the whole of Gazir was in the hands of the Shoa-Arabs, who had obtained it from Shiekh Laminu under a kind of feudal tenure. It becomes me here to acknowledge the prompt and kind manner with which Major O'Connor, Commander-in-Chief of Her Majesty's forces on the West Coast of Africa, responded to my request, by allowing the said corporal to leave the barracks and come to me daily for several weeks. From thus testing my interpreter by other Kanuris, and from his uniform consistency with himself, I became convinced that he had not forgotten his mother-tongue, but communicated it to me in its purity. The only thing in which I found him a little uncertain, was the quantity of the vowels and the accent; and how easily these are influenced, every body knows, who, after having constantly spoken a foreign language for several years, returns to his native language.



The basis of this Kanuri Grammar is a manuscript literature of about 800 quarto pages, which were dictated to me by my interpreter. They consist of stories, fables, romances, historical sketches, &c. : and all the examples adduced in the Grammar as illustrative of the various rules, with but very few exceptions, are taken from this collection. Two or three weeks after the commencement of my Kanuri studies, I at once entered upon this plan of forming a literature, as the best way of becoming acquainted with the language, and the surest foundation of grammatical investigations. I found my interpreter truly inexhaustible in his narrations; and often when I inquired whether his fountain was not yet dried up, he replied "Please, Massa, word never done." He has brought this stock of knowledge from his native country, where, as he says, men often sit together till late at night, entertaining one another by narrating stories and delivering speeches.

My having marked the accented syllable, and the quantity of vowels, as well as I could ascertain it, and the practice which I have adopted of always illustrating the grammatical rules, will, no doubt, be appreciated by every reader. The Kanuri Vocabulary, which is intended to be printed soon after this Grammar, will have prefixed to it a small collection of Ali Eisan's narrations, which will form useful reading exercises, and furnish opportunity for acquiring a more practical acquaintance with the language.

It gives me much pleasure to advert, in this place, to the only attempt ever made at a Kanuri Grammar besides my own. It proceeded from the pen of the laborious and indefatigable Edwin Norris, Esq.; and I am sure that every one who has seen it will agree with me, that it does him great credit; and that, as Professor Pott said of him in the German *Zeitschrift für das Morgenland*, "he has pretty well made every thing of his materials that can be made of them." He gives a fresh proof in this little work, that his spirit of investigation, far from being discouraged, is rather roused and attracted by what is difficult and abstruse. But the ma—

materials from which his Grammar was derived were of such a nature, that it is impossible the latter could convey a correct representation of the Kanuri language, either in sound or in structure. Those materials are a *translation* of Arabic Dialogues, &c., into Bornu, and the translation is written in *Arabic characters*. Now the Arabic alphabet is utterly incapable of faithfully representing the Bornu sounds; so that no one can read a transcript of Bornu, in Arabic characters, without knowing Bornu beforehand; but Mr. Norris's Grammar goes still farther and gives us an English transcript of the Arabic transcript; the consequence of which is, that the actual Bornu sounds are often *concealed* instead of conveyed by it. Nor is this all. The documents which form Mr. Norris's authority bear evident marks that their author was *not a Kanuri by birth*, but that he had *acquired* this language as a foreigner.

Africa is still an unknown country to us in many respects. Its numerous languages are a wide field, the cultivation of which would be sure to reward the professional philologist with many interesting discoveries. Hitherto the Christian Missionaries have done by far the greater part of the work: may we not expect that linguists will join them in this enterprise? The African linguist has not only an excellent opportunity for enlarging the bounds of philological science, but he, at the same time, materially assists in preparing channels for the spread of that knowledge among the negroes which makes men "wise unto *salvation*." The time is in God's hand; but He graciously places it within our reach, and partly under our control, by permitting us to co-operate with Him in realizing His eternal purposes of love. May we pray and labour for the coming of those blessed days, when all nations and tribes shall hear, in their own tongues, the wonderful works of God!

SIGISMUND WILHELM KOELLE.

GREAT CRESSINGHAM RECTORY, NORFOLK,

June 3, 1854.

## CONTENTS.

---

### CHAPTER I. *Ethnological Relationship of the Kanuri Language*

SECTION	PAGE
1-3. Comparison of the Kanuri with Indo-European and Semitic Languages . . . . .	1
4. Arabicisms . . . . .	7
5. Negrotic Relation . . . . .	8

### CHAPTER II. *Sounds and Orthography.*

6. Orthography . . . . .	9
7. Vowels . . . . .	9
8. Consonants . . . . .	10
9. Scheme of Letters required for the Kanuri .	12

### CHAPTER III. *Euphonic Changes.*

10-12. Change of Vowels . . . . .	13
13-17. Change of Consonants . . . . .	14
18-20. Change arising from the symphony of Vowels and Consonants . . . . .	18

### CHAPTER IV. *Etymology of Substantives.*

21-27. Derivations of Substantives . . . . .	19
28. Formation of the Plural. . . . .	23
29. Declension of Substantives . . . . .	23
30. Gender of Substantives . . . . .	25

### CHAPTER V. *Etymology of Pronouns.*

31. Personal Pronouns . . . . .	26
32. Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	27
33. Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	27
34-36. Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	28
37. Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	30

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER VI. *Etymology of Adjectives.*

SECTION		PAGE
38.	Adjectives derived by the suffix <i>wa</i> . . . . .	31
39.	The same <i>wa</i> forming a sort of Participle or Gerund . . . . .	32
40.	Adjectives in <i>ma</i> . . . . .	33
41.	Adjectives in <i>mi</i> . . . . .	35
42.	Adjectives in <i>ram</i> . . . . .	35
43.	Adjectives in <i>ri</i> . . . . .	36
44.	Inflection of Adjectives . . . . .	37

CHAPTER VII. *Etymology of Numerals.*

45.	List of Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	38
46.	Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	41
47.	Adverbial Numbers . . . . .	42
48.	Indefinite Numerals . . . . .	43

CHAPTER VIII. *Etymology of Verbs.*

I. Derivation of Verbs, §. 49-52.—

49.	Verbs derived from Substantives . . . . .	44
50.	Verbs derived from Adjectives . . . . .	44
51.	Verbs derived from other Verbs . . . . .	45
52.	Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	45

II. Fundamental Forms of the Verb, §. 53-61.—

54.	Radical Conjugation . . . . .	46
55.	Relative Conjugation . . . . .	46
56.	Reflective Conjugation . . . . .	47
57.	Causative Conjugation . . . . .	48
58-60.	Lists of Verbs forming a Causative Conjugation . . . . .	48
61.	Compound Conjugations . . . . .	52

III. The Tenses of Verbs, §. 62. . . . . 52

IV. Common or Subjective Inflection of Verbs, §. 63-86.—

64.	Origin of the terminations of Verbs in <i>nigin</i> . . . . .	54
65-66.	Inflection of Verbs in <i>nigin</i> . . . . .	55

CONTENTS.

SECTION		PAGE
67.	Lists of Verbs with the character <i>m, n, ñ</i> . . . . .	58
68.	Peculiarities of <i>páñgin</i> . . . . .	60
69.	Verbs with <i>se</i> and <i>su</i> . . . . .	61
70.	Division of Verbs in <i>skin</i> . . . . .	62
71-73.	Monosyllabic roots with the termination <i>skin</i> ( <i>dúskin</i> , §. 71, <i>túskin</i> , §. 72, <i>rúskin</i> , <i>núskin</i> , §. 73)	63
74.	Verbs which may be considered either Mono- syllabic or Dissyllabic . . . . .	66
75-79.	Polysyllabic Verbs in <i>skin</i> whose initial is not <i>y</i> . ( <i>ladéskin</i> , <i>lifúskin</i> , §. 75, <i>gámbuskin</i> , <i>káreşkin</i> , <i>pertéşkin</i> , §. 76, <i>káşeşkin</i> , <i>ışeşkin</i> , §. 77, <i>báñúskin</i> , <i>degáskin</i> , <i>géreşkin</i> , §. 78, <i>wáreşkin</i> , §. 79. . . . .	68
80-86.	Verbs in <i>skin</i> , beginning with <i>y</i> . ( <i>yúskin</i> , <i>yéşkin</i> , §. 80, <i>yáşkin</i> , §. 81, <i>yakkáraskin</i> , <i>yēşáskin</i> , <i>yirgáskin</i> , §. 83, <i>yargádeşkin</i> , <i>yákéşkin</i> , §. 84, <i>yétséşkin</i> , <i>yífuskin</i> , §. 85, <i>yembúluskin</i> , <i>yundúskin</i> , <i>yürúskin</i> , <i>yúwüreşkin</i> , §. 86) . . . . .	75
V. Moods of Verbs, §. 87-90.—		
87.	Imperative Mood . . . . .	81
88.	Negative Mood . . . . .	84
89.	Conjunctive Mood . . . . .	87
90.	Participial Mood . . . . .	89
VI. Infinitive and Participles, §. 91-94.—		
91-92.	Infinitive . . . . .	92
93-94.	Active and Passive Participles . . . . .	97
VII. Objective Inflection of Transitive Verbs, §. 95-111.—		
95-101.	Verbs terminating in <i>ñgin</i> . . . . .	99
102-106.	Verbs in <i>skin</i> not beginning with <i>y</i> . . . . .	121
107-111.	Verbs in <i>skin</i> beginning with <i>y</i> . . . . .	129
VIII. Defective Verbs, §. 112.		
CHAPTER IX. <i>Etymology of Adverbs.</i>		
113-114.	Original Adverbs, general and specific . . . . .	141
115.	Converted Adverbs . . . . .	142

CONTENTS.

SECTION	PAGE
116. Deflected Adverbs . . . . .	143
117. Compound Adverbs . . . . .	144
CHAPTER X. <i>Etymology of Postpositions</i> , §. 118.	
CHAPTER. XI. <i>Etymology of Conjunctions</i> .	
119. Original Conjunctions . . . . .	146
120. Converted Conjunctions . . . . .	147
CHAPTER XII. <i>Interjections</i> , §. 121.	
CHAPTER XIII. <i>Propositions</i> .	
122. Simple Propositions . . . . .	148
123-124. Complex Propositions . . . . .	150
125. Means of connecting Propositions . . . . .	153
CHAPTER XIV. <i>Syntax of Substantives</i> .	
126-128. Proper names and titles . . . . .	156
129. Peculiar use of <i>dīnīa</i> , <i>kīma</i> , <i>nā</i> , <i>sānyā</i> . . . . .	160
130-131. Use of the Nominative case . . . . .	161
132-141. Use of the Genitive . . . . .	162
142-149. Use of the Dative . . . . .	169
150. Use of the Accusative . . . . .	173
151. Use of the Locative . . . . .	174
152. Use of the Temporal . . . . .	175
153. Use of the Instrumental . . . . .	176
154. Case-terminations separated from the nouns . . . . .	176
155. Case-terminations affixed to verbs . . . . .	178
CHAPTER XV. <i>Syntax of Pronouns</i> .	
156-162. Personal Pronouns . . . . .	180
163-176. Demonstrative (and relative) pronouns . . . . .	183
177. Interrogative pronouns . . . . .	193
178-186. Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	194
187-189. Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	199
190-192. Indefinite use of certain persons of the verb . . . . .	200
193. Substitution for reflective and reciprocal pronouns . . . . .	202

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER XVI. *Syntax of Adjectives.*

SECTION		PAGE
194-195.	Their connexion with substantives . . . .	203
196.	Their use as substantives . . . . .	205
197-198.	Their want of gradation supplied . . . .	205
199.	Use of Adjectives in <i>wa</i> . . . . .	207

CHAPTER XVII. *Syntax of Numerals.*

200-201.	Their position, connection with <i>kām</i> . . . .	209
202-204.	Their repetition and pleonasm . . . . .	210
205-207.	Use of <i>tīlō</i> , <i>māḡe</i> , <i>mēogu</i> . . . . .	212
208.	Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	215
209-210.	Indefinite Numerals . . . . .	216
211.	Fractional Numerals . . . . .	217

CHAPTER XVIII. *Syntax of Verbs.*

212.	The lack of a Passive Voice supplied . . . .	218
213-216.	The Government of Verbs . . . . .	220
217.	Use of the Aorist . . . . .	225
218-219.	Use of the Perfect . . . . .	226
220-223.	Use of the Indefinite I. . . . .	228
224-228.	Use of the Indefinite II. . . . .	232
229.	Use of the Future . . . . .	238
230.	The lack of Relative Tenses supplied . . . .	238
231-232.	Some Auxiliary Verbs employed to express Tenses . . . . .	239
233.	The affirmative Indicative mood . . . . .	241
234-236.	The negative Indicative mood . . . . .	241
237-241.	The Imperative mood . . . . .	244
242-250.	The Conjunctive mood . . . . .	246
251-253.	The Participial mood . . . . .	252
254.	The lack of a Conditional mood supplied . .	255
255.	The lack of a Subjunctive mood supplied . .	256
256.	The lack of an Optative mood supplied . . .	257
257.	The Indefinite II. converted by following Tenses or Moods . . . . .	258
258-261.	Use and omission of the Infinitive . . . . .	262

CONTENTS.

SECTION		PAGE
262.	The Supine . . . . .	263
263.	The Present or Active Participle . . . . .	265
264.	The Past or Passive Participle . . . . .	266
265.	Use of the Objective Inflection . . . . .	266
266.	Want of a Copula- . . . . .	268
267.	Different modes of translating our verb "to be"	268
268.	Construction of <i>nigin</i> with the verbs of sense .	269
269.	Position of the subject and <i>nigin</i> in quotations	270
270.	The use of <i>teğêreskin</i> . . . . .	272
271.	The use of denominative verbs . . . . .	272
CHAPTER XIX. <i>Certain Suffixes.</i>		
272-279.	The interrogative <i>ba, genya</i> . . . . .	273
280-281.	The predicative <i>go</i> . . . . .	277
282-286.	The emphatic <i>ma, diyê, digê, yê, dê</i> . . . . .	278
CHAPTER XX. <i>Syntax of Adverbs.</i>		
287-288.	Deflected Adverbs . . . . .	282
289.	Specific Adverbs . . . . .	283
290.	<i>lintá, lintárō</i> . . . . .	285
291.	Interrogative Adverbs . . . . .	286
292-295.	The Negative Adverbs <i>bâjō, ganí, áte</i> . . . . .	286
296.	<i>dúgō</i> . . . . .	289
297.	<i>gadi, gei</i> . . . . .	292
298.	<i>ngo</i> . . . . .	292
299.	<i>ngáburō</i> . . . . .	293
300-301.	<i>sō, yāye</i> . . . . .	294
302-303.	Substantives and Verbs used instead of Adverbs,	295
304.	The emphatic Adverb <i>nda</i> . . . . .	297
CHAPTER XXI. <i>Syntax of Postpositions.</i>		
305.	Affinity between Postpositions and Case-terminations . . . . .	298
306.	The Postpositions, <i>gadi, lan, nauiga</i> . . . . .	298
307.	Grammatical forms used instead of Postpositions,	301
308.	Substantives used instead of Postpositions . . . . .	302



CONTENTS.

CHAPTER XXII. *Syntax of Conjunctions.*

SECTION		PAGE
309-314.	Correlative Conjunctions <i>wa—wa, u—u</i> . . . . .	304
315.	<i>ō—ō</i> . . . . .	307
316.	<i>rā—rā, yē—yē, yen—yen</i> . . . . .	307
317.	<i>sō—sō</i> . . . . .	308
318-322.	<i>tšā—kwōya, tšā—tšā, tšā kwōya—kōa</i> . . . . .	308
323.	<i>genya</i> . . . . .	310
324.	<i>'tē</i> . . . . .	311
325.	<i>ya</i> . . . . .	311
326.	<i>yāye</i> . . . . .	312
327.	<i>átē</i> . . . . .	312
328.	<i>átēmā, átēmārō, átēmān</i> . . . . .	313
329.	<i>átēyāye, átēyaérō</i> . . . . .	313
330.	<i>rā</i> . . . . .	314
331-332.	Conjunctions avoided and omitted . . . . .	314

CHAPTER XXIII. *Figures of Speech.*

333.	Ellipsis . . . . .	317
334.	Absolutism and Pleonasm . . . . .	319
335.	Apposition . . . . .	322
336.	Collectives . . . . .	323
337.	Abstractum pro Concreto . . . . .	324
338.	Anakoluthon . . . . .	324
339.	Hendiadyoin . . . . .	324
340.	Synecdoche . . . . .	325
341.	Nomina Conjugata . . . . .	325

## CORRIGENDA.

---

PAGE.	LINE.	
2	18	read <i>kínem</i> for <i>kánem</i> .
14	11	.. <i>ɛ</i> for <i>é</i> .
16	6	.. <i>bèláfì</i> for <i>bèláfì</i> .
16	23	.. <i>rai</i> for <i>ran</i> .
16	29	.. <i>námgin</i> for <i>mámgin</i> .
18	17	.. <i>aboua</i> for <i>aboua</i> .
28	4	.. <i>nda</i> for <i>ndá</i> .
28	last	.. <i>nem</i> , "house," for <i>nem</i> , "horse."
29	last	.. <i>kágentsa</i> for <i>kágentsa</i> .
30	10	.. <i>sóbāndóyē</i> for <i>sóbānódyē</i> .
41	27	.. 7 for 7.
44	14	.. <i>neméngin</i> for <i>neméngin</i> .
47	26	.. <i>tétáskin</i> for <i>tétáskin</i> .
48	15	.. <i>second</i> for <i>third</i> .
48	17	.. <i>But as it is yet possible for</i> <i>But though it is still possible.</i>
51	4	.. { and in some other similar places, read
52	19, 24	.. } <i>any thing</i> for <i>something</i> .
56	13	.. <i>wútsā</i> for <i>wútsá</i> .
61	3	.. <i>pángeiyē</i> for <i>pángeiyē</i> .
64	14	.. <i>yekkéliskin</i> or <i>yekkéliskin</i> for <i>yekéliskin</i> or <i>yekéliskin</i> .
68	6	.. <i>nātuwī</i> for <i>nātuwī</i> .
68	15	.. <i>gágemin</i> for <i>gágemin</i> .
69	6	.. <i>láluwī</i> for <i>láluwī</i> .
71	2	.. <i>tšigáreskō</i> for <i>tšigáreskō</i> .
71	10	.. <i>kibértō</i> for <i>kibért</i> .
71	11	.. <i>kibértē</i> for <i>kibértō</i> .
72	last	.. add after <i>kadiō</i> , and <i>kaššō</i> .
73	11	.. <i>gèreskin</i> for <i>gireskin</i> .
73	21	.. <i>karjáfē</i> for <i>karjáfē</i> .

## CORRIGENDA.

PAGE.	LINE.		
73	28	read	<i>kārgā</i> for <i>kaṛgō</i> .
77	9	. .	<i>kīrgāskō</i> for <i>kīrgāskō</i> .
80	22	. .	<i>yukkāruskin</i> and <i>yukkūruskin</i> for <i>yukūru-</i> <i>skin</i> and <i>yukūruskin</i> .
81	1, &c.	. .	<i>yukkāruskin</i> , &c. for <i>yukūruskin</i> , &c.
81	19, &c.	. .	<i>lēnē</i> , &c. for <i>lēnē</i> , &c.
85	27	. .	<i>śēntsānī</i> for <i>śentsānī</i> .
104	2	. .	<i>māngin</i> for <i>māṅgin</i> .
107	last	. .	<i>mōlēṅgēda</i> for <i>mōlēṅgēda</i> .
108	3	. .	<i>mādeskam</i> for <i>mādeska</i> .
108	13	. .	<i>kālāgeskēda</i> for <i>ālāgeskēda</i> .
124	25	. .	<i>śīdū</i> for <i>śīḍem</i> .
134	22	. .	<i>śēśēsō</i> for <i>śesēsō</i> .
140	7	add	"or <i>arē</i> " after <i>arē</i> .
154	5	read	<i>lēgasgēnyā</i> for <i>lēgasgēnyā</i> .
157	26	. .	<i>Kēlū</i> for <i>Kēlū</i> .
161	10	add	201. after §.
170	19	read	<i>kālaktṣi</i> for <i>kalātṣ</i> .
170	24	. .	<i>bōgedānyā</i> for <i>bōgēdānyā</i>
183	10	. .	<i>būrgōa</i> for = <i>ūrgōa</i> .
187	1	. .	<i>andīrō</i> for <i>āndīrō</i> .
199	20	. .	<i>tsātēiya</i> for <i>tsātēiya</i> .
244	19	. .	<i>pēremnē</i> for <i>pēremnē</i> .
247	3	. .	<i>yākē</i> for <i>yākkē</i> .
256	16	. .	<i>bāgōba</i> for <i>bāgōbā</i> .
271	31	. .	<i>bōbōntsaskē</i> for <i>bōlōntsaskē</i> .



## CHAPTER I.

### ETHNOLOGICAL RELATIONSHIP OF THE KANURI LANGUAGE.

---

§. 1. It has often been observed that the Negro race is not a genuine branch of the human family, and that they occupy a kind of intermediate position between irrational animals and rational man. } This view is not only opposed to the Bible, which speaks of the Negroes as men, but also to the results of an impartial examination of, and a closer acquaintance with, the Negro race itself. The genuine humanity of the Negroes can be proved in a variety of ways; and one of them is the *philological*. We confidently invite every man who can see in language the expression and counterpart of the mind to an examination of the Bornu grammar, and ask whether the richness of its inflection, the precision in the use of its forms, and its whole vital organism, is not an incontestible demonstration that the mind of a people, which daily weaves for its appearance so fitting and so artful a garb, must be allowed to claim fraternity with ours. } And it can by no means be said of the Bornu nation, what, *e. g.*, is true respecting the Phuh, that they are not a genuine Negro tribe: on the contrary, the characteristic Negro features are stronger in the Bornuese than in some of the other Negro tribes.

§. 2. The true humanity of the Negroes can not only be inferred from the inflectional development and the whole grammatical structure of the Bornu language, but also from *particular expressions and phrases* which it has in common with European languages; and which show that Negroes receive

the same impressions of things, and view them in the same light, as Europeans. The following are instances of such expressions—

- múskō yískin*, “ich gebe die hand” = “I shake hands.”  
*néngalī tsúrī*, “die Regenzeit ist eingefallen” = “the rainy season is come.”  
*wu kámmō tsíre yískin*, “I give a man his right.”  
*kām nóngurō yákéskin*, “I put somebody to shame.”  
*tégam yískin*, “I give the breast,” *i. e.* “I suckle.”  
*kámmō múskō ganāgéskin*, “I lay hands on somebody.”  
*ágō díbī kámmō pélēgéskin*, “ich erzeige einem Böses” = “I inflict evil on somebody.”  
*kemár táskin*, “I take courage.”  
*múskō kámbéwa*, “having a free hand, liberal;” from *kámbē*, “free, not a slave;” *comp.* “liberate, liberal.”  
*kām súlweirō táskin*, “I take one for lazy.”  
*tsúrō kábū arásgíben léngín*, “I shall go within six days.”  
*kánem kām gótsín*, “Schlaf übernimmt einen” = “sleep overcomes one.”  
*kángē kām tsétei*, “fever seizes one.”  
*yambúskin*, “I bear,” said of a tree and a woman.  
*káldā kámbē gónín*, “einem den Kopf halten,” *i. e.* “to spoil one by always taking his part.”

§. 3. Besides the affinity in grammatical forms, and the coincidence in certain expressions, the Bornu language is also connected with Indo-European and Semitic languages by a considerable number of roots. This radical affinity is so extensive, that it cannot be considered as merely accidental. Its cause can only be twofold: it is either owing to the sameness with which impressions are received from the external world, and with which these impressions are expressed again; or there must be a genealogical connexion between the cognate roots of African, Asiatic, and European languages. In both cases it argues the true humanity of the Negro race. If we turn to the Bible, the only authentic account of the original

history of mankind, and there read of a primitive universal language (וַיְהִי כָל-הָאָרֶץ שְׂפָה אֶחָת וּדְבָרִים אֶחָדִים), and a consequent sudden and miraculous "confusion of tongues" (בְּלִל יְהוָה שִׁפְתַּי כָּל-הָאָרֶץ), it appears natural to account for the radical affinity in a genealogical way. But perhaps neither the genealogical nor the psychological way, taken separately, sufficiently accounts for the whole extent of the radical affinity; and the relation between the human mind and language will lead us to a combination of both of them.

We now give a list of Bornu roots which are evidently cognate with either Indo-European or Semitic roots, or with both.

*aba*, father; C. אָבָא: H. אָב; A. أبو; S. पिता; to which Bopp remarks, *puto*, a. r. *φα*, nutrire, (cf. *bú-skin*, "I eat"). G. πατήρ, L. pater, G. Vater, E. father.

*áji*, which, what. The *j* of this root has become *m* in the Semitic, and either *p* or *k* in the Indo-European languages. Hence we may here compare H. בִּיה; A. مَا; S. क; L. quis; Gr. πῶς, πῶσος, G. was, wer, wo; E. again aspirated, who, what.

*am*, people; H. אָם; A. عَامَة.

*áte* and *'te*, this; H. זֶה; A. ذَا; S. तस्य; Gr. τίς, τὸ; G. der, dieser; E. the, this.

*bul*, white; H. בָּר; A. بَر; S. सूर; L. purus, verus, albus, G. bar, wahr; Sax. fullian = to whiten; E. fuller, pale, pure.

*bú-skin*, I eat; *kómbū*, food; S. *φα*, servare, sustentare; Gr. βῶν, βόσκω; L. pa-bulum; G. füttern, Futter; E. feed, food.

*dêrî-ñgin*, I turn round; H. דָּוַר, דָּוַר, דָּוַר; A. دَار.

*dînā*, world; A. دُنْيَا.

*dî-skin*, E. I do; G. ich thue.

*dur*, tribe, family; H. דָּוַר, age, generation; דָּוַר circle, as of society; A. دَهْر, time, age.

*fāri*, top; S. पर summus, परम्, उपरि; Gr. ὑπὲρ, πρὶν; L. primus, prior, super; G. fern; E. far.

*fār-ṅin*, I pass over, cross; H. עָבַר; A. عَبَرَ; S. पार, a. r. प, transjivere; Gr. περαινῶ, πέραν, πόρος; L. per; G. fahren; E. fare.

*gāru*, city-wall; H. קָרָר.

*gā-gēskin* and *gā-skin*, I enter; S. ग; Goth. gaggā; G. eingehen; E. go in.

*gār-ṅin*, I join closely; H. קָרַב, to meet; A. قَرَا, collegit, congressit.

*gūl-ṅin*, I tell; L. कुर, कुरा, word; Punjabi गल word; Gr. ἀγγέλλω (= ἀνα-γέλλω), καλέω; L. garrere; Old G. gellan = timire; G. girren; E. call.

*kal* and *kálma*, a good-for-nothing fellow; H. קָל, light, קָלָן, contempt, shame.

*kábū*, leaf; H. עָפָה, id.

*kām*, man (name of the species); A. قَوْمٌ tribe, people, جِنْسٌ, man; S. जन; Gr. γένος; L. genus, generare, homo.

*kāti*, filth; G. Koth.

*kār-ṅin*, I approach; H. קָרַב, to meet; A. قَرَا, collegit.

*keārī*, old man; S. जर्त; Gr. γέρων; G. greis; E. grey.

*kélē*, a pit for watering cattle; H. בְּרֵה, cistern, pit; A. قَرُو, id.

*kēli-ṅin*, I fold up, roll together; H. הוּל, twist, whirl; A. حَالَ, be turned.

*kērē-ṅin*, I choose; S. कृ; L. cernere; G. küren, Willkür, Kur-fürst.

*kērī*, mountain; H. קָר; A. هور; S. गिरि; Gr. ὄρος, Bopp: fortasse e γόρος; Slav. gora.

*kímel*, beer, fermented liquor; H. קָפָר; A. حَمْرَةٌ.

*koló-gēskin*, I lock; H. בָּלַע, to shut up, בְּלֵא, prison; A. كَلَاءٌ, custodia; Gr. κλείω, κλείς; L. claudo, clavis.



*kóro*, ass; S. खर; Per. خر.

*kríge*, war; S. कृ, offendere, occidere; G. Krieg.

*kal*, cavity; G. hohl, Höhle; E. hollow.

*kórkor* and *kúvī*, circle, orb; *kórkor-ñgin*, I turn round in a circle; H. כַּפֵּר for כְּפִיר, circle, כְּפִיר, כְּפִיר; A. كَرَكِر, convertit molam; كَر, recurrit.

*lā* (usually "*lan*," i. e. *lā* with the locative termination), on, upon; compare also *ka-lā*, head, in the Semitic languages, by way of transposition: H. על, on, up, עלה, ascend; A. عال.

*lē-ñgin*, I go; S. इत्, ire, jacere; Gr. ἐλάω; G. eilen Fr. aller.

*lógō*, petition; H. לָעַג, to stammer; A. لَعَا, elocutus est;

S. लोक् loqui, लोच्, रुच्, rogo; L. rogo; E. interrogate.

*mbē-tši*, is, an impersonal verb, of which *tši* is the termination 3d. per. sing., *m* a prosthetic consonant, and *bē* the root; Chal. הָנָה; H. הָנָה for הָנָה; S. भू; φύω; L. fui, fu-turis; G. bi-n; E. be; Hindust. هونا.

*nā*, place; H. נִשְׂתָּה, seat, habitation; comp. *nām-ñgin*, I sit down; H. נִשְׂתָּה and נָה, to sit, dwell (נָה).

*ñdā*, ad. here, there, conj. then. The *n* being prosthetic, we have here again the wide-spread demonstrative root, as in Eng. there, then; G. da; cf. "J. Grimm's Deutsche Gramm." Vol. iii. p. 176.

*nemē*, saying; *nemē-ñgin*, I say; H. נָמָה, נָמָה; A. نَام.

*nēm-ñgin*, I am silent, quiet; *ká-nēm*, sleep; H. נָמָה,

נָמָה; A. نَام, نوم.

*nō-ñgin*, I know; S. ज्ञा; Gr. γι-γνώ-σκω, ἴστέω, ἴσθες; L. nōsco, gnarus; E. know, notorious.

*nū-skin*, I die; S. नश्, mori; Gr. νόσος, νέκυς; L. nex, necare; Hib. nas, death; Goth. nau-s, dead.

*ñgāl-ñgin*, I measure; H. כָּלָה; A. كَال.

*ñgāñjō*, back; H. גָּב; A. جَبَب, sectio gibbi camelini.

*ñgúrgulē*, throat; S. गल, गृ, deglutire; L. gula, collum; G. Kehle, Gurgel; E. gorge, gullet, gargle.

*pád-geskin*, I wander, am lost, die; H. רָבַדְּ, to stray, perish; A. اَدَسَ; S. पद् and पय्; Gr. ποῦς, ποδ-ὸς; L. pes, pedis; G. Fuss, Pfad; E. foot, path.

*patsár-ñgin*, I interpret; H. פָּתַר.

*pē*, cow, cattle; S. पा, sustentare, comp. bú-skin, I eat; Gr. βούς, βοῦς, which Bopp derives from गौ, cow; L. bos; Isl. fé; G. Vieh.

*pér-ñgin*, I spread; S. स्पृश्, or, perhaps, पृ, implere; Gr. πλῆρω; L. spargo; G. breiten spreizen; E. spread, broad.

*pérō*, girl; S. पुत्र; Gr. παῖς, ποῖρ; L. puer; E. boy.

*rak*, straight; S. रक्ष् servare, रञ् regere; Gr. ἀρκέω, L. rego, rectus; G. recht, richten; E. right.

*rará-ñgin*, I revile, curse; *rú-ñgin*, I despise; H. רָרַף, to curse; A. اَبْهَر, abhorruit.

*rō*, life, soul; H. רִיחַ; A. رِيح.

*rú-skin*, I see; H. רָאָה; A. رَاى.

*sámma*, all; *tsám-gin*, I collect; S. सम्; Gr. σύν; L. cum, summa; G. sammt, sammeln; E. sum.

*sán-gin* (*ši sák-tšin*) I strain; H. נָקַף, id.; A. زَقَّى, wine newly strained; S. सिञ्, humectare, emittere; Gr. σακκέω; L. saccio; G. seihen, seigen.

*sánī*, shepherd; S. सानु, planities in vertice montis; G. Senne, which is only applied to shepherds of the high mountains.

*ši*, he, she, it; H. הִי; A. هِى; S. सः; L. is; G. sie; E. he, she.

*šár-ñgin*, I tear, split; S. शृ, dirumpere; कृ, findere; Gr. κείρω; G. scheeren, Schere, Schaar; E. share, short.

*tamó-ñgin*, I finish; H. תָּמַף; A. تَمَّ.

*tár-ñgin*, I strew; S. स्तृ, sternere; L. sterno; G. Strohi, streuen; E. straw, strew.

- tár-igin*, I dry; S. तृप् ; Gr. τέρσομαι; L. torreo; G trocken, Durst; E. dry, drought, thirst.
- tólí*, height, top; S. तुल् ; Gr. τλάω; Goth. thula; L. tollo; G. Dulden, Ziel; E. tall.
- tsán-igin* (*ši tsák-tšin*), I cover; S. सक् ; L. tego; G. decken, Dach; E. protect.
- tsám-igin*, I fast; H. צַיִם; A. صَامَ.
- woladí*, servant, as opposed to slave; H. وَلَدٌ, child; A. وَلِيدٌ, natus and servus.
- wúra*, great; *wurá-igin*, I grow up; S. भृरि and पुरु, multus; Gr. πολὺς; L. multus, plus; Hib. ur, very; G. viel; E. more.
- yíl-igin*, I shout, hollow; *yír-igin*, I cry, wail; Gr. ὀλολύζω; L. ululo; G. gellen; E. yell.
- yim-bálu-skin* (*bulu* being the root), I fill; S. पृ, पृ, पूल् ; Gr. πίμπλημι; L. pleo, plenus; G. füllen, voll; E. full, fill.

§. 4. From the roots just enumerated a number of others have to be kept quite distinct, although they are common to the Kanuri and the Arabic. These are words which originally formed no part of the Kanuri language, but were adopted at the introduction of Muhammadanism, and through intercourse with Arabic-speaking people. A great proportion of them are therefore religious terms. But they are now so thoroughly naturalized, that the Bornuese use them as freely as if they had always been part of their own language; and even change and inflect them like all the other words, generally unconscious of their Arabic origin. We here subjoin a list of such *Arabicisms in Kanuri*.

<i>ádim</i> , eunuch; A. خَادِمٌ.		<i>áram</i> , s. what is prohibited
<i>átši</i> , s. a pilgrim; A. حَاجِي.		A. حَرَمٌ.
<i>állu</i> , s. God; A. اللّٰه.		<i>árgulam</i> , s. pen; A. قَلَمٌ.

*dinār*, s. gold ; A. دِينَار.

*kíjār*, s. grave, cemetery ;

A. قَبْر.

*kará-ñgin*, I read ; A. قَرَأَ.

*káñiri*, s. infidel ; A. كَافِر.

*lárde*, s. the earth ; A. أَرْض.

*málaka*, s. angel ; A. مَلَك.

*míá*, hundred ; A. مِئَة.

*nábī*, s. prophet ; A. نَبِي.

*rátal*, s. pound ; A. رَطْل.

*sádāga*, s. alms ; A. صَدَقَة.

*sálu*, s. prayer ; A. صَلَاة.

*salám*, s. peace ; A. سَلَام.

*sālī-ñgin*, I pray ; A. صَلَّى.

*tsánna*, s. heaven ; A. جَنَّة.

§. 5. Here, also, would be the place for characterizing the relation of the Kanuri to other African languages ; but as these are still so partially and so imperfectly known, we had better refer the reader to the "Polyglotta Africana," which facilitates a comparison on a limited scale.

## CHAPTER II.

## SOUNDS AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

§. 6. The orthography used in this Grammar follows the system proposed by Professor Lepsius of Berlin, which we found best adapted to the wants of Missionaries and Linguists who have to reduce unwritten languages, because it is based on sound physiological and phonetic principles, consistent in the selection of the signs it contains, and easily admits of an addition of new signs where occasion may require them.

§. 7. The Bornu language, in common with all other languages, has the three radical or fundamental vowels *i*, *a*, *u*, respectively answering to the three organs of speech by which the articulation of consonants is chiefly effected, viz. larynx, tongue, and lip. But in the transition from one of these chief vowels to the other, the language presents to us several medial sounds which likewise require distinct signs. Of these medial vowels, three lie between *a* and *i*, viz. *ɛ*, *ɛ̄*, *e*; and three between *a* and *u*, viz. *ɑ*, *ɑ̄*, *o*.

The sound of *ɛ*, which is also found in other African languages, is a deep pectoral sound, which is produced when we pronounce the *i* of "girl" or "fir" as deep in the chest as we possibly can. In many cases, if not in all, this *ɛ* has arisen in Bornu from *i*, just as the corresponding sound did in English. It is therefore often changed back into *i*, if required by the law of euphony; and sometimes becomes *u*, which is likewise pronounced deep in the throat. To the ear the sound *ɛ* appears much nearer *e* than *i*, and therefore its sign is a modification of *e*.

Another deep pectoral sound is *ɑ*. It is closely allied to *ɛ*, and is produced by uttering a short *a* as deep in the chest as we possibly can. Sometimes these two sounds approach each other so nearly that one feels at a loss whether to write

*e* or *a*. But *a* frequently comes very near the common *a*, which is never the case with *e*. In short, we may say *e* is a deep pectoral *e* or *i*, and *a* a deep pectoral *a*. These two sounds might also be considered as the indefinite fundamental vowel, lying at the base of all the other vowels; and it is to remind us of this that we subscribe to *e* and *a* the little ring by which Professor Lepsius represents the imperfect original vowel.

Neither can the line of demarcation between *e* and *ė* be so distinctly drawn. The first is sounded as in "pen," and the second as *a* in "hat," or *ü* in the German "Väter." But in the flow of language they often approach each other very closely, and sometimes one may even hear them used promiscuously.

A similar relation, as between *e* and *ė*, is sustained by *o* and *ȯ*. The former is the *o* of "bone," and the latter the *a* of "water" or "salt." It is sometimes difficult to decide whether *ȯ* or *oa* is pronounced.

The fundamental vowels *i*, *a*, *u*, are sounded as in German; and it may here be remarked, that the first of them is often resolved into *y*, and the last into *w*; and also, that when, after the common rules of grammar, *i* ought to be followed by *y*, and *u* by *w*, the letters *y* and *w* are generally omitted.

Diphthongs have for their final sound either *i* or *u*, and the following are those used: *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*; *au*, *ou*. When they receive the accent ('), it is always placed on the last of the two vowels, as in Greek, *e. g.* *meírō*.

§. 8. Of the *Consonants*, those called *Liquids* are next in order to the vowels, having in common with them, that the voice is the material element of their sound. They are, *m*, *n*, *ñ* (= *ng* in "king"), *l*, and *r*. Assigning them severally to the organs of speech, *m* shows its labial character by combining with *b*; *n* its lingual character by combining with *d*; whereas *ñ*, *l*, and *r*, can come into immediate contact with the gutturals *k* and *g*. In Bornu, the strong, vowel-like quality of the liquids (cf. §. 18 of "Organism der Sprache," von K. F. Becker) shows itself

especially by the capability of *ú, n, m*, being prefixed respectively to *g, d, b*, thus forming a sort of syllable by themselves, and even assuming the accent of the word, *e.g. ñgō, ñgala, ñda, mbétšì*, and by their frequent employment in terminating words, a position which the language predominantly assigns to vowels, and, only in a few peculiar cases, also *k, g, and t*.

As the voice is the material element of the Vowels and Liquids, so the breath is the material element of the *Spirants* and *Mutes* (*vid. Becker's Organism, §. 17.*). The difference between the *Spirants* and the *Mutes* is this, that, in uttering the *Mutes*, the breath is first stopped by entirely shutting the channel of the mouth, and then suddenly suffered to break forth with vehemence (whence they are also called *eruptive* or *explosive*); whereas, in uttering the *Spirants*, the breath is not interrupted, but only pressed or impeded, by narrowing the channel of the mouth, whence they are called by Prof. Lepsius "*fricantes,*" or "*fricativæ.*" The greater or less force with which the breath is suffered to break forth constitutes the difference between *sharp* and *flat Mutes*. The *Guttural Mutes* are: *k*, sharp, as in "key;" *g*, flat, as in "go." The *Lingual Mutes* are: *t*, sharp, as in "tool;" *d*, flat, as in "do." The *Labial Mutes* are: *p*, sharp, as in "pain;" *b*, flat, as in "be." It must be remarked, however, that in Bornu the flats and sharps of the *Guttural* and *Labial Mutes* are not kept so distinct as in English, but are suffered to approach each other closely, or even to be sometimes interchanged, as in German.

Of the *Spirants*, or "*fricantes,*" *h* is not influenced by any one articulating organ more than by another, and therefore might take its place in any of the local classes. It is always sounded as in "hothouse." To the *Guttural class* belongs *y*, sounded as in "yes:" to the *Lingual class*, *s*, sounded as in "see;" *z*, as in "zeal;" *š* as *sh* in "show:" and to the *Labial class* belong *f* and *w*. The last of these has the sound as in "world;" and the first as in "father." It appears, however, that the Bornu language does not possess so firm and solid an

*f* as we do, but one more like that of the Hebrew language; for words which in one district are pronounced with *b* or *p*, are pronounced with *f* in another; yea, one and the same individual may be found promiscuously to interchange *f* and *b* or *p*, not to mention the *regular* change of *f* into *p*, according to §. 15. It would therefore not be amiss, if, in Bornu, we would write *bh* or *ph* (*b̂* or *p̂*), instead of *f*.

The Kanuri language has three *compound Consonants* which are analogous to the diphthongs among vowels, and therefore might be called *Consonantal Diphthongs*. The component elements are, first, a Lingual Mute, and then a Lingual Spirant, as, *dz*, *ts*, *tš*. The first of these three compound Consonants is used sparingly, and then it may be interchanged promiscuously with the simple *z*. It would bear the same relation to *dž* (the sound of *j* in "join") as *ts* does to *tš*, but the language does not seem to have developed *dž*, as distinguished from *tš*. The compounds *ts* and *tš* are of frequent occurrence. The former answers to the German *z* in "Zeit," and the latter to the common pronunciation of *ch* in "church." It has been contested among Englishmen themselves whether the *ch* in "church" is a simple palatal sound, or whether it is a compound. Perhaps the decision is not quite so easy. In Kanuri, also, *tš* has sometimes arisen from a palatal *k* or *g* (*k̂*, *ĝ*); but that it is really a *compound* sound is evident from the circumstance, that the same law which changes *s* into *š*, changes *ts* into *tš* (cf. §. 18.).

§. 9. The signs required for writing the Kanuri language may therefore be represented by the following scheme—

	GUTTURAL.	LINGUAL.	LABIAL.
Fundamental Vowels,	<i>i</i> .	<i>a</i> .	<i>u</i> .
Subordinate Vowels .	<i>ɛ, e, ɛ̂.</i>	<i>ɔ, o, ô.</i>	
Liquids . . . . .	<i>ñ.</i>	<i>l, n, r.</i>	<i>m.</i>
Mutes {Sharp . . . . .	<i>k.</i>	<i>t.</i>	<i>p.</i>
{Flat . . . . .	<i>g.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>b.</i>
Spirants . . . . .	<i>y, h.</i>	<i>s, z, š.</i>	<i>w, f.</i>



The Compound Sounds of the Kanuri language are the following—

1. Vowel Diphthongs : *ai, ei, oi, ui; au, ou.*

2. Consonantal Diphthongs : *dz, ts, tš.*

The accented syllable is indicated by the acute accent, *e.g.* *ába, kámū.*

Long vowels are marked, as usually, by (ˉ) *e.g.* *ā*; all vowels without this sign are short.

Nasalization is indicated by a circumflex (˘) *e.g.* *mĩũ.*

---

## CHAPTER III.

### EUPHONIC CHANGES.

---

§. 10. These are most conveniently considered under the following three heads, viz. as referring either to the vocalism, or consonantism, or the organic combination of both.

#### I. CHANGES IN THE SYMPHONY OF VOWELS.

§. 11. When the *contact of vowels is immediate*, the changes consist either in the *contraction* or *ejection* of vowels. The former takes place when two *a*'s meet; *e.g.*

*nām wurábērō*, "to the place of the great people," for *nā ām*, &c.

*kóānēm̄mō lētsenāte*, "the man who went southward," for *kóā ānēm̄mo*, &c.

*átemágo*, "this is something," for *átemā ágō*.

The *ejection of vowels* can be either by *apocope* or *aphaeresis*.

Instances of *apocope* :

*e* ejected : *mána lāg' áte*, "this wicked word."

*u* ejected : *fug' ámberō*, "before the people."

*e* ejected : *kal' afi dískín?* "what shall I do then?"

*wol' ámmō p̄l̄ēḡgm̄m̄i*, "do not show it to the people."

Instances of *aphæresis* :

*sádaga* 'śám̄bē, "alms of Asham."

*kóá* 'ba 'tár̄itsa, "the man, Father Ataritsa," for *kóá ába Atár̄itsa*.

§. 12. Even when the contact of vowels is not immediate they influence each other; e.g.

*a* sometimes becomes *o* when followed by *o*: *másk̄in*, "I take," has in the infinitive *mógō* for *mágō*; and in the Aorist, *kímoskō*, *kímāgem*, *kímogō*, *kímagē*, *kímagū*, *kémogō*.

*é* has a tendency to become *i* before *e*: *pértse*, "his horse," nom. *pértsiyē*, gen. *pértsiḥē*; *ṇem abántsiḥē*, "his father's house," for *abántseḥē*; *tsúrō bundegiberō*, "into the gun," from *bundege*, "gun."

*e* becomes *u* before *o*: *abántsurō*, "to his father," from *abántse*; *tatoáturō*, "to the children," from *tatoátē*; *kōganawántsusō*, "all his soldiers," from *kōganawántse*; *ṇemtálagātí kwōya*, "if it is poverty," from *tálagātē*; *kúlitu rōntse*, "this insect's life," from *kúlitē*.

*e* becomes *u* or even *o* before *u*: *létsu, rántsen náptši*, "he goes and sits down by himself;" *kúrrū*, "sight," for *kérrū*; *kúllugō*, "exit," for *kéllugō*; *kuntsúrō*, "fall," for *kentsúrō*; *kómbū*, "food," for *kénbū*.

*i* sometimes becomes *e* before *i*: *tigényin*, "in my skin," from *tígi*; *dískin*, "I do," has in the relative conjugation *yegdléskin*.

## II. CHANGES IN THE SYMPHONY OF CONSONANTS.

§ 13. The object of these changes is always to prevent the meeting of two incompatible consonants. This object is effected in a fourfold way; viz. either by changing one of the incompatible consonants into the other, or by merely adjusting it to the other, or even by dropping one altogether, or by inserting a vowel between the incompatible

consonants. These four cases have now to be illustrated by examples.

1. *Assimilation, or rather Identification of Consonants.*

§ 14. It will be observed, that the letters transformed into others are only *n*, *r*, *w*; for the few cases where *d* and *t* are assimilated are peculiar, and restricted to some specific adverbs. In producing the examples, we first take those cases in which the preceding, and, secondly, those in which the following, of two meeting consonants exercise the assimilating influence.

*g* changes a following *r* into *g*: *síntoggō* for *súntogrō*,  
“to a broom.”

*k* a following *r* into *k*: *rákkō*, for *rákrō*, “right;” *tsákkō*  
for *tsákrō*, “exactly.”

*l* a following *n* and *r* into *l*: *álli*, for *álni*, “my manner;”  
*áigallēm*, for *áigalnēm*, “thy sense;” *tsáinei búllin*, for  
*búlnyin*, (or *búlnin*), “with white cloths;” *tsállēmīn*, for  
*tsálnēmīn*, “thou cuttest;” *dándallō*, for *dándalrō*, “to the  
mosque.”

*m* a following *r* and *w* into *m*: *nēm̄mō*, for *nēm̄rō*, “to the  
house;” *kámmō*, “to a man;” *šyá meíramma* for *meí-  
ramwa*, “he and the princess;” *mámma*, for *málamwa*,  
“priests;” *agōnēm̄mā kwōya*, “if thou hast any thing.”

*s* changes a preceding *d* into *s* in the word *tsé̄b̄essō*, for  
*tsé̄bedsō*, “all day long.”

*n* a preceding *t* into *n*; as, *nēm̄ tsé̄lam pē̄nyin*, for *pēt-  
nyin*, “in a very black house;” *kálugū kalí taré̄nyin*,  
for *taré̄tnyin*, “in a very blue shirt.”

*l* a preceding *r* into *l*: *al̄ lé̄nye*, for *ar̄*, “come, let us  
go.”

*r* sometimes a preceding *n* into *r*: *nik̄lar rā tsé̄din*, for  
*nik̄lan*, “by water or by land;” *áfi nán̄ter rá̄gem?* for  
*nán̄ien*, “what dost thou want of me?”

2. *Permutation or Adjustment of Consonants.*

§. 15. This takes place not only when consonants are in

immediate contact, but also sometimes when they are separated by vowels.

The permuting letters in immediate contact are, *b, g, m, n, ñ, t*; and the permuted letters are, *g, k, m, n, ñ*. Besides this, it must be remembered that all consonants permute an *f* following into *p*; e. g. *áfî?* "which?" *bèláfî?* "which town?" but *yímpî?* "which day?" *pérpî?* "which horse?" *dálpî?* "which ram?"

*M* changes a following *k* into *n*: *kámā*, "woman," but *ñemnáñmū*, "womanhood;" *kúrugū*, "long," but *ñemnú-rugū*, "length;" *kéñtšî* "slave," *ñemméñtšî*, "slavery;" *kúra*, "great," *ñemwúra*, "greatness."

*ñ* changes a following *k* into *g*: *kíruskō*, "I saw," but *ñígū ñíruskō*, "I saw thee."

The letters *b, g, n, t*, adapt to themselves an immediately preceding *g, k, m, n, ñ*, in the following manner—

*b* sometimes permutes a preceding *n* into *m*: *páton*, "at home;" *pátom bágō*, "not at home;" *wóltin*, "it returns;" *wóltim bágō*, "it will never return."

*g* sometimes *n* into *ñ*: *šímlañ ganí*, "not on the eye;" *būyéñ gonō*, "he said, We will eat it."

*n* sometimes *g* and *k* into *ñ*: *kéðeñ ñéñtše*, "he keeps silence;" *patáñini*, "my gruel;" *sútonñi*, "my broom," from *kéðeg, pátag, sítog*; *ráñini*, "my due," from *rak*. But when the *n* has thus done its work, it is generally dropped in all those cases where it is immediately followed by another consonant; as, *súntonitše*, "his broom," for *súntonñtše*; *rán di*, "mid-day," for *rán ñdi*.

*ts* and *tš*, in certain verbs, *m* into *p*: *mámgin*, "I sit," but *náptšín* and *náptsei*.

*ts* and *tš*, in certain verbs, *n* into *t*: *mámgin*, "I draw tight," but *máttšín, máttsei*.

*ts* and *tš*, in certain verbs, *ñ* into *k*: *kálañgin* "I turn," but *kálaktšín, kálaktsei*.

The cases of consonantal permutation *without immediate contact* are restricted to the inflection of verbs.

Verbs beginning with *b* always change the aorist prefix *ki* into *gi*, as *gibáskō* for *kibáskō*.

The personal and temporal prefixes of verbs in *skin*, viz. *tse*, *tsa*, *tši*, *kí*, by virtue of their initial consonant, permute the initial *k* and *p* of verbal roots respectively into *g* and *b*; as, *tsegúšín*, *tsagúšín*, *kigásō* *tšigásō*, from *kásekin*, "I run;" *tsebértín*, *tsabértín*, *kibértō*, *tšibértō*, from *pertéskin*, "I pluck."

### 3. Ejection of Consonants.

§. 16. This only happens, when, either by grammatical inflection, or by the common syntax of words, three consonants would meet, without an intervening vowel. The consonant ejected is always the middle one. That middle position can be occupied by only three letters, viz. *m*, *n*, and *ni*.

Thus *m* may be ejected, when it ought to stand between *n* and *b*; as, *pántсібѣн* 'bétši, "it was in his house."

*n* is ejected—

between *l* and *d* or *t*; as, *áldē*, for *áldndē*, *áltsa*, for *álnntsa*;

between *m* and *d* or *t*; as, *kām*, 'dágū? *ámtse* for *ámntse*;

between *n* and *y*; as, *šiterányen* 'yē, "we will bury him, said we."

between *ni* and *d*; as, *rai* 'dí, "midday."

*ni* is ejected between *m* and *g*; as, *ám* 'gásō, "all people;" *kátšim* 'gúbu, "much grass;" *němgála* for *něm* 'úgála, "goodness."

### 4. Insertion of Vowels, to prevent assimilation, ejection, or hard combination of consonants.

§. 17. Thus the vowels *a* and *e* may be inserted—

*a*, e. g. *ámāni*, *ámānem*, *ámāntse*, *ámāndē*, *ámāndō*, *ámāntsa*, for *ámni*, *ámnem*, *ámntse*, *ámdē*, *ámdō*, *ámntsa*.

*e*, e. g. *áleni*, *álenem*, *álentse*, *álendē*, *álendō*, *álentisa*, for *állí*, *állem*, *áltse*, *áldē*, *áldō*, *áltsa*.

### III. CHANGES ARISING FROM THE SYMPHONY OF CONSONANTS AND VOWELS.

#### 1. Change of Consonants.

§. 18. *s* is always changed into *š*, and consequently *ts* into *tš*, whenever it ought to stand before *i* and *e*, e. g. *kášeškin*, "I run," but, *ši tšegášin*; *gúltse*, "he tells," but, *gúltši*, "he has told;" *yírēskin*, "I cry," but, *ši tšírín*, "he cries." Only the *s* of the third person of the possessive pronoun often remains unchanged, so that we have, e. g., *abántsiyē* and *abántšiyē*. This is the law which regulates the change of *s* into *š* in the indefinite, perfect, and future tenses of verbs terminating in *seŋgín* and in several other forms.

*w*, when it ought to stand between two *a*'s, is sometimes changed into *u*, and then unites with the preceding *a* in the diphthongs *au* or *ou*, e. g. *daúa* for *dáwa*, "having meat;" "*abántsa yántsoúa* for *yantsáwa*, "their father and mother;" *šyúa aboúa*, "she and the father."

#### 2. Change of Vowels.

§. 19. This is confined to the conversion of *e* into *u*. *e* is often changed into *u*, when followed—

By *m*: *tulōntsátumā* for *tulōntsátēmā*, "this is their only one;" *áfíyayē dímtumā* for *dímtēmā*, "whatever thou mayest do."

By *w*: *dātu wátsi*, "it will not stand;" *meitu wásili*, "the king is a white man;" *mánānēm kolótu wángō*, "I will not transgress thy word." When this change of *e* into *u* takes place in consequence of a prefix or affix, so that *e* and *w* belong to one and the same word, the *w* is frequently dropped: *rōntsúa*, "alive," for *rōntséwa*, "having his life;" *búltua* for *búltewa*, "hyenas;" *tsuárin*, "he is sick," for *tšewárin*, cf. §. 20.

#### 3. Ejection and Insertion of Consonants.

§. 20. The two vowel-consonants, or semi-vowels, *w* and *y* are often dropped between two vowels, the latter of which is

a. Thus, *w* is dropped, when preceded by the closely-allied *u* or *o*; and *y*, when preceded by the closely-allied *i* or *e*.

*w* dropped after *u*: *kámūa*, "women;" *bárḃūa*, "robbers;" *kálua*, "having leaves;" *dábūa*, "provided with a neck."

*w* dropped after *o*: *bánōa*, "hoes;" *súmōa*, "ears;" *búrgōa*, "cunning;" *dínōa*, "strong."

*y* dropped after *i*: *bátia* for *bátīya*, "to-morrow;" *lénēmīa* for *lénēmīya*, "thou having gone."

*y* dropped after *e*: *lēgeiéndēa* for *lēgeiéndēya*, "we having gone."

The insertion of a consonant occurs in the compound word *kéntsā-m-bū*, "blood from the nose," which is composed of *kéntsā*, "nostrils," and *bū*, "blood."

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### ETYMOLOGY OF SUBSTANTIVES.

---

#### I. Derivation of Substantives.

§. 21. Almost all derived substantives are *abstract nouns*. The derivation takes place almost exclusively by prefixes. It is worthy of remark, that, in Bornu, *abstract nouns can be formed from all concrete ones and from all adjectives*. This is done by the prefix *ṅem*.

Instances of abstract nouns derived from concrete nouns :

*ṅemabá*, "fathership;" *ṅemmei*, "royalty;" *ṅemmuālam*, "priesthood;" *ṅemkām*, "humanity;" *ṅemtsáḡen*, "animality;" *ṅemsóbā*, "friendship;" *ṅemtálagá*, "poverty;" from *ába*, "father;" *mei*, "king;" *málam*, "priest;" *kām*, "man;" *tsáḡen*, "animal;" *sóbā* "friend;" *tálagá*, "a poor man."

Instances of abstract nouns derived from adjectives :

*ṅemkúrugū*, "length;" *ṅemkájugū*, "shortness;" *ṅem-dibī*, "badness;" *ṅembul*, "whiteness;" *ṅemtsélam*, "blackness;" *ṅemkétši*, "sweetness;" *ṅemtsim*, "bit-terness;" from *kúrugū*, "long;" *kájugū*, "short;" *dibī*-

“bad;” *buḷ*, “white;” *tsélam*, “black;” *kétsi*, “sweet;” *tšim*, “bitter.”

§. 22. But on substantives and adjectives beginning with *k* *nem* has usually the effect of changing *k* into *n*.

Substantives: *ņemņéntsī* and *ņemnālīa*, “slavery;” *ņem-námpū*, “blindness;” “*ņemnāmū*, “womanhood;” *ņem-ņérdī*, “heathenism;” *ņemņérīge*, “war,” from *kéntsī* and *kālīa*, “slave;” *kámpū*, “a blind man;” *kāmu*, “a woman;” *kérdī*, “a heathen;” *krīge*, “war, warriors.”

Adjectives: *ņemnúrūgū*, “length;” *ņemņétsī*, “sweetness;” *ņemnāmbē*, “liberty;” *ņemnáfūgū*, “shortness;” *ņemnālē*, “redness;” *ņemnúyinte*, “distance.”

Only of *kūra*, “great,” the abstract noun is not *ņemnūra*, but *ņemwūra*. The sound-combination of *m + w* is unquestionably more easy for the organs of speech than *m + n*; but, at the same time, less distinct and marked for the ear. And this seems to be the reason, why here language resisted its general inclination to organic ease and convenience, and preferred the more marked combination of *m + n* to the more easy of *m + w*, with the only exception of *ņemwūra*, where the ear was too much accustomed to the succession of *m + w*, from the frequent occurrence of *ām wūra*. The general rule affords an instance, where euphony for the organs of speech and euphony for the ear came into conflict, and language decided in favour of the latter, with the only exception of *ņemwūra*.

§. 23. Words which begin with a prosthetic *ñ* lose it on assuming the prefix *ņem*; as, *ņemgālīfū*, “richness;” *ņemgalā*, “goodness;” *ņemgā*, “health,” from *ñgālīfū*, “rich;” *ñgalā*, “good;” *ñgā*, “well.”

§. 24. When we meet with abstract nouns which differ from their concretes merely by the change of *k* into *n*, it would be best to consider them as defective forms, having dropped the prefix *ņem* for the sake of brevity, and not as presenting a new mode of forming abstract nouns. Such words are, *e. g.*,



*nétši*, "sweetness;" *núrugā*, "length;" *nádia* and *nétši*, "slavery;" *nám̄bē*, "liberty."

§. 25. The prefix *kēr* serves the same object as *nēm*, but its use is much more restricted: we only met with it in the two words *kērmei*, "royalty," and *kermálam*, "priesthood."

§. 26. All verbal infinitives might be considered as abstract nouns, as is done, *e.g.*, in Arabic. But we take here only two classes of them, and treat them as nouns of action, or abstract substantives, because they are derived from the common infinitive in the same or a similar way, as the above abstract nouns from concrete nouns or adjectives.

Abstract substantives are formed from the infinitives of verbs in *igin* by prefixing to them *nēm*; as, *nēm̄lētē*, "departure, walk;" *nēm̄bótē*, "sleep;" *nēm̄gótē*, "seizure;" *nēm̄kám̄tē*, "a cut;" from *lētē*, "to go;" *bótē*, "to sleep;" *gótē*, "to take;" *kám̄tē*, "to cut."

The infinitives of verbs in *skin* have an additional form, with the prefix *kēn*, by which they seem to be put on a parallel with the above forms of *nēm̄lētē* &c., and converted into abstract substantives. When the infinitive has a prosthetic or euphonic *m*, *n*, or *ñ*, that letter is dropped, and *kēn* takes its place, but so, that, in the first and last of these three cases, the *n* of *kēn* is assimilated to the following radical, and becomes respectively *m* and *ñ*. When the infinitive has no prosthetic letter, the *n* of *kēn* is likewise assimilated to the first radical, and becomes *ñ* before *g* and *k*, *m* before *b* and *p*, *l* before *l*, *m* before *m*, and *r* before *r*. In accordance with §. 12. the *e* of the prefix may become *o* or *u* when the first vowel of the infinitive is either *u* or *o*.

INFINITIVES.	ABSTRACT NOUNS.	INFINITIVES.	ABSTRACT NOUNS.
<i>mbájō</i>	<i>kēmbájō</i>	<i>ndórō</i>	<i>kēndórō</i>
<i>ñbā</i>	<i>kēmbā</i>	<i>ndútō</i>	<i>kōndútō</i>
<i>ñbū</i>	<i>kómbū</i>	<i>ñgā</i>	<i>kēñgā</i>
<i>ndégā</i>	<i>kēndégā</i>	<i>ñgám̄bō</i>	<i>kēñgám̄bō</i>
<i>ndiō</i>	<i>kēndiō</i>	<i>ñgáulō</i>	<i>kēñgáulō</i>

INFINITIVES.	ABSTRACT NOUNS.	INFINITIVES.	ABSTRACT NOUNS.
<i>ñgándō</i>	<i>keñgándō</i>	<i>rórō</i>	<i>kerórō</i>
<i>ñgágō</i>	<i>keñgágō</i>	<i>rū</i>	<i>kúrū</i>
<i>ñgérō</i>	<i>keñgérō</i>	<i>ságō</i>	<i>kenságō</i>
<i>ñgértō</i>	<i>keñgértō</i>	<i>sángō</i>	<i>kensángō</i>
<i>ñgérō</i>	<i>keñgérō</i>	<i>ságo</i>	<i>kenságo</i>
<i>ñdiō</i>	<i>kéñdiō</i>	<i>sébgō</i>	<i>kensébgō</i>
<i>ñgárō</i>	<i>keñgárō</i>	<i>širtō</i>	<i>kensirtō</i>
<i>kásō &amp; ñgásō</i>	<i>keñgásō</i>	<i>ntā</i>	<i>kéntā</i>
<i>ñgéndō</i>	<i>keñgéndō</i>	<i>támbō</i>	<i>kentámbō</i>
<i>ñgéogō</i>	<i>keñgéogō</i>	<i>ntiō</i>	<i>kéntio &amp; kéntō</i>
<i>ñgórō</i>	<i>keñgórō</i>	<i>wárō</i>	<i>kuárō</i>
<i>kútō</i>	<i>kuñgútō</i>	<i>ntsā</i>	<i>kéntsā</i>
<i>ládō</i>	<i>kelládō</i>	<i>ntsátō</i>	<i>kentsátō</i>
<i>lárō</i>	<i>kellárō</i>	<i>ntsárgalei</i> & } <i>kentsárgalō</i>	
<i>lijō</i>	<i>kellijō</i>	<i>ntsárgale</i> }	
<i>liō</i>	<i>kélliō</i>	<i>ntsámbō</i>	<i>kentsámbō</i>
<i>lúgō</i>	<i>kúllugō</i>	<i>ntsárdū</i>	<i>kentsárdū</i>
<i>mágō</i>	<i>kommágō</i>	<i>ntsárō</i>	<i>kentsárō</i>
<i>mbárō</i>	<i>kembárō</i>	<i>ntsákō</i>	<i>kentsákō</i>
<i>mérō</i>	<i>kemmérō</i>	<i>ntsásei</i>	<i>kentsásei</i>
<i>mū</i>	<i>kómū</i>	<i>ntsásarei</i>	<i>kentsásarei</i>
<i>nátō</i>	<i>kennátō</i>	<i>ntsékéliō</i>	<i>kentsékéliō</i>
<i>nándō</i>	<i>kennándō</i>	<i>ntsémbulō</i>	<i>kentsémbulō</i>
<i>nótō</i>	<i>kennótō</i>	<i>ntséotsō</i>	<i>kentséotsō</i>
<i>nū</i>	<i>kónnū</i>	<i>ntsō</i>	<i>kéntsō</i>
<i>pándō</i>	<i>kempándō</i>	<i>ntsérgei</i>	<i>kentsérgei</i>
<i>pértō</i>	<i>kempértō</i>	<i>ntsífō</i>	<i>kentsífō</i>
<i>rágō</i>	<i>kerrágō</i>	<i>ntsúndō</i>	<i>kentsúndō</i>
<i>rémbo</i>	<i>kerrembo</i>	<i>ntsúró</i>	<i>kontsúró</i>

§. 27. We have yet to mention four other derived substantives, two of which are formed by prefixes, and two by affixes. These are quite isolated cases of derivation, and the derived words differ from the above in their not being *abstract nouns*.

Thus, *kátigū*, "hide" is formed from *tigū*, "skin;" *kéméndē*

“this year,” from *méndē*, “last year;” *pátō*, “house home,” from *pā*, “home;” *bénmā*, “sleep,” from *ben* “sleep.”

## II. Formation of the Plural.

§. 28. The plural is formed from the singular by adding the termination *wa*, e.g. *pérwa*, “horses;” *némwa*, “houses;” *meíwa*, “kings;” *máleigawa*, “angels.” But, according to §. 20., the nouns terminating in *u* and *o* drop the *w*, and only assume *a*, which frequently permutes a preceding *u* into *o*; as, *kámūa* and *kámōa*, “women;” *kālūa*, “leaves;” *pátōa*, “homes;” *kusótōa*, “strangers.”

The plural of *táta*, “child,” and *meína*, “prince,” is *tátōa* and *meínōa*, which arose from a change of the final *a* into *o* (*u*) by the influence of the following *w*, and then the usual ejection of *w*.

*kām*, “person,” has in the plural, irregularly, *ām*, “people,” and *kámū*, “woman;” besides *kámūa*, also *ámūa* and *ámwa*.

The plural termination is often omitted, and a word may have to be considered as a collective noun, or its plurality inferred from an accompanying word, as a numeral, &c.

## III. Declension of Substantives.

§. 29. The Bornu language evinces a high degree of development by its distinct forms for the different cases, and more especially by its having a real nominative termination, a circumstance which is always indicative of considerable culture in a language. There are five distinct cases, of which the nominative terminates in *ye*, the genitive in *be*, the dative in *ro*, the accusative in *ga*, and the locative or instrumental in *n* or *nyin*; the latter, when a word terminates in a consonant, and sometimes, also, in a vowel, and the former generally when a word terminates in a vowel. A final consonant of the root is changed by the case-termination, agreeably to the laws of euphony. *Vide* §. 14.

We now subjoin a few substantives, declined in the singular and plural.

Singular.	Nom.	meiŋyē, "king."	sōbāyē, "friend."	múskōyē, "hand."	kánnuyē, "fire."
	Gen.	meibē.	sōbābē.	múskōbē.	kánnubē.
	Dat.	meivō.	sōbāvō.	múskōrō.	kánnurō.
	Ac.	meigā.	sōbāgā.	múskōgā.	kánnugā.
	Loc.	meinyin.	sōban.	múskon.	kánnan.
Plural.	Nom.	meiwáyē, "kings;"	sōbawáyē, "friends."	múskōwáyē, "hands."	kannwáyē, "fires."
	Gen.	meiwābē.	sōbawābē.	múskōwābē.	kannwābē.
	Dat.	meiwāvō.	sōbawāvō.	múskōwāvō.	kannwāvō.
	Ac.	meiwāgā.	sōbawāgā.	múskōwāgā.	kannwāgā.
	Loc.	meiwan.	sōbāwan.	múskōwan.	kánnūwan.
Singular.	Nom.	nēmnyē, "house."	dāndalyē, "mosque."	kárgunyē, "medicine."	péryē, "horse."
	Gen.	nēmbē.	dāndalbē.	kárgunbē.	pérbē.
	Dat.	nēmniō.	dāndallō.	kárgunniō.	pérrō.
	Ac.	nēngā.	dāndalgā.	kárgungā.	pérgā.
	Loc.	nēnnyin.	{ dāndallin dāndalnyin }	{ kárgunnyin. kárgunniin. }	péryin.
Plural.	Nom.	nēmwáyē, "houses;"	dāndawáyē, "mosques;"	kárgunwáyē, "medicines."	pérwáyē, "horses."
	Gen.	nēmwābē.	dāndawābē.	kárgunwābē.	pérwābē.
	Dat.	nēmwāvō.	dāndawāvō.	kárgunwāvō.	pérwāvō.
	Ac.	nēmwāgā.	dāndawāgā.	kárgunwāgā.	pérwāgā.
	Loc.	nēmwan.	dāndawāwan.	kárgunwan.	pérwāwan.

IV. *Gender of Substantives.*

§. 30. Gender is not distinguished in words, except where it exists in nature, in which case it is expressed—

Either by an altogether different name, as :

<i>kōa</i> and <i>kōāngā</i> , "man,"	<i>kāmū</i> , "woman."
<i>tsairō</i> , "boy,"	<i>pērō</i> , "girl."
<i>kātā</i> , "male slave,"	<i>kīr</i> , "female slave."
<i>kanāmō</i> , "bull,"	<i>pē</i> , "cow."
<i>gūbōgem</i> , "cock,"	<i>kūgūi</i> , "hen."
<i>ngalārō</i> , "ram,"	<i>dīmī</i> , "ewe."
<i>dal</i> , "buck,"	<i>kānū</i> , "goat."

Or by additional words, corresponding to our "male," "female," "man," "woman," as :

<i>pēr bī</i> , "stallion,"	<i>pēr kūrgurī</i> , "mare."
<i>kōrō bī</i> , "male ass,"	<i>kōrō kūrgurī</i> , "female ass."
<i>gādu bī</i> , "boar,"	<i>gādu kūrgurī</i> , "sow."
<i>kalīgumō bī</i> , "male camel,"	<i>kalīgumō mātsei</i> , "female camel."
<i>kōa karamā</i> , "wizard,"	<i>kāmū karamā</i> , "witch."
<i>kōa kāmā</i> , "widower,"	<i>kāmū kāmā</i> , "widow."
<i>kōāngā kagā</i> , "grandfather,"	<i>kāmū kagā</i> , "grandmother."
<i>ngarī dal</i> , "roe-buck,"	<i>ngarī kānū</i> , "roe."

## CHAPTER V.

## ETYMOLOGY OF PRONOUNS.

I *Personal Pronouns.*

§. 31. These are *wu*, "I;" *ni*, "thou;" *ši*, "he, she, it;" *ándi*, "we;" *nándi*, "ye;" *sándi*, "they." They are inflected like substantives—

Nom.	<i>wúyē</i>	<i>níyē</i>	<i>šíyē</i>	<i>andíyē</i>	<i>nandíyē</i>	<i>sandíyē</i>
Gen.	<i>wúbē</i>	<i>níbē</i>	<i>šíbē</i>	<i>andíbē</i>	<i>nandíbē</i>	<i>sandíbē</i>
Dat.	<i>wúrō</i>	<i>nírō</i>	<i>šírō</i>	<i>andírō</i>	<i>nandírō</i>	<i>sandírō</i>
Ac.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>	<i>sandígā</i>
Loc.	} <i>wun</i>	} <i>nyin</i>	} <i>šin</i>	} <i>ándin</i>	} <i>nándin</i>	} <i>sándin</i>

The forms for the plural can be contracted, viz. *ándi* into *ei*, *nándi* into *nei*, *sándi* into *sei*.

It is evident that there is an etymological connexion between the forms for the singular and plural. The vowels of the singular are in the plural all changed into *a*; this also produces in the third person the change of *š* into *s* cf. § 18. The *w* of the first person singular does not appear to be radical, but merely phonetic, the language being averse to commencing words with *w*, just as they pronounce the Arabic proper name *Omar*, "Wumar." The plurality in all three persons appears to be indicated by *ndi*, which is probably of the same origin with the numeral *nli*. It would therefore seem that the character of the first person is *w*, or a vowel in general; of the second, *n*, and of the third, *s*. Thus the first person agrees with the Indo-European forms like "I;" the second is identical with the Malayalim and others; and the third with Indo-European forms like "he," "she," "it," or Semitic ones like אָנִי אַתָּה אֵי.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

§. 32. The demonstrative pronoun *átē*, or, when suffixed, *tē*, is only used in the singular, the want of a plural form being supplied by the word *áni*, "these." *átē* is declined as follows :

Nom. *átiyē*. G. *átēbē* and *átībē*. Dat. *áturō*. Ac. *átēgā*.  
Loc. *átēnyin*.

The letters *tē* are sometimes repeated, probably in order to express greater emphasis: *átetē*, "this, this here;" or plural, *ánitē*, "these, these here."

*tū* is the remoter demonstrative, like our "that," and can be declined in the usual way. In the plural it becomes *tūni* which is probably a contraction of *tu* and *áni*; for even in singular *tu* and *átē* are often joined into *tátē*.

The word *áni* is sometimes changed in the context into *éni*, especially after *i* and *e*, or contracted with a preceding *a*, according to §. 11; *tatoáni éni*, "these my children;" *tatoánēm áni*, "these thy children;" *tatoántšē áni*, "these his children;" *tatoánlē éni*, "these our children;" *tatoándō áni*, "these your children;" *tatoántsa áni*, or *tatoántsaáni*, "these their children."

The pronoun *átegei*, "such, such a one," (Lat. *talis*), is composed of *átē* and the suffix *gei*. Whereas *átē* refers chiefly to the individuality, *átegei* refers to the quality of a thing.

III. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

§. 33. They are as follows:—

*nlá?* "who? which? which one?"  
*áji?* "which? what? which sort?"  
*nlágū?* "how much? how many?"  
*nlásō?* "which?"

Both *nlú* and *áfi* are singular, but they can be rendered plural by suffixing *sō* to them; e.g. *nlúsō ísa?* "who are come?" *kōganáfišō sánū?* "how many soldiers died?"

*nlásō* is evidently composed in the same manner; *ndá*, however, is now no longer used as a pronoun, but merely as an adverb.

When *áfi* is joined with a substantive terminating in *a*, the two *a*'s thus meeting coalesce into one, e.g. *kōáfi?* "which man?" If the substantive terminates in another vowel, the *a* of *áfi* is dropped, and merely *fi* suffixed, e.g. *kámūfi?* *pérōfi?* *dímīfi?* But if the substantive terminates in a consonant, *áfi* not only loses its *a*, but also the aspiration of *f*, (= *ph*) and lengthens the *i* e.g. *ámṗi?* "which people?" *dándalṗi?* "which mosque?" *kírṗi?* "which female slave?" The change of the consonant is identical with that of Hebrew aspirates after closed syllables.

#### IV. Possessive Pronouns.

§. 34. They have always the character of suffixes, and are very similar to the personal characteristic of verbs, but do not seem to have an etymological connexion with the personal pronouns. When joined to nouns terminating in a consonant, the laws of euphony come into operation, vide §. 14. Gender not being distinguished, there is only one form for each person, viz. in singular, *ní* for the first, *nēm*, for the second, *ntse*, for the third; and in plural, *ndē* *ndō*, *ntsa*. These possessive suffixes have an accent of more or less strength, which, in the following paradigms, will be marked in the usual way, but will afterwards generally be omitted. The nouns to which the possessive suffixes are added, are: *táta*, "child;" *per*, "horse;" *nēm*, "horse;" *al*, "manner;" *dal*, "buck."



*Singular.*

1 per. <i>tátānī,</i>	<i>pérnī,</i>	<i>némnī,</i>	<i>állí,</i>	<i>dální,</i>
2 per. <i>tátānēm,</i>	<i>pérnēm,</i>	<i>némnēm,</i>	<i>állēm,</i>	{ <i>dálnēm,</i> or <i>dállēm.</i>
3 per. <i>tátāntsé,</i>	<i>pérntsé,</i>	<i>némntsé,</i>	{ <i>dántsé</i> or <i>álltsé.</i>	{ <i>dálntsé</i> or <i>dálltsé.</i>

*Plural.*

1 per. <i>tátāndé,</i>	<i>pérndé,</i>	<i>némndé,</i>	<i>dándé,</i>	<i>dálnndé,</i>
2 per. <i>tátāndó,</i>	<i>pérndó,</i>	<i>némndó,</i>	<i>dándó,</i>	<i>dálnndó,</i>
3 per. <i>tátāntsá,</i>	<i>pérntsá,</i>	<i>némntsá,</i>	<i>dántsá,</i>	<i>dálnntsá.</i>

§. 35. Besides the forms euphonically changed, I have also met with instances where the change was avoided by the insertion of a vowel; *e. g.* *sálām-āntsé,* "his salutation;" *álení,* "my manner;" *álenēm,* "thy manner;" *ámāntsé,* "his people;" and, in like manner, *ámānī,* *ámānēm,* *ámāndé,* *ámāndó,* *ámāntsá.*

Care must here be taken, not to confound the suff. 1st pers. sing. with the pluralform of the demonstrative pronoun: *tátōānī,* *e. g.*, may mean "these children" and "my children;" but, in the first case, it stands for *tátōa + ānī*, and in the second for: *tátōa + nī.*

In "*yái ganá,*" a common address to women, *yái* probably stands for *yānī*, for the sake of euphony.

The same omission of *n* appears to take place when the possessive suffix is added to the unmeaning word *káge* which is employed merely when the possessive pronouns ought to be used substantively; and, after the omission of *n*, a singular contraction of *e* and *i* into *ē* seems to take place; for "mine" is expressed by *kágeē*. But the other persons are regular: *kágenēm,* "thine;" *kágentse,* "his;" *kágeñdē,* "ours;" *kágeñdō,* "yours;" *kágeñtsá,* "theirs."

§. 36. When the case-terminations are added to the Possessive Pronouns, they may produce some change in them—

*Singular.*

Nom.	<i>sóbānīyē,</i>	<i>sóbānēmyē,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīyē.</i>
Gen.	<i>sóbānībē,</i>	<i>sóbānēmbē,</i>	<i>sóbāntsībē.</i>
Dat.	<i>sóbānīrō,</i>	<i>sóbānēm̄mō,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīrō.</i>
Ac.	<i>sóbānīgā,</i>	<i>sóbānēm̄gā,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīgā.</i>
Loc.	<i>sóbānyin,</i>	<i>sóbānēm̄in,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīnyin.</i>

*Plural.*

Nom.	<i>sóbāndīyē.</i>	<i>sóbānōdyē,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīyē.</i>
Gen.	<i>sóbāndībē,</i>	<i>sóbāndlōbē,</i>	<i>sóbāntsībē.</i>
Dat.	<i>sóbāndīrō,</i>	<i>sóbāndōrō,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīrō.</i>
Ac.	<i>sóbāndīgā,</i>	<i>sóbāndōgā,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīgā.</i>
Loc.	<i>sóbāndīnyin,</i>	<i>sóbāndōnyin,</i>	<i>sóbāntsīnyin.</i>

V. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

§. 37. These, like common names, do not indicate certain individuals, but existence in general. When used adjectively, they are easily converted into indefinite numerals. They are chiefly formed from interrogative pronouns, by suffixing either *sō* or *yāye*, or both; a process which is also adopted in many other languages, *cf.* “*τίς, πόσος, ὅστις;*” “quis, quisque, aliquis;” “wer, der;” “whoever;” and which is very natural, inasmuch as the interrogative and indefinite pronouns equally represent the individuation which they make as one undetermined and unfixed.

The suffix “*ye*” seems to be identical with the Germanic prefix “*je*,”; Old G. “*eo, io*,” which likewise renders definite pronouns indefinite, as in G. “*jeder*,”; Old G. “*ioweder*,”; E. “*every*.” The suffix *sō* we also have in English, *e.g.* “*who-so*” (= *whosoever*) is literally *ndū-sō*; and in Latin also the corresponding *ali* (= *all?*) converts an interrogative into an indefinite pronoun: “*quis, aliquis*.”

*Indefinite Pronouns, formed by suffixing ye or yāye.*

<i>nlūye</i> , "every one, all."	<i>nlūyāye</i> , "any one."
<i>nlāsōye</i> , "every one, all."	<i>nlāsōyāye</i> , "any one."
<i>ājīyāye</i> , "whichever, whatever."	<i>nlāguyāyé</i> , "how much, how many soever."

*Indefinite Pronouns, formed by suffixing sō, the indefinite numeral.*

<i>nlūsō</i> , "whoso, any one."	<i>ājisō</i> , "whatsoever, whatever, whichever."
<i>nlāgusō</i> , "how many soever, how much soever."	<i>nlāsosō</i> , "whoso, any one."

*āgāsō*, "all, whole," has doubtless the same suffix; *āgā* being identical with the adjective *āgā*, "sound, well, whole;" just as also many other languages express the idea of soundness and completeness by one and the same word.

*Indefinite Pronouns, formed by suffixing sō and yāye.*

<i>nlūsōyāye</i> , "whosoever."	<i>ājisōyāye</i> , "whatsoever;"
<i>nlāgusōyāye</i> , "how many soever."	<i>nlāsosōyāye</i> , "whosoever."

*Other Indefinite Pronouns.*

<i>lāgā</i> , "a certain, some."	<i>yīnī</i> , "one, a certain."
<i>gaulé</i> , "other, another."	<i>kām</i> , "one."

---

CHAPTER VI.

ETYMOLOGY OF ADJECTIVES.

---

I. *Derivation of Adjectives.*

§. 38 Adjectives are derived by suffixing the syllables *wa*, *na*, *mī*, *ra*, *vī*.

The syllable *wa* forms possessive adjectives, *i. e.* adjectives expressing the possession of the things to whose names it is

appended, and has generally to be rendered in English by "having," or "possessing." Thus it is affixed—

1. To simple substantives—

*kṃāwa*, "having hunger, hungry."

*wiḡalwa*, "having wisdom, wise."

*nikūwa*, "having water, watery."

*kōaṅāwa*, "having a husband, husbanded."

*tatoāwa*, "having children."

*kalīawāwa*, "having slaves."

*kalāwa*, "having a (good) head, intelligent."

2. To words defining substantives—

*kāśāgar mūskōwa*, "having a sword in the hand."

*tšin tšilwāwa*, "having a rat in the mouth."

*šim kārāwa*, "having large eyes."

*kērbū tūlarwa*, "having seven years, *i. e.* being seven years of age."

*tātāntse tīlōwa*, "she having one child."

*manāndēwa*, "we having a word (*sc.*, to say)."

Sometimes the suffix *wa* produces a change in the final vowel, viz. when that vowel is *e* or the *i* of the possessive pronoun *nī*—*per yāsgūa*, "having three horses;" *nēm̄tsūa*, "he having a house;" *manānyūa*, "I am one having a word," or, "I have a word to say."

After words terminating in *u* or *o* the *w* of *wa* is frequently dropped—*mūskōn kitābūa*, "having a book in the hand;" *kōa kāmūa*, "a man having a wife;" *kām dūnōa*, "a strong man;" *gūdu kūdāḡūa*, "a dirty hog;" *kōgiō*, "a tuft," has *kōgiēwa*.

§ 39. The same *wa* can also be affixed to inflected forms of the verb, converting them into a kind of participle.

*wu yīrēskīnwa lēṅḡī*, "I have gone weeping."

*nī yīrēmīnwa lēṅēmī*, "thou hast gone weeping."

*šī tšīrīnwa lētšī*, "he has gone weeping."

*wūlī yīrēnwa lēṅyē*, "we have gone weeping."

*nándi yírúwíwa lénúwí*, "ye have gone weeping."  
*sándi tsásíríníwa létsei*, "they have gone weeping."

*wu léngíníwa yíréskí*, "I have wept walking."  
*ní léngíníwa yírémí*, "thou hast wept walking."  
*ší létšíníwa tšírí*, "he has wept walking."  
*ándi lényéníwa yírē*, "we have wept walking."  
*nándi lénúwíwa yírúwí*, "ye have wept walking."  
*sándi létseiwa tsásírí*, "they have wept walking."

*wu pérní tšéngánáwa léngí*, "I have gone leading my horse."  
*ní pérnem tšéngémnáwa léngémí*, "thou hast gone leading thy horse."

*ší pérntse tšétsénáwa létší*, "he has gone leading his horse."  
*ándi pérndē tšényénáwa lényē*, "we have gone leading our horse."

*nándi pérndō tšénúwáwa lénúwí*, "ye have gone leading your horse."

*sándi pérntsa tšétsanáwa létsei*, "they have gone leading their horse."

§. 40. The suffix *ma* forms adjectives of various imports, which are then very often used as substantives.

1. Possessive Adjectives like those in *wa*.

*kóá kámāma*, "a man having a wife."

*kóá pátōma*, "a man possessing a house, landlord."

*kóá bátsāmma*, "a man having an oven."

*kām pírma*, "a man possessing horses."

*kúlōma*, "owning a farm."

But if the substantive is defined by other words, or a pronominal suffix, *ma* cannot be added, but only *wa*: it cannot be said, *e. g. kásāyar múskonma*, or *mánāntma*.

2. Adjectives indicating the country to which one belongs:

*kām Bornúma*, "a Bornuese."

*kāmū Ajúnóma*, "a woman of Hausa."

<i>kām Nufēma</i> , "a native of Nufe."	<i>kām bēlāma</i> , "a townsman." <i>kánnūma</i> , "inhabitant of hell." <i>tsánnāma</i> , "inhabitant of heaven." 
<i>kóá Wadaíma</i> , "a man of Wadai."	
<i>kām Kánēmma</i> , "a Kanumese."	

3. Adjectives indicating the occupation with, or production of, the thing expressed by the substantive or verb.

<i>kóá kárgunma</i> , "a doctor of medicine."	<i>lebálāma</i> , "disputer." <i>bēlāma</i> , "town-magistrate." <i>kágēlma</i> , "blacksmith." <i>ngēma</i> , "potter." <i>tságāma</i> , "weaver." <i>pēlégēma</i> , "guide." <i>gultégēma</i> , "instructor, teacher." <i>yérma</i> , "benefactor."
<i>kóá kárāma</i> , "a wizard."	
<i>kām kitáfūma</i> , "one constantly engaged with books."	
<i>lebaíāma</i> , "trader."	
<i>kúlōma</i> , "farmer."	
<i>kásugūma</i> , "hawker."	
<i>kwégēma</i> , "warrior."	

4. When added to the infinitive of a verb, *ma* forms a sort of active participle, or name of agent.

<i>dētēma</i> , "cooker, a cook."	<i>ntšifōma</i> , "buyer." <i>ládōma</i> , "seller." <i>kómbūma</i> , "eater." <i>kéntsāma</i> , "drinker."
<i>debátēma</i> , "a murderer."	
<i>wútēma</i> , "a seer."	
<i>kundōma</i> , <i>kēndéōma</i> and <i>ndéōma</i> , "maker."	

These forms in *ma* are singular; in the plural *ma* is changed into *bū*: *sáandi pērbū*, "they are horsemen;" *bornúbū* "the Bornuese;" *ām kárgunbū*, "doctors;" *debátubū*, "murderers;" *kánēmbu*, "the Kanumese." But *bēlāma*, "the head magistrate of a town," which word has doubtless the same origin, forms the plural regularly, *bēlumāwá*, whilst *bēlābu* means "town's-people."

§. 41. The suffix *mi* forms,

1. Patronymics of males:

‘*Ali Eisāmi*, “Ali, the son of Eisa;” ‘*Atši Kódōmi*,  
“Atshi, the son of Kódō;” ‘*Ngóama Nanāmi*; ‘*Mastáfā*  
*Kēlāmi*; ‘*Ibram Tsarāmi*, &c.

*Búgar málammi*, “Bugar, the son of the priest.”

‘*Ali keígāmāmi*, “Ali, the son of the general.”

‘*Ibram tsánoāmi*, “Ibrahim, the son of a nobleman.”

*Dála kōganāmi*, “Dala, the son of a soldier.”

*Isa bēlamāmi*, “Isa, son of a magistrate.”

2. In a few instances, other adjectives restricted in their use to human beings :

*tīlōmi* or *túlōmi*, *e.g.* *táta tīlōmi*, “the only child.”

*kāmū tīlōmi*, “the only wife.”

*kurāmi* “independent, disregarding the authority of the old, usurping the authority of the old.”

§. 42. The suffix *ram*, forms,

1. Patronymics of females :

*Eisā Mágātširám*, “Eisa, the daughter of Magatshi.”

*Kárē ‘Alīram*, “Kárē, the daughter of Ali.”

*Lígiram Wímarram*, “Ligiram, the daughter of Omar.”

*Kārū Wusemárram*, “Karu, the daughter of Osman.”

*Mārīam málamrám*, “Mary, the daughter of a priest.”

*Kārū bēlamārám*, “Karu, the daughter of a magistrate.”

*Eisā kōganáram*, “Eisa, the daughter of a soldier.”

The adjectives in *ram* are frequently used as substantives : and it would seem that some are now only used as such; as, *e.g.* *meíram*, meaning “princess,” *i.e.* the daughter of the king and the keigama. *Meíram*, therefore, always precedes the proper name, as *meíram Eisa*, “princess Eisa;” *meíram Tsará*, “princess Sarah.” The same remark applies to *meína*, “prince.”

2. Adjectives expressing application to, or connexion with, a thing.

*kállo múskōrám*, "a copper-bracelet."

*kúlulū nigólōrám*, "a string of beads for the waist."

*mērtsān sūmōrám*, "ear-coral."

*káluḡū krīḡerám*, "a coat of mail."

*kálugō krīḡerám*, "war instrument."

§. 43. The suffix *ri* forms adjectives of names for different classes of men, viz.

1. Of names expressing rank, title, office.

*mētrí*, "royal."

*máḡirári*, "belonging to the king's mother."

*mēinári*, "princely."

*mēiramrí*, "belonging to a princess."

*keígamári*, "belonging to a general."

*bēlamári*, "magisterial."

2. Of names expressing occupation, or profession.

*málamri*, "priestly."

*ḡarwári*, "mercantile."

*káḡelmári*, "belonging to a blacksmith."

*dáḡári*, "belonging to a drummer."

*kárgunmári*, "medical."

3. Of names expressing nationality :

*Mandarári*, "belonging to Mandara."

*Túbōrí*, "belonging to Tubo."

*Fulátári*, "belonging to the Phula."

*Núfērí*, "belonging to Nufe."

*Šóarí*, "belonging to Shoas or Arabs."

4. Of two names expressing complexion :

*wásilírí*, "belonging to white men."

*šerijári*, "belonging to Albinos."



II. *Inflection of Adjectives.*

§. 44. Adjectives are inflected in the same way as substantives, and if they form one part of a proposition with them, they only take the case-terminations, and the substantives remain without them. We will illustrate this by the following three examples: *kōgana pērma*, “a horse soldier, a cavalier;” *kālīa tsēlam*, “a black slave;” *pēr kārītē*, “a fine horse”—

*Singular.*

Nom.	<i>kōgana pēr māyē</i>	<i>kālīa tsēlamyē</i>	<i>pēr kārītīyē</i> ,
Gen.	<i>kōgana pēr mābē</i>	<i>kālīa tsēlambē</i>	<i>pēr kārītēbē</i>
Dat.	<i>kōgana pēr mārō</i>	<i>kālīa tsēlammō</i>	<i>pēr kārītūrō</i>
Ae.	<i>kōgana pēr māgā</i>	<i>kālīa tsēlamgā</i>	<i>pēr kārītēgā</i>
Loc.	<i>kōgana pēr mān</i>	<i>kālīa tsēlamnyin</i>	<i>pēr kārītēn</i> .

*Plural.*

Nom.	<i>kōganāwa pēr būyē</i>	<i>kālīāwa tsēlamyē</i>	<i>pērwa kārītīyē</i> .
Gen.	<i>kōganāwa pēr būbē</i>	<i>kālīāwa tsēlambē</i>	<i>pērwa kārītēbē</i> .
Dat.	<i>kōganāwa pēr būrō</i>	<i>kālīāwa tsēlammō</i>	<i>pērwa kārītūrō</i> .
Ae.	<i>kōganāwa pēr būgū</i>	<i>kālīāwa tsēlamyū</i>	<i>pērwa kārītēgā</i> .
Loc.	<i>kōganāwa pēr būn</i>	<i>kālīāwa tsēlamnyin</i>	<i>pērwa kārītēn</i> .

The adjective *kūra*, “great, large,” has a distinct form for the plural, viz. *wūra* which may be used when the noun is in the plural; e.g. *mēwa kūra* and *mēwa wūra*, “great kings.” But the word *ām*, which is used as the plural of *kām*, is never followed by *kura*, but only by *wura*, and this probably from a phonetic reason, *m-w* joining so much easier than *m-k*: hence, also, the abstract noun is *ņemwūra*, instead of *ņemkūra*, cf. §§. 15 and 22.

CHAPTER VII.  
ETYMOLOGY OF NUMERALS.

I. *Cardinal Numbers.*

§. 44. These are as follows:—

1 <i>tīlō</i> (sometimes <i>tūlō</i> ) <i>lāsge</i> and <i>pal</i> .	28 <i>pīndin tātā wūsge</i> .
2 <i>ndī</i> .	29 <i>pīndin tātā legārnyin</i> .
3 <i>yāsge</i> .	30 <i>pīasge</i> .
4 <i>dēge</i> .	31 <i>pīasgen tātā tīlon</i> .
5 <i>ūgu</i> and <i>ūge</i> .	32 <i>pīasgen tātā ndin</i> .
6 <i>ārasge</i> .	33 <i>pīasgen tātā yāsge</i> .
7 <i>tūhur</i> .	34 <i>pīasgen tātā dēge</i> .
8 <i>wūsge</i> .	35 <i>pīasgen tātā ūgun</i> .
9 <i>legār</i> .	36 <i>pīasgen tātā 'rásge</i> .
10 <i>mēgu</i> or <i>mēogu</i> .	37 <i>pīasgen tātā tūlurnyin</i> .
11 <i>lāgarī</i> .	38 <i>pīasgen tātā wūsge</i> .
12 <i>ndūrī</i> .	39 <i>pīasgen tātā legārnyin</i> .
13 <i>yāsge</i> .	40 <i>pīdēge</i> .
14 <i>dēri</i> .	41 <i>pīdēgen tātā tīlon</i> .
15 <i>ūri</i> and <i>wūri</i> .	42 <i>pīdēgen tātā ndin</i> .
16 <i>ūrasge</i> .	43 <i>pīdēgen tātā yāsge</i> .
17 <i>tūhurri</i> .	44 <i>pīdēgen tātā dēge</i> .
18 <i>wūsge</i> .	45 <i>pīdēgen tātā ūgun</i> .
19 <i>legārri</i> .	46 <i>pīdēgen tātā 'rásge</i> .
20 <i>pīndī</i> .	47 <i>pīdēgen tātā tūlurnyin</i> .
21 <i>pīndin tātā tīlon</i> .	48 <i>pīdēgen tātā wūsge</i> .
22 <i>pīndin tātā ndin</i> .	49 <i>pīdēgen tātā legārnyin</i> .
23 <i>pīndin tātā yāsge</i> .	50 <i>pīūgu</i> .
24 <i>pīndin tātā dēge</i> .	51 <i>pīūgun tātā tīlon</i> .
25 <i>pīndin tātā ūgun</i> .	52 <i>pīūgun tātā ndin</i> .
26 <i>pīndin tātā 'rásge</i> .	53 <i>pīūgun tātā yāsge</i> .
27 <i>pīndin tātā tūlurnyin</i> .	54 <i>pīūgun tātā dēge</i> .
	55 <i>pīūgun tātā ūgun</i> .

- 56 *pīūgun tātā 'rásgen.*  
 57 *pīūgun tātā tūlurnyin.*  
 58 *pīūgun tātā wūsgen.*  
 59 *pīūgun tātā legárnyin.*  
 60 *pīrasge.*  
 61 *pīrasgen tātā tīlon.*  
 62 *pīrasgen tātā ndīn.*  
 63 *pīrasgen tātā yāsgen.*  
 64 *pīrasgen tātā dégen.*  
 65 *pīrasgen tātā ūgin.*  
 66 *pīrasgen tātā 'rásgen.*  
 67 *pīrasgen tātā tūlurnyin.*  
 68 *pīrasgen tātā wūsgen.*  
 69 *pīrasgen tātā legárnyin.*  
 70 *pītulur.*  
 71 *pītulúrnyin tātā tīlon.*  
 72 *pītulúrnyin tātā ndīn.*  
 73 *pītulúrnyin tātā yāsgen.*  
 74 *pītulúrnyin tātā dégen.*  
 75 *pītulúrnyin tātā ūgun.*  
 76 *pītulúrnyin tātā 'rásgen.*  
 77 *pītulúrnyin tātā tūlurnyin.*  
 78 *pītulurnyin tātā wūsgen.*  
 79 *pītulúrnyin tātā legárnyin.*  
 80 *pītusgu.*  
 81 *pītusgun tātā tīlon.*  
 82 *pītusgun tātā ndīn.*  
 83 *pītusgun tātā yāsgen.*  
 84 *pītusgun tātā dégen.*  
 85 *pītusgun tātā ūgun.*  
 86 *pītusgun tātā 'rásgen.*  
 87 *pītusgun tātā tūlurnyin.*  
 88 *pītusgun tātā wūsgen.*  
 89 *pītusgun tātā legárnyin.*  
 90 *pīlegār.*  
 91 *pīlegárnyin tātā tīlon.*  
 92 *pīlegárnyin tātā ndīn.*  
 93 *pīlegárnyin tātā yāsgen.*  
 94 *pīlegárnyin tātā dégen.*  
 95 *pīlegárnyin tātā ūgun.*  
 96 *pīlegárnyin tātā 'rásgen.*  
 97 *pīlegárnyin tātā tūlurnyin.*  
 98 *pīlegárnyin tātā wūsgen.*  
 99 *pīlegárnyin tātā legárnyin.*  
 100 *mīā or yóru.*  
 101 *mīān tātā tīlon, or yórun tātā tīlon, or mīān tīlon, or yórun tīlon.*  
 102 *mīān tātā ndīn, or yórun tātā ndīn, or yórun ndīn, or mīān ndīn.*  
 103 *mīān tātā yāsgen, or yórun tātā yāsgen, or mīān yāsgen, or yórun yāsgen, etc.*  
 110 *mīān mēgun, or yórun mēgun.*  
 111 *mīān mēogū lágarin, or yórun mēogū lágarin.*  
 112 *mīān mēogu ndurín, or yórun mēogu ndurín, &c.*  
 120 *mīān pīndīn, or yórun pīndīn.*  
 121 *mīān pīndīn tātā tīlon, &c.*  
 130 *mīān pīāsgen, or yórun pīāsgen.*  
 131 *mīān pīāsgen tātā tīlon, &c.*  
 140 *mīān pīdēgen, or yórun pīdēgen.*  
 141 *mīān pīdēgen tātā tīlon, &c.*  
 200 *yóru ndí (not mīā ndí)*

201	<i>yóru ndín tátā tīlon.</i>	20,000	<i>dúbu píndi, &amp;c.</i>
202	<i>yóru ndín tátā ndín, &amp;c.</i>	100,000	<i>dúbu miã (not dúbu yóru).</i>
220	<i>yóru ndín píndin (not tátā píndin).</i>	100,001	<i>dúbu miān tátā tīlon, &amp;c.</i>
221	<i>yóru ndín píndin tátā tīlon, &amp;c.</i>	200,000	<i>dúbu yóru ndí (not dúbu miā ndí).</i>
300	<i>yóru yásge.</i>	300,000	<i>dúbu yóru yásge, &amp;c.</i>
301	<i>yóru yásgen tátā tīlon, &amp;c.</i>	400,000	<i>dúbu yóru dége.</i>
320	<i>yóru yásgen píndin, &amp;c.</i>	500,000	<i>dúbu yóru úgu.</i>
400	<i>yóru dége.</i>	600,000	<i>dúbu yóru árasge.</i>
500	<i>yóru úgu.</i>	700,000	<i>dúbu yóru túlur.</i>
600	<i>yóru árasge.</i>	800,000	<i>dúbu yóru wásge.</i>
700	<i>yóru túlur.</i>	900,000	<i>dúbu yóru legár.</i>
800	<i>yóru wásge.</i>	1,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru mégu, &amp;c.</i>
900	<i>yóru legár.</i>	2,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru píndi, &amp;c.</i>
1000	<i>dúbu.</i>	3,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru pírasge.</i>
1001	<i>dúbun tátā tīlon.</i>	4,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru píldége.</i>
1020	<i>dúbun píndin.</i>	5,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru píúgu.</i>
1100	<i>dúbun miān or dúbun yórun.</i>	6,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru pírasge.</i>
1101	<i>dúbun miān tátā tīlon, &amp;c.</i>	7,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru pítulur.</i>
1200	<i>dúbun yóru ndín (not miā ndín).</i>	8,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru pítusgu.</i>
2000	<i>dúbu ndí.</i>	9,000,000	<i>dúbu yóru pílegár.</i>
3000	<i>dúbu yásge.</i>	10,000,000	<i>dúbu nem.</i>
4000	<i>dúbu dége.</i>	20,000,000	<i>dúbā nem dí.</i>
5000	<i>dúbu úgu.</i>	30,000,000	<i>dúbā nem yásge.</i>
6000	<i>dúbu árasge.</i>	40,000,000	<i>dúbā nem dége, &amp;c.</i>
7000	<i>dúbu túlur.</i>	100,000,000	<i>dúbā nem méogu.</i>
8000	<i>dúbu wásge.</i>	200,000,000	<i>dúbā nem píndi.</i>
9000	<i>dúbā legár.</i>	300,000,000	<i>dúbā nem pírasge, &amp;c.</i>
10,000	<i>dúbu méogu.</i>	1,000,000,000	<i>dúbā nem miā.</i>
11,000	<i>dúbu méogu légarī.</i>	1,000,000,000,000	<i>dúbā nem dúbu.</i>

In the common way of counting, the numerals from 11 to 19 seem to be used, as given above, for the sake of

brevity only, whereas they ought properly to be compounded with *méogu* in the following manner :

11, <i>méogu lagarí,</i>	14, <i>méogu d'éri,</i>	17, <i>méogu túlurri,</i>
12, <i>méogu ndurí,</i>	15, <i>méogu úri,</i>	18, <i>méogun wásgen,</i>
13, <i>méogun yásgen,</i>	16, <i>méogun árasgen,</i>	19, <i>méogu legárri.</i>

These cardinal numbers are declined in the same way as substantives.

Nom.	<i>tílō,</i>	<i>ndí,</i>	<i>yásge,</i>	<i>dége,</i>	<i>úgu,</i>	<i>árasge,</i>	<i>tútur,</i>
Gen.	<i>tílobē,</i>	<i>ndíbē,</i>	<i>yásgebē,</i>	<i>dégebē,</i>	<i>águbē,</i>	<i>árasgebē,</i>	<i>túhurbē,</i>
Dat.	<i>tílorō,</i>	<i>ndírō,</i>	<i>yásgurō,</i>	<i>dégurō,</i>	<i>úgurō,</i>	<i>árasgurō,</i>	<i>túlurrō,</i>
Ac.	<i>tílogā,</i>	<i>ndígā,</i>	<i>yásgegā,</i>	<i>dégegā,</i>	<i>úgugā,</i>	<i>árasgegā,</i>	<i>túlungā,</i>
Loc.	<i>tílon,</i>	<i>ndín,</i>	<i>yásgen,</i>	<i>dégen,</i>	<i>úgun,</i>	<i>árasgen,</i>	<i>túlurnyìn.</i>

## II. Ordinal Numbers.

§. 46. Of these there are, as, *e.g.*, in Hebrew, distinct forms for the first ten numerals only, and those beyond ten are expressed by the cardinals. The ordinals from 3 to 10 are formed from the cardinals by prefixing "*ken,*" as—

3d <i>kényásge.</i>	7th <i>kéntulur.</i>
4th <i>kéndlége.</i>	8th <i>kénwusge.</i>
5th <i>kénwūgu</i> or <i>kénūgu.</i>	9th <i>kéulegār</i> or <i>kéllegār.</i>
6th <i>kénārásge.</i>	10th <i>kénmēgu</i> or <i>kémmeōgu.</i>

For "*first*" and "*second*" there is no proper ordinal; but "*first*" is expressed either by "*tílō,*" as in Heb. רַבְּרַב, or by "*burgóbē,*" and "*second*" by "*deregébē*" or "*ngáfóbē,*" *i. e.* "one after the first." *Deregébē* and *ngáfóbē* can also be used to denote the last, *i. e.* "one coming behind or after all;" (comp. in Hebrew the relation between רַבְּרַב and רַבְּרַב *e.g.* *níte ári ngáfjon róntse, dúgō deregē nāúrō káclim?* "What has kept thee back, that thou hast come last to me?")

III. *Adverbial Numbers.*

§. 47. These are formed from cardinals by suffixing *rō*.

<i>tīlōrō</i> , "once."	<i>wāsgennō</i> , "18 times."
<i>ndīrō</i> , "twice."	<i>lēgārrīrō</i> , "19 times."
<i>yāsḡurō</i> , "thrice."	<i>pīndīrō</i> , "20 times."
<i>dēḡurō</i> , "4 times."	<i>pīndīn tīlonnō</i> , "21 times."
<i>ūḡurō</i> , "5 times."	<i>pīndīn ndīnnō</i> , "22 times."
<i>ārāsḡurō</i> , "6 times."	<i>pīndīn yāsḡennō</i> , "23 times," &c.
<i>tūlurrō</i> , "7 times."	<i>pīāsḡurō</i> , "30 times."
<i>wāsḡurō</i> , "8 times."	<i>pīdēḡurō</i> , "40 times."
<i>lēgārrō</i> , "9 times."	<i>pītūḡurō</i> , "50 times."
<i>mēḡurō</i> , "10 times."	<i>pīrasḡurō</i> , "60 times."
<i>laḡarīrō</i> , "11 times."	<i>pītulurrō</i> , "70 times."
<i>ndurīrō</i> , "12 times."	<i>pītusḡurō</i> , "80 times."
<i>yāsḡennō</i> , "13 times."	<i>pīlēgārrō</i> , "90 times."
<i>dērīrō</i> , "14 times."	<i>mīārō</i> or <i>yōrurō</i> , "an hundred times"
<i>wūrīrō</i> , "15 times."	<i>dūburō</i> , "a thousand times."
<i>ārāsḡennō</i> , "16 times."	
<i>tulurrīrō</i> , "17 times."	

But the cardinal *tīlō* or *lāsḡe* can also stand for the adverbial number "once."

From the ordinal numbers 3 to 10 adverbial forms can likewise be derived, expressive of either ordinal or cardinal adverbs.

<i>kēnyāsḡurō</i> , "third time, and thrice."	<i>kēntulurrō</i> , "seventh time, and seven times."
<i>kēndēḡurō</i> , "fourth time, and four times."	<i>kēnwusḡurō</i> , "eighth time, and eight times."
<i>kēnūḡurō</i> , "fifth time, and five times."	<i>kēlleḡārrō</i> , "ninth time, and nine times."
<i>kēnārasḡurō</i> , "sixth time, and six times."	<i>kēnmēoḡurō</i> , "tenth time, and ten times."

IV. *Indefinite Numerals.*

§. 48. They indicate any uncounted number or indeterminate quantity, and differ from indefinite pronouns, by not referring to existence as such, but merely to the number or quantity of existence, (vide K. F. Becker's *Ausführliche deutsche Grammatik*, Vol. I. §§. 157 and 182).

*áfīma*, "something, some." It is composed of *áfī*, "what? which thing?" and *ma*, the emphatic suffix, and usually only joined with negatives. (*See Syntax.*)

*báigō*, "nothing, not." It is doubtless composed of *áigō*, "a thing," and *ba*, a negative not otherwise occurring, but probably of the same origin with the Vei *ma*, the Greek *μη*, &c.

*nlúma* consists of *nlú*, "who?" and the emphatic suffix *ma*.  
*sámma*, "all, every one."

*sō*, "all, every one."

*áfīsō*, "any thing, every thing; all, every, any."

*nlásosō*, "any."

*nlúsō*, "every one, any one, all." From *nlú*, "who?"

*ngásō*, "all, whole." Probably from *ngá*, "sound, well, healthy," and *sō*, properly, "all well, quite well," and then, "whole, all;" just as E. "whole," L. "*integer*."

*ganá*, "few, little."

*ngubū*, "many, much."

## CHAPTER VIII.

## ETYMOLOGY OF VERBS.

I. *Derivation of Verbs.*

§. 49. Verbs can be derived from either substantives or adjectives, or other verbs.

*Verbs derived from substantives* express either a becoming and being, or a doing and performing of what the substantive denotes :—

<i>mālāngin</i> , "I become a priest."	<i>sōbāngin</i> , "I become a friend."
<i>meiŋgin</i> , "I become a king."	<i>kōganāngin</i> , "I become a soldier."
<i>kargunmāngin</i> , "I become a doctor."	<i>legālŋgin</i> , "I become a lawyer."
<i>sālāngin</i> , "I make a salutation, salute."	<i>kūdāngin</i> , "I work."
<i>bārēngin</i> , "I hoe."	<i>nemēngin</i> , "I speak, make a speech."

*Note.*—From the substantive *āngal*, both *āngāngin* and *āngaltiskin*, "to act wisely," are formed. The latter is probably a composition of *āngal* and the verb *tāskin*, which coalesced into the verb *āngaltāskin*, still in use, and then into *āngaltiskin*. Of the latter the relative *āngaltige* is formed, *e.g.* : *āngaltige kouāturō* ! "act wisely with this stone."

§. 50. *Verbs derived from adjectives* express the being and becoming, or producing and effecting what the adjectives denote :—

1. <i>ūgalāngin</i> , "I shall be good."	<i>dunowāngin</i> , "I become strong."
<i>tširewāngin</i> , "I shall be right."	<i>āngalwāngin</i> , "I become wise."
<i>kurāngin</i> , "I become great."	



<p>2. <i>kuráigin</i>, "I aggrandize, exalt,"  or <i>kurágeskin</i>; but more generally <i>yitekurágeskin</i>, id.  <i>tsouígeskin</i> and <i>yitetsouígeskin</i>,  "I make warm."</p>	<p><i>yitebulgéskin</i>, "I whiten."  <i>ngágeskin</i> and <i>yiteñgágeskin</i>,  "I make well, cure."  <i>kamégeskin</i> and <i>yitekamégeskin</i>,  "I redden."</p>
--	---

§. 51. *Verbs derived from other verbs, corresponding to the Hebrew forms called Pealal.*

*leléigin*, "I walk, walk about;" from *léigin*, "I go."

*kerkérigin*, "I tie up (e. g. clothes in a bag);" from *kérigin*, "I tie, tie on (e. g. clothes on the body)."

*bubúigin*, "I deal out blows, beat well;" from *báigin*, "I give a blow, I beat."

*témtéigin*, "I build all about, build much;" from *témgín*, "I build."

*laláigin*, "I revile profusely;" from *láigin*, "I revile."

§. 52. From substantives and adjectives a number of verbs are formed, which, from their nature, occur only in the 3d pers. sing.

<p><i>patsártši</i>, "it is early before sunrise."  <i>randítši</i>, "it is midday or midnight."  <i>magaribútši</i>, "it is evening, after sunset."</p>	<p><i>bétši</i>, "it is the dry season."  <i>neñgalítši</i>, "it is the rainy season."  <i>bíneñtši</i>, "it is the cold season."  <i>dibdífútši</i>, "it is the hot season."</p>
--	---

With all these impersonal forms a subject has to be understood, and that is *dínā*, "the world, the atmosphere, the air;" and then there are some others—

<p><i>tširétši</i>, "it is verified."  <i>ketšítši</i>, "it is sweet."</p>	<p><i>tšimtši</i>, "it is bitter."  <i>bágótši</i>, "it is no more."</p>
--	--

## II. *Fundamental Forms or Conjugations of the Verb.*

53. The Bornu language possesses the capability, in common with the Hebrew and Arabic, of expressing certain modifi-

cations of the original meaning of a verb by distinct verbal forms. The inflection of these forms, although not quite identical, yet exhibits such a degree of sameness and similarity, as not to constitute so many different *conjugations*; but we retain this term, after the example of most Hebrew and Arabic grammarians, and shall accordingly speak of a *radical, relative, reflective, and causative conjugation of the Verb*.

Most of the verbs which in their radical form terminate in *ñgin* or *gin* are used in all these different conjugations; but of the verbs in *skin* only a limited number have developed a causative or relative conjugation, whilst they invariably form a reflective.

### 1. *Radical Conjugation.*

54. This expresses the simple or original notion of the verb, and consists of the pure verbal root, (which is most commonly a monosyllable) with a personal termination. The termination is a twofold one, by which all the verbs are separated into two classes, viz., in the 1st per. sing. of the indefinite tense either *ñgin* (*gin*) or *skin*. There are a few verbs which have become obsolete in the first conjugation, and are now only used either in the second or third, e.g.

<i>nāgeskin</i> , "I meet."		<i>pādgeskin</i> , "I draw to myself."
<i>pādgeskin</i> , "I go astray."		<i>tantēskin</i> , "I stretch myself."

The verbs in *ñgin*, in the 1st per. sing. of the indefinite tense, possess a secondary form, denoting emphasis or intensity. It is obtained by changing *ñgin* and *ñgē* into *ñskin* and *ñskē*, and therefore appears to be a mere imitation of the verbs in *skin*. Were it carried out in all the persons, it would have to be considered as an additional conjugation, answering to the Hebrew "Piel:" as it is, it had better be considered a *bye-form* of the radical conjugation, or a mere *attempt* at developing an intensive conjugation.

### 2. *Relative Conjugation.*

§. 55. This indicates a *relation* of the energy, denoted by the radical conjugation, to something else; thus imparting a trans-

itive force to intransitive verbs, and rendering transitive verbs doubly transitive. In this respect it corresponds with the second and fourth conjugation in Arabic. It is formed of verbs in *nġin*, by changing *nġin* or *ġin* of the radical conjugation into *ġeskin*, so that the proper characteristic of this conjugation is the inserted *ġe*. Verbs in *skin* have generally no distinct relative conjugation; for the few forms which seem to be such, may as well be considered as the causative conjugation with a relative force, *e.g.* *yegdġeskin*, "I help one to do," from *dġskin*, "I do;" *yegġkġġeskin* and *yekġkġġeskin*, "I help one to learn, I teach," from *lġskin*, "I learn;" *yukġruskin*, "I fall upon," from *yġrġskin*, "I fall;" *yġagġseskin*, "I run after," from *kġseskin*, "I run;" &c.

### 3. Reflective Conjugation.

§. 56. This gives a reflective direction to the energy expressed by the radical form of a verb, hence it cannot be used of verbs which are originally intransitive. It renders transitive verbs either intransitive or reflective, and in the plural frequently reciprocal. From verbs in *nġin* it is formed by changing that termination into *tġskin*, of which the syllable *tġ* is the characteristic; but from verbs in *skin* it is formed by a prefix. The consonant *t* again conveys the reflective characteristic, but the vowel by which it is accompanied varies. The choice of this vowel seems to be regulated by the vowel of the root, (see §. 12.) *e.g.* *tġruskin* of *rġskin*, *tġmuskin* of *mġskin*, but *tġtġskin* of *tġskin*. When a verb in *skin* begins with *k* or *p*, they are changed into *ġ* and *b* by the reflective *t*; *e.g.* *tġguskin*, from *kġskin*; but an initial *b* and *ġ* change the preceding *t* of reflection into *d*, *e.g.* *dġbuskin*, from *bġskin*, *dġgedġeskin*, from *ġendġeskin*. It is even possible that the second rule may be called into operation in consequence of the effect of the first. When a verb terminating in *skin* begins with *y*, this is simply displaced by the

reflective *t*, e. g. *táskin*, from *yáskin*; *targálleskin*, from *yargálleskin*; *tískin*, from *yískin*.

#### 4. Causative Conjugation.

§. 57. This expresses causation of the energy denoted by the radical conjugation, when formed of *intransitive verbs*, and thus corresponds in office with the Hebrew "Hifil." When formed of *transitive verbs*, its force generally coincides with that of the *relative* conjugation. Formally it always consists of the relative conjugation and a prefix, and this circumstance may account for the fact, that, in signification also, these two conjugations are not kept so distinct from one another, and that it is difficult to say whether certain forms of the verbs in *skin* are relative or causative (vide §. 55). It is not unlikely that forms of verbs in *skin*, which have *yige*, *yig*, *yug*, &c. prefixed, are properly the third conjugation, so that the *g* of these prefixes is identical with the terminational *g* which we have found to be the characteristic of the relative conjugation. But though it is still possible that *yige* is synonymous with *yite*, and as the evidently causative forms of the transitive verbs in *nigin*, are generally used as relatives, we always enumerate the the forms with the prefix *yige*, *yig*, &c., under the fourth or causative conjugation, although in force they coincide with the relative forms. It is scarcely possible not to be struck with the similarity between *yite* and  $\text{תִּי}$ , though the present force of these verbal prefixes is no longer the same in Bornu and Hebrew.

§. 58. As the causative conjugation is only formed from a limited number of verbs, it will be necessary to give a list of them. And, on account of their difference in form and use, referred to in §. 57, they had better be divided into three different classes.

a. List of *intransitive verbs* in *nigin*, forming a causative conjugation.

*ámgin*, "am cold."  
*áríngin*, "get dry."  
*atsábingin*, "hurry."  
*bagóningin*, "die."  
*bóningin*, "lie down."  
*bírúngin*, "am friendless."  
*dāmáningin*, "recover."  
*dáningin*, "stand."  
*dērúngin*, "am lean."  
*debdóningin*, "spend a day."  
*díngin*, "become old."  
*dōndíngin*, "become ill."  
*dzúmgin*, "fast."  
*jugúngin*, "go before."  
*gámgin*, "am left."  
*geskénigin*, "am steady."  
*kaliáningin*, "become a slave."  
*kāmbéningin*, "become free."  
*kannuáningin*, "become warm."  
*káningin*, "escape."  
*keñtsúningin*, "become a slave."  
*kérúngin*, "become solid."  
*ketšúningin*, "am agreeable."  
*kōeigéningin*, "am afraid."  
*kúlúngin*, "am fat."  
*lámgin*, "wash."  
*larsáningin*, "marry."  
*leléngin*, "walk."  
*léngin*, "sleep."  
*lénigin*, "go."  
*língin*, "come out."  
*lólōningin*, "tremble."

*lámgin*, "immerge."  
*manáningin*, "speak."  
*mbáningin*, "swim."  
*méningin*, "return."  
*méreskin*, "recover."  
*námgin*, "sit."  
*némgin*, "am silent."  
*nóningin*, "know."  
*nóngūningin*, "am ashamed."  
*ngalgóningin*, "recover."  
*ngámgin*, "am dry."  
*ngáningin*, "recover."  
*ngāfóningin*, "go back."  
*ngēséningin*, "forget."  
*ngubúningin*, "be many."  
*ngudíngin*, "become poor."  
*ngúningin*, "bow."  
*ngurúngurúmgin*, "kneel."  
*páningin*, "awake."  
*rúningin*, "fear."  
*sálingin*, "pray."  
*táningin*, "recollect."  
*tsémgin*, "descend."  
*tšúningin*, "rise."  
*tusúningin*, "rest."  
*wólúngin*, "return."  
*wolóningin*, "wash myself."  
*wuténigin*, "pant."  
*wuráningin*, "grow up."  
*yéséningin*, "go out of the way."  
*yílúngin*, "hollow."  
*yíngin*, "breathe."

§. 59. *List of Transitive Verbs in ñgin, forming a Causative Conjugation, which, however, is commonly used with a relative force.*

*ámgin*, "lift up."  
*ámgin*, "stretch."  
*bérágin*, "scatter."  
*dálágin*, "dye."  
*dámgin*, "deny."  
*déngin*, "cook."  
*dúngin*, "rub."  
*dírúgin*, "cut."  
*dzúngin*, "push."  
*fóngin*, "join."  
*fúngin*, "empty."  
*gálágin*, "teach."  
*góngin*, "take."  
*gúlágin*, "tell."  
*kálgin*, "drive back."  
*kámgin*, "cut."  
*kóngin*, "stick."  
*lámgin*, "load."  
*lúngin*, "hang."  
*mágin*, "seek."  
*ndálgin*, "steal."  
*ngádarúgin*, "report."  
*ngágin*, "milk."  
*ngúrñógin*, "help."  
*pálgin*, "change."  
*párúgin*, "separate."  
*pépéngin*, "untie."  
*pérúgin*, "spread."  
*péléngin*, "show."  
*péremgin*, "open."  
*píngin*, "draw."  
*rángin*, "press."  
*rémgin*, "bury."

*róngin*, "hold fast."  
*sámgin*, "rub."  
*sámgin*, "distribute."  
*squárúgin*, "ask advice."  
*támgin*, "hack."  
*tamóngin*, "finish."  
*tárúgin*, "scatter."  
*tárúgin*, "dry."  
*téngin*, "aim."  
*témbalágin*, "roll."  
*títúgin*, "cover."  
*toqsámgin*, "mix."  
*tsággéngin*, "dress."  
*tsálgin*, "cut."  
*tsámgin*, "gather."  
*tsébalágin*, "send."  
*tséúgin*, "shake."  
*tsúngin*, "take."  
*tsúmgin*, "put down."  
*tshúágin*, "hoe."  
*túngin*, "honour."  
*tángin*, "squeeze."  
*wágin*, "will not."  
*wárúgin*, "burn."  
*wómgin*, "strike."  
*wósegin*, "beat."  
*wúngin*, "look."  
*wúrúgin*, "cut off."  
*wuséngin*, "cause to kneel."  
*karágin*, "read."  
*yémgin*, "sprinkle."  
*yírúgin*, "throw."

Whereas all the preceding verbs form their causative conjugation by prefixing *yite* to the relative, the verb *kóygin*, "to pass," forms its causative like the verbs in *skin*, viz. *yikkóygeskin*, c. Ac. "I pass with something, I cause something to pass."

§. 60. A still smaller number of verbs in *skin* possess a causative conjugation. With them it is always derived from the radical form by prefixing either *yite* or *yige*, or a modification of the latter.

Verbs in *skin*, forming their causative conjugation by simply prefixing *yite*, are—

<i>yeláygeskin</i> , "I remain."	<i>róygeskin</i> , "I hang."
<i>kéygeskin</i> , "I distribute."	<i>wáreyeskin</i> , "I am ill."

Others form it by prefixing *yige*, viz.

<i>náygeskin</i> , "I overtake."	<i>báskin</i> , "I mouut."
<i>ráygeskin</i> , "I like."	<i>búskin</i> , "I pound."
<i>rymbúskin</i> , "I pay."	<i>pértéskin</i> , "I pick."
<i>róréskin</i> , "I collect."	

Others prefix *yig*, *yeg*, *yug*, as the vowel of the verb may require, viz.

<i>yegdeléskin</i> , from <i>dúskin</i> , "I do."
<i>yigdlóreşkin</i> , from <i>dóreşkin</i> , "I pick."
<i>yuglútéskin</i> , from <i>dútéskin</i> , "I sew."
<i>yegsáýgeskin</i> , from <i>sáýgeskin</i> , "I put down."

Others again modify the prefix still further, or equally well admit of several of the above prefixes, viz.

<i>bāyúskin</i> , "I cook," has <i>yitebāyúskin</i> and <i>yigbāyúskin</i> .
<i>búskin</i> , "I eat," has <i>yigebúskin</i> and <i>yegbúskin</i> .
<i>gámbuskin</i> , "I scratch," has <i>yitegámbuskin</i> and <i>yigegámbuskin</i> .
<i>káséskin</i> , "I run," has <i>yigagáséskin</i> and <i>yikkáséskin</i> .
<i>ladéskin</i> , "I sell," has <i>yiggladéskin</i> and <i>yiteladéskin</i> .
<i>páldgeskin</i> , "I am lost," has <i>yitepáldgeskin</i> and <i>yippáldgeskin</i> .
<i>yūruskin</i> , "I fall," has <i>yūkkúruskin</i> .

*yáwāreşkin*, "I laugh," has *yukkáreşkin*.

*liskin*, "I learn," has *yegekéliskin* and *yekkeliskin*.

*karaskin*, (an obsolete form of *karáigin*) "I read," has *yagagáruskin* and *yakkáruskin*.

*dúrúşkin*, "to shower down," has *yiteđúrúşkin* and *yugdúrúşkin*.

### 5. Compound Conjugations.

§. 61. Strictly speaking, the causative conjugation belongs here, as it generally is a compound of *yite* and the relative conjugation. But as this is a regular and uniform formation, we do not enumerate it in this place, where we have only to do with a few isolated and rare forms which consist of a combination of several of the above described conjugations. They shew the capability of the language to develop a number of other regular forms, in addition to the above-mentioned four conjugations. The following are such isolated forms as I met with—

*kérigin*, "I tie;" reflective *kérteskin*, "I tie myself;" relative reflective *kértegeskin*, "I tie myself to," *i.e.* "I hold fast something."

*gérigin*, "I drag;" reflective, *gérteskin*, "I drag myself, I move;" relative reflective, *gértegeskin*. "I move to."

*kéliigin*, "I fold, roll;" reflective, *kélitéskin*, "to roll, wind itself (said of a serpent);" relative reflective, *kélitēgeskin*, "to wind itself round something."

*teigin*, (obsolete) "I am near;" reflective, *tékteşkin*, (obsolete) "I near myself;" relative, *tékkeskin*, "I put near to;" relative reflective, *tékteşkin*, "I recline on."

### III. The Tenses of Verbs.

§. 62. The Kanuri has only *absolute tenses*, and possesses no forms exactly corresponding to our imperfect, pluperfect, and paulopost future; for what it has analogous to these relative tenses is in fact a conjunctive mood, vide §. 89. The tenses for which the Bornu language possesses distinct forms, are five in number, of which two are



past, one future, and two indefinite. The *past tenses* are an *aorist* and a *perfect*; the *indefinite tenses*, so called because not confined to any one time, are a *first*, or *durative*, *frequentative*; and a *second*, or *momentary*, *solitive*, *indefinite*. In the indefinite tense the time-relation is subordinate, and the qualitative relation predominate. Therefore these two forms might be viewed as *moods*: but as they are formally parallel to the perfect tense, and as the time-relation is, at the same time, not excluded from them, we notice them amongst the *tenses*. It must also be remarked, that the second indefinite has in several persons a *bye-form* in *o*, viz. in the first person singular of the verbs in *ñgin* and *skin*, as; *wñngē* and *wñngō*, *wñņeskē* and *wñņeskō*, *wñgeskē* and *wñgeskō*, *wñteskē* and *wñteskō*, *yitewñgeskē* and *yitewñgeskō*, *rúskē* and *rúskō*, *túruskē* and *túruskō*; and in the third person singular and plural of most verbs in *skin*, as, e. g. *tsəlúlę* and *tsəlúlō*, *tsalúlę* and *tsalúlō*, *tsę* and *tsō*, *tsátę* and *tsátō*, *tsásátę* and *tsásátō*, *tšętsę* and *tšętsō*, *tšęšę* and *tšęšō*, &c.

In order to afford a convenient survey, we now give the first person singular of all the tenses in the different conjugations.

	I. CONJUGATIO N.	II. CONJUGATION.	III. CONJUGATION.	IV. CONJUGATION.
Indef. I.	<i>wñngin</i>	<i>wñgeskin</i>	<i>wñteskin</i>	<i>yitewñgeskin</i>
	<i>dámgin</i>	<i>dábgeskin</i>	<i>dápteskin</i>	<i>yitedábgeskin</i>
	<i>ladęskin</i>		<i>tęladęskin</i>	<i>yigeladęskin</i>
Indef. II.	<i>wñngē</i>	<i>wñgeskē</i>	<i>wñteskē</i>	<i>yitewñgeskē</i>
	<i>dámgē</i>	<i>dábgeskē</i>	<i>dápteskē</i>	<i>yitedábgeskē</i>
	<i>ladęskē</i>		<i>tęladęskē</i>	<i>yigeladęskē</i>
Perfect.	<i>wñngi</i>	<i>wñgeski</i>	<i>wñteski</i>	<i>yitewñgeski</i>
	<i>dámgi</i>	<i>dábgeski</i>	<i>dápteski</i>	<i>yitedábgeski</i>
	<i>ladęski</i>		<i>tęladęski</i>	<i>yigeladęski</i>
Aorist.	<i>wñgoskō</i>	<i>wñgiguskō</i>	<i>wñgatuskō</i>	<i>yitewñgiguskō</i>
	<i>dabgōskō</i>	<i>dabgiguskō</i>	<i>dabgátuskō</i>	<i>yitedabgiguskō</i>
	<i>kiladęskō</i>		<i>katęladęskō</i>	<i>kigeladęskō</i>
Future.	<i>wñtsoskō</i>	<i>wñtsiguskō</i>	<i>wñtatuskō</i>	<i>yitewñtsiguskō</i>
	<i>daptsōskō</i>	<i>daptsiguskō</i>	<i>daptátuskō</i>	<i>yitedaptsiguskō</i>
	<i>tšiladęskō</i>		<i>tatęladęskō</i>	<i>tšigeladęskō</i>

IV. *Inflection of Verbs.*

§. 63. All verbs are divided into two classes, according as their termination in the radical conjugation is either *nigin* or *skin*; and originally a difference of meaning seems to have been corresponding to this difference of form. The difference was probably this, that verbs in *nigin* expressed a notion complete in itself, and not needing the complement of an object; whereas verbs in *skin* expressed a transitive or outwardly-operating direction of the verbal energy. Accordingly this difference of Kanuri verbs seems to have been the same as that between the Greek middle and active, or the Sanscrit atmanepadam and parasmaipadam. This view is also borne out by the circumstance, that the verbs in *nigin* have formed a distinct relative conjugation, whereas the verbs in *skin* are without one (vide §. 55). But as it has been observed with regard to those languages, so it must also be said of the Kanuri, that language, as it at present exists, disposes of both forms in rather an arbitrary manner; so that the originally intransitive form has now as frequently a transitive signification, and *vice versa*.

Verbs terminating in the radical conjugation in *nigin* are so differently inflected from those in *skin*, that, in point of inflection, both must be kept entirely distinct. If we compare both classes, the personal characteristic appears to be, in the *singular*, for the first person, *g*; for the second, *m*; for the third, *ts*; and in the *plural*—where, however, the characteristic of person and tense are not kept so distinct—for the first person, *ye*; for the second, *wu*; and for the third, *tsa*.

A. *Inflection of Verbs in nigin.*

§. 64. It is a very remarkable circumstance, that the Kanuri language possesses a verb which is identical with the inflectional terminations of the verbs in *nigin*. Such an identity, it is true, might be merely accidental. But

if we consider the indefinite generality and vagueness of the signification of that peculiar verb (comp. the Syntax), and its dependent character as an enclitic, by dint of which character it could so easily coalesce with a root into one word, we must be led to think it probable, that the present conjugational terminations were originally nothing more than the inflected forms of the verb *nigin*, appended to the verbal roots. This view is the less surprising, as it is supposed, that in many other languages also the inflectional terminations arose from originally independent and separate words. Whether the inflection of the verbs in *skin* has the same origin, cannot now be so easily decided, as it appears to be much more closely and organically connected with the verbal root, and probably of greater antiquity, than the inflection of verbs in *nigin*.

We now give the inflection of the verb *nigin*, as a key to the inflection of the whole class of verbs in *nigin*, remarking, that the verb *nigin*, in the present stage of the language, is not used in any but the first conjugation; and even here has no perfect tense.

INDEFINITE I.		INDEFINITE II.		AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wú</i>	<i>nigin</i>	<i>nigē</i> or <i>nigō</i>	<i>goskō</i>		<i>tsoskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>nemìn</i>	<i>nem</i>	<i>gam</i>		<i>tsam</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsenyìn</i> or <i>tšin tse</i>		<i>gouō</i>		<i>tsouō</i>
<i>andí</i>	<i>nyēn</i>	<i>nyē</i>	<i>geiyē</i>		<i>tseyē</i>
<i>nandí</i>	<i>nuwī</i>	<i>nū</i>	<i>gou</i>		<i>tsou</i>
<i>sandí</i>	<i>tsanyìn</i> or <i>tsei tsā</i>		<i>gēda</i> or <i>gēada</i>	<i>tšēda</i> or <i>tšēada</i>	

§. 65. Verbal roots whose inflectional terminations coincide with the preceding verb terminate either in a vowel, or in one of the liquid consonants, *l, m, n, ñ, r*. If the verbal character is a vowel or *r*, the terminations are regular throughout; viz. in the first indefinite, *nigin, nemìn, tšin*; *nyen, nuwi tsei*. In illustration of this, we will now give the full inflection of the verb *wúnigin*, "I look."

	I. CONJUGATION.	II. CONJUGATION.	III. CONJU.	IV. CONJUGATION.	
Indefinite I.	<i>wu</i>	<i>wúnigin</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wúgeskin</i>	<i>wúteskin</i>	<i>yitewúgeskin</i>
	<i>ni</i>	<i>wúnemìn</i>	<i>wúgemìn</i>	<i>wútemìn</i>	<i>yitewúgemìn</i>
	<i>ši</i>	<i>wútsìn</i>	<i>wútsëgin</i>	<i>wútin</i>	<i>yitewútsëgin</i>
	<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúnyën</i>	<i>wúgën</i>	<i>wútën</i>	<i>yitewúgën</i>
	<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúnuwī</i>	<i>wúguwī</i>	<i>wútuwī</i>	<i>yitewúguwī</i>
	<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútsëi</i>	<i>wútsagei</i>	<i>wútei</i>	<i>yitewútsagei</i>
Indefinite II.	<i>wu</i>	<i>wúnigē</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>wúgeskē</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>wúteskē</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>yitewúgeskē</i> <sup>5</sup>
	<i>ni</i>	<i>wúnem</i>	<i>wúgem</i>	<i>wútem</i>	<i>yitewúgem</i>
	<i>ši</i>	<i>wútsë</i>	<i>wútsëgë</i>	<i>wúte</i>	<i>yitewútsëgë</i>
	<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúnyē</i>	<i>wúgē</i>	<i>wútē</i>	<i>yitewúgē</i>
	<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúnū</i>	<i>wúgū</i>	<i>wútū</i>	<i>yitewúgū</i>
	<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútsá</i>	<i>wútsāga</i>	<i>wúta</i>	<i>yitewútsāga</i>
Perfect.	<i>wu</i>	<i>wúnigī</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>wúgeskī</i>	<i>wúteskī</i>	<i>yitewúgeskī</i>
	<i>ni</i>	<i>wúnemī</i>	<i>wúgemī</i>	<i>wútemī</i>	<i>yitewúgemī</i>
	<i>ši</i>	<i>wútsī</i>	<i>wútsëgī</i>	<i>wúti</i>	<i>yitewútsëgī</i>
	<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúnyē</i>	<i>wúgē</i>	<i>wútē</i>	<i>yitewúgē</i>
	<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúnuwī</i>	<i>wúguwī</i>	<i>wútuwī</i>	<i>yitewúguwī</i>
	<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútsëi</i>	<i>wútsagei</i>	<i>wútei</i>	<i>yitewútsagei</i>
Aorist.	<i>wu</i>	<i>wúgosko</i>	<i>wúgigusko</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>wúgateskō</i>	<i>yitewúgiguskō</i>
	<i>ni</i>	<i>wúgam</i>	<i>wúgigem</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>wúgatëm</i>	<i>yitewúgigem</i>
	<i>ši</i>	<i>wúgonō</i>	<i>wúgigunō</i>	<i>wúgatë</i>	<i>yitewúgigunō</i>
	<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúgeiyē</i>	<i>wúgigē</i>	<i>wúgatē</i>	<i>yitewúgigē</i>
	<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúgou</i>	<i>wúgigū</i>	<i>wúgatū</i>	<i>yitewúgigū</i>
	<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúgēda</i>	<i>wúgēga</i> <sup>9</sup>	<i>wúgata</i>	<i>yitewúgēga</i>

<sup>1</sup> and *wúnęskin*.<sup>2</sup> and *wúnigō*, also *wúnęskē* and *wúnęskō*.<sup>3</sup> and *wúguskō* or *wúgeskō*.<sup>4</sup> and *wúteskō*.<sup>5</sup> and *yitewúgeskō*.<sup>6</sup> and *wúnęskī*.<sup>7</sup> and *wúgigęskō*.<sup>8</sup> and *wúgigęnō*.<sup>9</sup> and *wúgęga*.

	I. CONJUGATION.	II. CONJUGATION.	III. CONJU.	IV. CONJUGATION.
Future.	<i>wu wútsoskō</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wútsīguskō</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>wútatetskō</i>	<i>yitewútsīguskō</i>
	<i>nī wútsam</i>	<i>wútsīgēm</i>	<i>wútatēm</i>	<i>yitewútsīgēm</i>
	<i>ši wútsonō</i>	<i>wútsīgūnō</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>wútatē</i>	<i>yitewútsīgūnō</i>
	<i>ándi wútsiyē</i>	<i>wútsīgē</i>	<i>wútatē</i>	<i>yitewútsīgē</i>
	<i>nándi wútsōn</i>	<i>wútsīgū</i>	<i>wútatū</i>	<i>yitewútsīgū</i>
	<i>sándi wútsēda</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>wútsāga</i>	<i>wúтата</i>	<i>yitewútsāga</i>

§. 66. In the preceding paragraph we illustrated the *normal* inflection of verbs in *nigin*, but now we have also to attend to those cases, where the normal inflection is interfered with. This interference arises from the contact of the verbal character, *i.e.* the last letter of the verbal root, with the initial of the termination, and the actual deviation from the normal consists only in the assimilation occasioned by that contact. This assimilation takes place either in the preceding or the following of the two meeting letters: the former is the case, when the verbal character is *m*, *n*, or *ñ*, and the latter, when it is *l*. The changes which *l* produces are confined to the first conjugation, and consist in the conversion of the initial *n* of the termination, into *l*. Thus of *wólnigin*, "I return," we get *wólleskin*, *wóllemín*, *wóllēn*, *wólluwī*, &c. All the verbs whose character is *m*, *n*, or *ñ* agree in dropping the *n* of the first person, as, *námgin*, *mángin*, *kálangin*: but in their further inflection they separate into two classes, one of which retain their character throughout and are conjugated regularly, as verbs with the character *r*, and the other which assimilate their character to the termination, so that *m* becomes *p*, *n* becomes *t*, and *ñ* becomes *k* before *t*, and again *m* becomes *b*, *n* becomes *d*, and *ñ* becomes *g* before *g*. Only in the last case the two *g*'s, thus meeting, frequently become *kk*. Thus from *námgin*, "I sit,"

<sup>1</sup> and *wúskō*

<sup>2</sup> and *wútsiāda*.

<sup>3</sup> and *wútsīgeskō*.

<sup>4</sup> and *wútsīgēnō*.

*māṅgin*, "I draw tight," *kālaṅgin*, "I turn," we get in the first conjugation :

<i>náptšin</i>	<i>máttšin</i>	<i>kálaktšin</i>
<i>náptsei</i>	<i>máttsei</i>	<i>kálaktsei</i>
<i>náptṣe</i>	<i>máttṣe</i>	<i>kálaktṣe</i>
<i>náptsā</i>	<i>máttṣā</i>	<i>kálaktṣā</i>
<i>nábgoskō</i>	<i>mádgoskō</i>	<i>kálaggoskō</i> & <i>kálakkoskō</i>
<i>nábgam</i>	<i>mádgam</i>	<i>kálaggam</i> & <i>kálakkam</i>
<i>nábgonō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>mádgonō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>kálaggonō</i> & <i>kállakkonō, &amp;c.</i>
<i>náptsoskō</i>	<i>máttṣoskō</i>	<i>kálaktṣoskō</i>
<i>náptsam</i>	<i>máttṣam</i>	<i>kálaktṣam</i>
<i>náptsonō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>máttṣonō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>kálaktṣonō, &amp;c.</i>

To show the further euphonic alterations, we will give the full inflection of *māṅgin*, in the second and third conjugations, from which the corresponding forms of *nāṅgin* and *kālaṅgin* can be easily abstracted.

### Conjugation II.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>ru</i>	<i>mádgēs kin</i>	<i>mádgēs kē</i>	<i>mádgīguskō</i>	<i>máttšīgṣskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>mádgē min</i>	<i>mádgēm</i>	<i>mádgīgēm</i>	<i>máttšīgēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>máttṣē gin</i>	<i>máttṣē ge</i>	<i>mádgīg unō</i>	<i>máttšīg unō</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>mádgē n</i>	<i>mádgē</i>	<i>mádgīg ē</i>	<i>máttšīg ē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>mádgu wī</i>	<i>mádgū</i>	<i>mádgīg ū</i>	<i>máttšīg ū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>máttṣa gei</i>	<i>máttṣā ga</i>	<i>mádgīg a</i>	<i>máttšā ga</i>

### Conjugation III.

<i>ru</i>	<i>máttṣē kin</i>	<i>máttṣē kē</i>	<i>mádgatē skō</i>	<i>mátttatē skō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>máttṣē min</i>	<i>máttṣēm</i>	<i>mádgatēm</i>	<i>mátttatēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>máttin</i>	<i>máttē</i>	<i>mádgatē</i>	<i>mátttatē</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>máttē n</i>	<i>máttē</i>	<i>mádgatē</i>	<i>mátttatē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>máttu wī</i>	<i>máttū</i>	<i>mádgatū</i>	<i>mátttatū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>máttē i</i>	<i>máttā</i>	<i>mádgātā</i>	<i>mátttātā</i>

§. 67. As the verbs with the character *m*, *n* or *ni* separate into

two classes, viz. those euphonicly changed and those unchanged, we now furnish a list of both classes.

1. List of verbs euphonicly changed :

a. Verbs inflected like *námgin*, "I sit:"

*āḡelámgin*, "I trouble."

*ámgin*, "I lift."

*dagámgin*, "I make holes in planting."

*dámgin*, "I hinder."

*démgin*, "I permit."

*gámgin*, "I remain behind."

*garámgin*, "I prick."

*kámgin*, "I overtake."

*kárumgin*, "I sew a mat."

*lámgin*, "I load"

*lámgin*, "I dive."

*rémgin*, "I cover."

*surámgin*, "I sip."

*támgin*, "I fill."

*tsámgin*, "I collect."

*tsémgin*, "I descend."

*tsámgin*, "I put down."

*támgin*, "I reverence."

*watsémgin*, "It behoves me."

*wómgin*, "I knock."

*yámgin*, "I sprinkle."

b. Verbs inflected like *mámgin* "I draw tight:"

*ḡebámgin*, "I mash."

*kamámgin*, "I knead."

*kámgin*, "I skim."

*kasámgin*, "I consent."

*léngin*, "I sleep."

*plúngin*, "I draw a sword."

*rámgin*, "I lean against."

*sámgin*, "I summon to prayer by hollooming."

*sámgin*, "I whip."

*súrungin*, "I open a loop."

*támgin*, "I ascend."

*támgin*, "I squeeze."

c. Verbs inflected like *kálaḡgin*, "I turn."

*bámgin*, "I knock."

*fómgin*, "I join."

*kómgin*, "I stick."

*mámgin*, "I draw out."

*pertémgin*, "I agonize."

*rámgin*, "I can."

*sadámgin*, "I give alms."

*sámgin*, "I strain."

*sámgin*, "I bore."

*sámgin*, "I scrape."

*támgin*, "I recollect."

*tsámgin*, "I cover."

*tsémgin*, "I beckon."

*tsómgin*, "I dip in."

*tsámgin*, "I cut open."

*yēsámgin*, "I castrate."

*yómgin*, "I drive."

2. List of verbs not euphonicly changed, but inflected regularly, like those with the character *r*.

a. Verbs with *m* as their character :

<i>adīṃgin</i> , "I make a eunuch."	<i>nīṃgin</i> , "I break."
<i>āṃgin</i> , "I grow cold."	<i>nāṃgin</i> , "I mark."
<i>bēreṃgin</i> , "I twine yarn."	<i>nēṃgin</i> , "I am silent."
<i>bertsēṃgin</i> , "I honour."	<i>ñgāṃgin</i> , "I become lean."
<i>dāmgin</i> , "to flow."	<i>ñgēreṃgin</i> , "I run."
<i>digāmgin</i> , "I make water."	<i>pēreṃgin</i> , "I open."
<i>kāmgin</i> , "I cut."	<i>salāmgin</i> , "I salute."
<i>kāmgin</i> , "I become an adult."	<i>sāmgin</i> , "I rub."
<i>kēreṃgin</i> , "I lop."	<i>sāmgin</i> , "I distribute."
<i>kārumgin</i> , "I bale out."	<i>tāmgin</i> , "I throw."
<i>lāmgin</i> , "I join."	<i>tēṃgin</i> , "I build."
<i>lāmgin</i> , "I wash."	

b. Verbs with *n* as their character :

<i>dēlanṅin</i> , "I boil a soup."	<i>ntsūṅin</i> , "I beg."
<i>lālāṅin</i> , "I revile."	<i>ñgāṅin</i> , "I milk."
<i>lāṅin</i> , "I revile."	<i>sēṅin</i> , "I disentangle."
<i>pīṅin</i> , "I put off clothes."	<i>yīṅin</i> , "I breathe."
<i>naśūṅin</i> , "I dream."	

c. Verbs with *ñ* as their character :

<i>kārāṅin</i> , "I approach."	<i>kēraṅin</i> , "I overhear."
--------------------------------	--------------------------------

§. 68. The verb *pāṅin*, "I hear," has certain peculiarities which distinguish it from *pāṅin*, "I awake," and which consist in its assuming *n* before all formative appendages beginning with *t*, and in its retaining *ñ* before the formative appendages beginning with *g*. The last of these two rules, however, permits of one exception, the passive participle not being *pāṅgāta*, but *pāṅgāta*. In the first conjugation the inflection of the chief tenses is as follows :

INDEFINITE I.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu pāṅin</i> ,	<i>pāṅgōskō</i> ,	<i>pāntsōskō</i> .
<i>ñi pāṅmin</i> ,	<i>pāṅgam</i> ,	<i>pāntsam</i> .



	INDEFINITE I.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>ši</i>	<i>pántšin</i>	<i>pāñgónō</i>	<i>pāntsónō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>pányen</i>	<i>pāñgeiyē</i>	<i>pāntseyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>pānuwī</i>	<i>pāñgou</i>	<i>pāntsou</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>pántsei</i>	<i>pāñgēda</i>	<i>pāntšēda</i>

§. 69. Special notice must also be taken of the verbs in which the termination is preceded by *se* or *su*, and all of which are either dissyllabic or polysyllabic. They have this peculiarity, that, before the terminations beginning with *g* and *ts*, they always drop the *e* or *u*, and that they only retain the *s*, of the terminational *ts*, so that two *s*'s meet, one radical, the other formative; both of which, according to §. 18, are changed into *š* before *i* and *e*.

In illustration of these rules we will here give the inflection of the verbs *kásēngin*, "I draw," and *tusúngin*, "I rest."

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>kásēngin</i>	<i>kásēngē</i>	<i>kásēngī</i>	<i>kásgoskō</i>	<i>kássoskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>kásēngimin</i>	<i>kásēngem</i>	<i>kásēngēmī</i>	<i>kásgam</i>	<i>kássam</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>káššin</i>	<i>kásse</i>	<i>kášši</i>	<i>kásgonō</i>	<i>kássonō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>kásēnyen</i>	<i>kásēnyē</i>	<i>kásēnyē</i>	<i>kásgeiyē</i>	<i>kásseyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>kásēnuwī</i>	<i>kásēnū</i>	<i>kásēnuwī</i>	<i>kásgou</i>	<i>kássou</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>kássei</i>	<i>kássā</i>	<i>kássei</i>	<i>kásgēda</i>	<i>káššēda</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>tusúngin</i>	<i>tusúngē</i>	<i>tusúngī</i>	<i>tusgós-kō</i>	<i>tussós-kō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>tusúngimin</i>	<i>tusúngem</i>	<i>tusúngēmī</i>	<i>túsgam</i>	<i>tússam</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>túššin</i>	<i>tússe</i>	<i>túšši</i>	<i>tusgónō</i>	<i>tussónō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>tusúnyen</i>	<i>tusúnyē</i>	<i>tusúnyē</i>	<i>tusgeiyē</i>	<i>tusseiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>tusúnuwī</i>	<i>tusúnū</i>	<i>tusúnuwī</i>	<i>túsgou</i>	<i>tússou</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tússei</i>	<i>tússā</i>	<i>tússei</i>	<i>tusgēda</i>	<i>túššēda</i>

In the second and third conjugations it will be sufficient, to inflect only one verb, and the fourth needs no illustration, as it can be easily abstracted from the second.

## Conjugation II.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>kásqeskin</i>	<i>kásqeskē</i>	<i>kásqeskī</i>	<i>kásqiguskō</i>	<i>kásšiquskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>kásqemin</i>	<i>kásqem</i>	<i>kásqemī</i>	<i>kásqigem</i>	<i>kásšigem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>kásqegin</i>	<i>kásqegē</i>	<i>kásqegī</i>	<i>kásqigunō</i>	<i>kásšigunō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>kásqēn</i>	<i>kásqē</i>	<i>kásqē</i>	<i>kásqigē</i>	<i>kásšigē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>kásquwi</i>	<i>kásqu</i>	<i>kásquwī</i>	<i>kásqigū</i>	<i>kásšigū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>kásqagei</i>	<i>kásqāya</i>	<i>kásqagei</i>	<i>kásqēga</i>	<i>kásšāga</i>

## Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>kásteskin</i>	<i>kásteskē</i>	<i>kásteskī</i>	<i>kástateskō</i>	<i>kástateskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>kástemin</i>	<i>kástem</i>	<i>kástemī</i>	<i>kástatem</i>	<i>kástatem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>kástin</i>	<i>kástē</i>	<i>kástī</i>	<i>kástate</i>	<i>kástate</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>kástēn</i>	<i>kástē</i>	<i>kástē</i>	<i>kástatē</i>	<i>kástatē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>kástuwī</i>	<i>kástū</i>	<i>kástuwī</i>	<i>kástatū</i>	<i>kástatū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>kástēi</i>	<i>kástā</i>	<i>kástēi</i>	<i>kástāta</i>	<i>kástūta</i>

The following verbs are conjugated in the same manner—

*mēsēngin*, "I decay."

*pēsēngin*, "I winnow."

*pērēsēngin*, "I escape."

*teŋgerēsēngin*, "I halt."

*tūsēngin*, "I beat."

*tsūsēngin*, "I vomit."

*wósēngin*, "I clear from chaff."

*wusēngin*, "I cause a camel to kneel."

*yēsēngin*, "I go out of the way."

The defective verb *túsqeskin*, "I set on fire," is inflected like the third conjugation of the preceding verbs.

### B. Inflection of Verbs in skin.

§. 70. Verbs in *skin* exhibit a far greater variety and multiplicity of forms, than verbs in *ngin*; so much so, that, at first sight, one might be tempted to say, what has once been asserted of the Georgian, that the language has as many conjugations as verbs. But if we examine them more closely, we soon find that they admit of a distribution into larger or smaller groups. The most striking difference in the inflection of verbs in *skin*

from those in *nigin* consists in the former using *prefixes*, in several cases, where the latter have *suffixes*. These cases are, the formation of the third person, the characteristic of the aorist and future tenses, and of the reflective conjugation. As these prefixes occasion several changes in verbs beginning with *y*, the first great division of the verbs terminating in *skin* will be that of verbs beginning with *y*, and verbs beginning otherwise. Then both these classes have to be subdivided into, 1. monosyllabic verbs, 2. Verbs monosyllabic in consequence of contraction, and 3. polysyllabic verbs.

I. *Inflection of Verbs in skin, not beginning with y.*

a. Such verbs with *monosyllabic roots*. And these monosyllables have again to be divided according to their vowels, viz.

α. *Monosyllabic Roots with the Vowel i.*

§. 71. Of the last-mentioned class, the verb *diskin*, "I do," may serve as a paradigm.

Conjugation I.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>diskin</i>	<i>diskē</i>	<i>diskī</i>	<i>kūliskō</i>	<i>tšidiskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>dimin</i>	<i>dīm</i>	<i>dīmī</i>	<i>kūdem</i>	<i>tšīdem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsedin</i>	<i>tsēde</i>	<i>tsēdī</i>	<i>kūdō</i>	<i>tšīdō</i>
<i>andi</i>	<i>dīyēn</i>	<i>dīyē</i>	<i>dīyē</i>	<i>kūdiyē</i>	<i>tšīdiyē</i>
<i>nandi</i>	<i>dīwī</i>	<i>dīū</i>	<i>dīwī</i>	<i>kūdū</i>	<i>tšīdū</i>
<i>sandi</i>	<i>tsálin</i>	<i>tsáde</i>	<i>tsádlī</i>	<i>kūdō</i>	<i>tšēdō</i>

Conjugation II. "I make myself," e.g. by looking into a mirror.

<i>wu</i>	<i>tēléskin</i>	<i>tēléskē</i>	<i>tēléskī</i>	<i>katēdēskō</i>	<i>tātēdēskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>tēdemīn</i>	<i>tēdem</i>	<i>tēdemī</i>	<i>kātēdem</i>	<i>tātēdem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tēdin</i>	<i>tēde</i>	<i>tēdlī</i>	<i>kātēdō</i>	<i>tātēdō</i>
<i>andi</i>	<i>tēdīyēn</i>	<i>tēdīyē</i>	<i>tēdīyē</i>	<i>katēdīyē</i>	<i>tātēdīyē</i>
<i>nandi</i>	<i>tēduwī</i>	<i>tēdū</i>	<i>tēduwī</i>	<i>kātēdū</i>	<i>tātēdū</i>
<i>sandi</i>	<i>tálin</i>	<i>táde</i>	<i>tádlī</i>	<i>katáulō</i>	<i>tatáulō</i>

Conjugation IV., also with the forms, *yegdéskin* and *yite-dískin*.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yegdéskin</i>	<i>yegdéske</i>	<i>yegdéske</i>	<i>kígdéskō</i>	<i>tšígdéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yegdeḡmin</i>	<i>yegdeḡm</i>	<i>yegdeḡmī</i>	<i>kígdem</i>	<i>tšígdem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tségdin</i>	<i>tségdē</i>	<i>tségdī</i>	<i>kígdō</i>	<i>tšígdō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yégdēn</i> & } <i>yégdīyen</i> }	<i>yégdē</i>	<i>yégdē</i>	<i>kígdīyē</i>	<i>tšígdīyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yegdūwī</i>	<i>yégdū</i>	<i>yegdūwī</i>	<i>kígdū</i>	<i>tšígdū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsaságdin</i> { <i>tságdē</i> }	<i>tsaságdē</i> & } <i>tságdē</i> }	<i>tsaságdī</i>	<i>keságdō</i>	<i>tšeságdō</i>

Of this class of verbs we only met with two more, viz. *tískin*, "I suffice," *lískin*, "I learn;" but the former is only used in the first conjugation, and the latter has in the third conjugation, not *teléskin* but *telískin*, and in the fourth, not *yegléskin*, but *yekéliskin* or *yekéliskin*, &c.

§. 72. *β. Monosyllabic roots with the vowel a.*

Conjugation I.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>táskin</i>	<i>táskē</i>	<i>táskī</i>	<i>kítaskō</i>	<i>tšítaskō.</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>tāmin</i>	<i>tām</i>	<i>tāmī</i>	<i>kítām</i>	<i>tšítām.</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsétei</i>	<i>tsétā</i>	<i>tsétei</i>	<i>kītā</i>	<i>tšítā.</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>teiyēn</i>	<i>teiyē</i>	<i>teiyē</i>	<i>kiteiyē</i>	<i>tšíteiyē.</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>tāwī</i>	<i>tau</i>	<i>tāwī</i>	<i>kítāu</i>	<i>tšítāu.</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsátei</i>	<i>tsátā</i>	<i>tsátei</i>	<i>kétā</i>	{ <i>tšétā</i> <i>tšēátā.</i>

Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>tétaskin</i>	<i>tétaskē</i>	<i>tétaskī</i>	<i>kátetaskō</i>	<i>tátetaskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>tétāmin</i>	<i>tétām</i>	<i>tétāmī</i>	<i>kátetām</i>	<i>tátetām</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tétei</i>	<i>tétā</i>	<i>tétei</i>	<i>kátetā</i>	<i>tátetā</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>téteiyēn</i>	<i>téteiyē</i>	<i>téteiyē</i>	<i>káteteiyē</i>	<i>táteteiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>tétāwī</i>	<i>tétāu</i>	<i>tétāwī</i>	<i>kátetāu</i>	<i>tátetāu</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tátei</i>	<i>tátā</i>	<i>tátei</i>	<i>kátetā</i>	<i>tátetā</i>

The fourth conjugation is inflected according to the first, and has in the first indefinite, *yigetáskin* and *yítetáskin*; in the aorist, *kigetáskō* and *kitetáskō*; and in the future *tšigetáskō* and *tšitetáskō*.

It must be remarked, that the *u* of the root is sometimes pronounced so obtusely, as to sound almost like an *o*.

Other verbs conjugated like *táskin*, "I catch," are: *báskin*, "I pound;" *báskin*, "I mount;" and *gáskin*, "I follow."

γ. *Monosyllabic Roots with the Vowel u.*

§. 73. This class, like the preceding one, has in several forms an *i* added to the vowel of the root, and united with it into a diphthong. The verb *rúskin*, "I see," will serve as a paradigm, and the verbs inflected like it are: *búskin*, "I eat," *múskin*, "I put on a shirt;" but the verb *núskin*, "I die," deviates so much from the above, that its inflection must be given separately.

Conjugation I.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>rúskin</i>	<i>rúskē</i>	<i>rúskī</i>	<i>kíruskō</i>	<i>tšúruskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>rúmin</i>	<i>rum</i>	<i>rúmi</i>	<i>kírum</i>	<i>tšúrurū</i>
<i>šī</i>	<i>tsúrui</i>	<i>tsúrū</i>	<i>tsúrui</i>	<i>kírū</i>	<i>tšúrū</i>
<i>ándī</i>	<i>ruiyēn</i>	<i>ruiyē</i>	<i>ruiyē</i>	<i>kíruiyē</i>	<i>tšúruiyē</i>
<i>nándī</i>	<i>rúwī</i>	<i>rū</i>	<i>rúwī</i>	<i>kírū</i>	<i>tšúrū</i>
<i>sándī</i>	<i>tsárui</i>	<i>tsárū</i>	<i>tsárui</i>	<i>kérū</i>	<i>tšérū &amp; tšárū</i>

<i>wu</i>	<i>núskin</i>	<i>núskē</i>	<i>núskī</i>	<i>kánuskō</i>	<i>tsánuskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>númin</i>	<i>num</i>	<i>númi</i>	<i>kánum</i>	<i>tsánum</i>
<i>šī</i>	<i>nui</i>	<i>nū</i>	<i>nui</i>	<i>kánū</i>	<i>tsánū</i>
<i>ándī</i>	<i>nuiyēn</i>	<i>nuiyē</i>	<i>nuiyē</i>	<i>kánuiyē</i>	<i>tsánuiyē</i>
<i>nándī</i>	<i>núwī</i>	<i>nū</i>	<i>núwī</i>	<i>kánū</i>	<i>tsánū</i>
<i>sándī</i>	<i>sánui</i>	<i>sánū</i>	<i>sánui</i>	<i>kásunū</i>	<i>tsásunū</i>

## Conjugation IV.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>túruskin</i>	<i>túruskē</i>	<i>túruskī</i>	<i>káturuskō</i>	<i>táturuskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>túrāmin</i>	<i>túrum</i>	<i>túrumī</i>	<i>káturum</i>	<i>táturum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>túruī</i>	<i>túrū</i>	<i>túruī</i>	<i>káturū</i>	<i>táturū</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>túruiyēn</i>	<i>túruiyē</i>	<i>túruiyē</i>	<i>káturuiyē</i>	<i>táturuiyē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>túruwī</i>	<i>túrū</i>	<i>túruwī</i>	<i>káturū</i>	<i>táturū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>táruī</i>	<i>tárū</i>	<i>táruī</i>	<i>káturū</i>	<i>táturū</i>

b. Verbs which are either *monosyllabic* in consequence of contraction, or *dissyllabic* in consequence of the characteristic of the second or third conjugation.

§. 74. We have here a class of verbs which had perhaps better be considered as defective, *i. e.* as either the second or the third conjugation of obsolete verbs in *ngin*. This opinion appears to be borne out by the circumstance, that a number of them are still inflected regularly as the second and third conjugations of the verbs in *ngin*. Others, however, are inflected as if they were original verbs in *skin*, *i. e.* like those in §. 75. This double mode of inflection forms the principle on which these verbs are divided into two classes.

Of the first class, the following are inflected like the third conjugation of verbs in *ngin*: *āḷemtéskin*, "I reflect;" *tám-teskin*, "I stretch myself;" and the following like the second conjugation,

<i>bánāgeskin</i> , "I help."	<i>rógeskin</i> , "I hang."
<i>gerégeskin</i> , "I lean against."	<i>sábāgeskin</i> , "I meet."
<i>nāgeskin</i> , "I overtake."	<i>sébgéskin</i> , "I forget."
<i>pādyeskin</i> , "I go astray."	<i>tékkéskin</i> , "I lean, bring near."
<i>pādyeskin</i> , "I draw to myself."	<i>tsékkéskin</i> , "I hasten."

Of the second class, where it is possible, however, that the second syllable *te* and *ge* is in many cases radical,

the following may formally be considered as the third conjugation of verbs in *ngin* :—

<i>dáteskin</i> , “ I sew.”	<i>náteskin</i> , “ I plant.” <i>nóteskin</i> , “ I send.” <i>per<sup>t</sup>teskin</i> , “ I cut with a sickle.” <i>š<sup>r</sup>teskin</i> , “ I flay.”
<i>gérteskin</i> , “ I divide.”	
<i>gúteskin</i> , “ I draw.”	
<i>kúteskin</i> , “ I bring.”	

And the following as the second conjugation :—

<i>kégeskin</i> , “ I divide.”	<i>rāgéskin</i> , “ I like.” <i>ságéskin</i> , “ I unload.” <i>sāngéskin</i> , “ I raise.” <i>sāgéskin</i> , “ I put down.”
<i>lúgeskin</i> , “ I come out.”	
<i>mágeskin</i> , “ I take.”	
<i>négeskin</i> , “ I mind.”	

Most of this class of verbs are frequently contracted, in the first<sup>5</sup> person, so that we have, *e.g.*, *máskin*, *kímaskō*, *tšímaskō*, for *mágeskin*, *kimāgés<sup>kō</sup>*, *tšimāgés<sup>kō</sup>*; and *náskin*, *kináskō*, *tšináskō*, for *náteskin*, *kinātés<sup>kō</sup>*, *tšinātés<sup>kō</sup>*, &c.

In illustration of what is stated above, we will now give the inflection of two verbs out of each class, and then add that of *gágeskin*, “ I enter,” which, in several respects, differs from them.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>teskin</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>eskē</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>g</sup>át<sup>es</sup>kō</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>át<sup>es</sup>kō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>em<sup>in</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>em</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>g</sup>át<sup>em</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>át<sup>em</sup></i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>in</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>e</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>g</sup>át<sup>e</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>át<sup>e</sup></i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>ēn</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>ē</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>g</sup>át<sup>ē</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>át<sup>ē</sup></i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>ur<sup>ī</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>ū</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>g</sup>át<sup>ū</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>át<sup>ū</sup></i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>ei</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>a</i>	<i>āḍem<sup>g</sup>át<sup>a</sup></i>	<i>āḍem<sup>t</sup>át<sup>a</sup></i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>nāgeskin</i>	<i>nāgeskē</i>	<i>nāgíg<sup>es</sup>kō</i>	<i>nātšíg<sup>es</sup>kō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>nāgem<sup>in</sup></i>	<i>nāgem</i>	<i>nāgíg<sup>em</sup></i>	<i>nātšíg<sup>em</sup></i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>nātsegin</i>	<i>nātsege</i>	<i>nāgíg<sup>unō</sup></i>	<i>nātšíg<sup>unō</sup></i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>nāgēn</i>	<i>nāgē</i>	<i>nāgíg<sup>ē</sup></i>	<i>nātšíg<sup>ē</sup></i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>nāgur<sup>ī</sup></i>	<i>nāgū</i>	<i>nāgíg<sup>ū</sup></i>	<i>nātšíg<sup>ū</sup></i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>nātsagei</i>	<i>nātsaga</i>	<i>nāgíg<sup>a</sup></i>	<i>nātšíg<sup>a</sup></i>

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>nátęskin</i>	<i>nátęskē</i>	<i>kinátęskō</i>	<i>tšinátęskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>nátęmin</i>	<i>nátęm</i>	<i>kinátęm</i>	<i>tšinátęm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tšenátin</i>	<i>tšenátę</i>	<i>kinátō</i>	<i>tšinátō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>nátēn</i>	<i>nátē</i>	<i>kinátē</i>	<i>tšinátē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>nátuwī</i>	<i>nátū</i>	<i>kinátū</i>	<i>tšinátū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsanátin</i>	<i>tsanátę</i>	<i>kenátō</i>	<i>tšanátō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>máęęskin</i>	<i>máęęskē</i>	<i>kímáęęskō</i>	<i>tšímáęęskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>máęęmin</i>	<i>máęęm</i>	<i>kímáęęm</i>	<i>tšímáęęm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsémáęgin</i>	<i>tsémáęę</i>	<i>kímogō</i>	<i>tšímogō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>máęēn</i>	<i>máęē</i>	<i>kímagē</i>	<i>tšímagē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>náęuwī</i>	<i>máęū</i>	<i>kímagū</i>	<i>tšímagū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsámáęin</i>	<i>tsámáęę</i>	<i>kémogō</i>	<i>tšúmogō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>gáęęskin</i>	<i>gáęęskē</i>	<i>kargáęęskō</i>	<i>tsargáęęskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>gáęęmin</i>	<i>gáęęm</i>	<i>kargáęęm</i>	<i>tsargáęęm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>gáęgin</i>	<i>gáęę</i>	<i>kargáęō</i>	<i>tsargáęō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>gáęēn</i>	<i>gáęē</i>	<i>kargáęē</i>	<i>tsargáęē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>gáęuwī</i>	<i>gáęū</i>	<i>kargáęū</i>	<i>tsargáęū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{tsagáęgin} \\ \textit{gagáęgin} \\ \textit{támui} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{tsagáęę} \\ \textit{gagáęę} \\ \textit{támū} \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{kasargáęō} \\ \\ \textit{katámū}, \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{tsasargáęō} \\ \\ \textit{tatámū} \end{array} \right\}$

c. *Polysyllabic Verbs* whose initial is not *y*.

In order fully to exhibit the inflection of these verbs, we shall have to subdivide them in the following manner:—

α. Polysyllabic verbs whose second vowel is either *ę* or *u*, and whose initial consonant is neither *g*, nor *k*, nor *p*.

§. 75. This subdivision of the polysyllabic verbs may be considered as exhibiting the regular inflection, whereas the following subdivisions exhibit deviations from the regular inflection. The two verbs *ladęęskin*, “I sell,” and *lijúsķin*, “I guard,” may serve as paradigms.



	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>laděskin</i>	<i>laděskē</i>	<i>laděskī</i>	<i>kiladěskō</i>	<i>tšiladěskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>ladēmīn</i>	<i>ladēm</i>	<i>ladēmī</i>	<i>kiladēm</i>	<i>tšiladēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tselādūlin</i>	<i>tselādū</i>	<i>tselādūli</i>	<i>kilādō</i>	<i>tšilādō</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>ladēn</i>	<i>ladē</i>	<i>ladē</i>	<i>kilādē</i>	<i>tšilādē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>ladūwī</i>	<i>ladū</i>	<i>ladūwī</i>	<i>kilādū</i>	<i>tšilādū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>tsalādūlin</i>	<i>tsalādū</i>	<i>tsalādūli</i>	<i>kelādō</i>	<i>tšalādō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>lijúskin</i>	<i>lijúskē</i>	<i>lijúskī</i>	<i>kilijúskō</i>	<i>tšilijúskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>lijūmīn</i>	<i>lijūm</i>	<i>lijūmī</i>	<i>kilijūm</i>	<i>tšilijūm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tselījin</i>	<i>tselījō</i>	<i>tselīji</i>	<i>kilijō</i>	<i>tšilijō</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>lijēn</i>	<i>lijē</i>	<i>lijē</i>	<i>kilijē</i>	<i>tšilijē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>lijūwī</i>	<i>lijū</i>	<i>lijūwī</i>	<i>kilijū</i>	<i>tšilijū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>tsalījin</i>	<i>tsalījō</i>	<i>tsalīji</i>	<i>kelijō</i>	<i>tšelijō</i>

Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>teladěskin</i>	<i>teladěskē</i>	<i>teladěskī</i>	<i>kateladěskō</i>	<i>tateladěskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>telādēmīn</i>	<i>telādēm</i>	<i>telādēmī</i>	<i>katelādēm</i>	<i>tatelādēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>telādūlin</i>	<i>telādū</i>	<i>telādūli</i>	<i>katelādō</i>	<i>tatelādō</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>telādūlēn</i>	<i>telādūlē</i>	<i>telādūlē</i>	<i>katelādē</i>	<i>tatelādē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>telādūwī</i>	<i>telādū</i>	<i>telādūwī</i>	<i>katelādū</i>	<i>tatelādū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>talādūlin</i>	<i>talādū</i>	<i>talādūli</i>	<i>katalādō</i>	<i>tatelādō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>telijúskin</i>	<i>telijúskē</i>	<i>telijúskī</i>	<i>katelijúskō</i>	<i>tatelijúskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>telijūmīn</i>	<i>telijūm</i>	<i>telijūmī</i>	<i>katelijūm</i>	<i>tatelijūm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>telījin</i>	<i>telījō</i>	<i>telīji</i>	<i>katelijō</i>	<i>tatelijō</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>telījēn</i>	<i>telījē</i>	<i>telījē</i>	<i>katelijē</i>	<i>tatelijē</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>telijūwī</i>	<i>telijū</i>	<i>telijūwī</i>	<i>katelijū</i>	<i>tatelijū</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>talījin</i>	<i>talījō</i>	<i>talīji</i>	<i>katelijō</i>	<i>tatelijō</i>

In the first person plural the verb *lijúskin* has the following forms, in addition to those given above: *lijūiyēn*, *lijūiyē*, *kilijūiyē*, *tšilijūiyē*. And if the initial vowel of a verb is *o* or *u*, the vowel of the prefix is influenced by it, according to §. 12; thus the verb *rōřeskin*, "I take out," has in the third per. sing., *tsurōřin*, *tsurōře*, *tsurōři*, *kirōřō*, *tširōřō*, and in pl. *tsurōřin*, *tsurōře*, *tsurōři*, *kerōřō*, *tšurōřō*.

Additional verbs, inflected like *ladéskin*, are, *láréskin*, "I rejoice;" *mbárekin*, "I am tired;" *nándéskin*, "I bite;" *dórekin*, "I pick;" *rórekin*, "I take out," and the verbs constituting the second class of §. 74; also the verb *mérekin*, "I recover," but the latter, in the third person, with the bye-forms, *tsemérin*, *tsamérin*, *tsemérg*, *tsamérg*.

The verbs inflected like *lijúskin* are: *rambúskin*, "I pay;" *támbuskin*, "I taste."

β. Polysyllabic verbs whose initial consonant is either *g*, *k*, or *p*.

§. 76. The verbs which begin with *g* do not differ in inflection from those of the preceding paragraph, except in the Aorist tense of the first conjugation, whose characteristic prefix is *gi* instead of *ki*, and throughout the third conjugation, where the characteristic sharp mute becomes the corresponding flat one. The peculiarity of the verbs beginning with *k* and *p* consists in the change of these sharp mutes into the corresponding flat ones, whenever they are preceded by a formative sharp mute, viz. in the 3d per. sing. and pl. of the first conjugation, and throughout the third conjugation, but not in the fourth. To illustrate this, we now give the inflection of the three verbs: *gámbuskin*, "I scratch;" *kárekin*, "I tattoo;" and *pertéskin*, "I pluck."

### Conjugation I.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>gámbuskin</i>	<i>gámbuskē</i>	<i>gámbuskī</i>	<i>gigámbuskō</i>	<i>tšigámbuskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>gábumin</i>	<i>gámbum</i>	<i>gábumī</i>	<i>gigámbum</i>	<i>tšigámbum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsegámbin</i>	<i>tsegámbū</i>	<i>tsegámbī</i>	<i>gigámbō</i>	<i>tšigámbō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>gámbēn</i>	<i>gámbē</i>	<i>gámbē</i>	<i>gigámbē</i>	<i>tšigámbē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>gámburwī</i>	<i>gámbū</i>	<i>gámburwī</i>	<i>gigámbū</i>	<i>tšigámbū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsagámbin</i>	<i>tsagámbū</i>	<i>tsagámbī</i>	<i>gegámbō</i>	<i>tšegámbō</i>

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>káreškin</i>	<i>káreškē</i>	<i>káreškī</i>	<i>kigáreškō</i>	<i>tšigáreškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>káremin</i>	<i>kárem</i>	<i>káremī</i>	<i>kigárem</i>	<i>tšigárem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsegárin</i>	<i>tsegáre</i>	<i>tsegári</i>	<i>kigárō</i>	<i>tšigárō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>kárēn</i>	<i>kárē</i>	<i>kárē</i>	<i>kigárē</i>	<i>tšigárē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>káruwī</i>	<i>kárū</i>	<i>káruwī</i>	<i>kigárū</i>	<i>tšigárū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsagárin</i>	<i>tsagáre</i>	<i>tsagári</i>	<i>kegárō</i>	<i>tšagárō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>pertéskín</i>	<i>pertéškē</i>	<i>pertéškī</i>	<i>kibértéškō</i>	<i>tšibértéškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>pértemín</i>	<i>pértem</i>	<i>pértemī</i>	<i>kibértem</i>	<i>tšibértem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsebértín</i>	<i>tsebérte</i>	<i>tsebértī</i>	<i>kibért</i>	<i>tšibértō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>pértēn</i>	<i>pértē</i>	<i>pértē</i>	<i>kibértō</i>	<i>tšibértē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>pértuwī</i>	<i>pértū</i>	<i>pértuwī</i>	<i>kibértū</i>	<i>tšibértū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsabértín</i>	<i>tsabérte</i>	<i>tsabértī</i>	<i>kebértō</i>	<i>tšabértō</i>

Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>degámbuskín</i>	<i>degámbuskē</i>	<i>degámbuskī</i>	<i>kadegámbuskō</i>	<i>tadegámbuskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>degámbumín</i>	<i>degámbum</i>	<i>degámbumī</i>	<i>kadegámbum</i>	<i>tadegámbum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>degámbín</i>	<i>degámbū</i>	<i>degámbī</i>	<i>kadegámbō</i>	<i>tadegámbō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>degámbēn</i>	<i>degámbē</i>	<i>degámbē</i>	<i>kadegámbē</i>	<i>tadegámbē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>idegámbuwī</i>	<i>degámbū</i>	<i>degámbuwī</i>	<i>kadegámbū</i>	<i>tadegámbū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>dagámbín,</i>	<i>dagámbū</i>	<i>dagámbī</i>	<i>kadegámbō</i>	<i>tadegámbō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>tegáreškin</i>	<i>tegáreškē</i>	<i>tegáreškī</i>	<i>kategáreškō</i>	<i>tategáreškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>tegáremín</i>	<i>tegárem</i>	<i>tegáremī</i>	<i>kategárem</i>	<i>tategárem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tegárin</i>	<i>tegáre</i>	<i>tegári</i>	<i>kategárō</i>	<i>tategárō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>tegárēn</i>	<i>tegárē</i>	<i>tegárē</i>	<i>kategárē</i>	<i>tategárē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>tegáruwī</i>	<i>tegárū</i>	<i>tegáruwī</i>	<i>kategárū</i>	<i>tategárū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tagárin</i>	<i>tagáre</i>	<i>tagári</i>	<i>ketagárō</i>	<i>tatagárō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>tebertéskín</i>	<i>tebertéškē</i>	<i>tebertéškī</i>	<i>katebertéškō</i>	<i>tatebertéškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>tebertemín</i>	<i>tebertem</i>	<i>tebertemī</i>	<i>katebertem</i>	<i>tatebertem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tebertín</i>	<i>tebertē</i>	<i>tebertī</i>	<i>katebertō</i>	<i>tatebertō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>tebertēn</i>	<i>tebertē</i>	<i>tebertē</i>	<i>katebertē</i>	<i>tatebertē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>tebertuwī</i>	<i>tebertū</i>	<i>tebertuwī</i>	<i>katebertū</i>	<i>tatebertū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tabértín</i>	<i>tabérte</i>	<i>tabértī</i>	<i>katabértō</i>	<i>tatabértō</i>

## Conjugation IV.

INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu yitegámbu- skin, &amp;c.</i>	<i>yitegámbu- skē, &amp;c.</i>	<i>yitegámbu- skī, &amp;c.</i>	<i>kitegámbu- skō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>tšitegámbu- skō, &amp;c.</i>
<i>wu yitekáre- skin, &amp;c.</i>	<i>yitekáre- skē, &amp;c.</i>	<i>yitekáre- skī, &amp;c.</i>	<i>kitekáre- skō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>tšitekáre- skō, &amp;c.</i>
<i>wu yigepérte- skin, &amp;c.</i>	<i>yigepérte- skē, &amp;c.</i>	<i>yigepérte- skī, &amp;c.</i>	<i>kigepérte- skō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>tšigepérte- skō, &amp;c.</i>

Other verbs, inflected like *gámbuskin*, are : *gádeškin*, "I murmur;" *gándeškin*, "I lick;" *geńdeškin*, "I shake;" *géreškin*, "I gnaw;" *gérteškin*, "I separate."

Like *káreškin* : *kégeskin*, "I divide;" *kéńdeškin*, "I tie a child on the back;" *kóreškin*, "I ask;" only that the prefix 3d per. sing. of this last verb is *tsu*, instead of *tse*.

Like *perťeskin* : *páńdeškin*, "I get."

γ. Polysyllabic verbs whose second syllable is *se*.

§. 77. This class corresponds to those verbs in *ńgin* which are enumerated in §. 69. They are only two in number, viz. *káseškin*, "I run," and *ťseškin*, "I come;" but they differ so much from one another, that the inflection of both must be given in full.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>káseškin</i>	<i>káseškē</i>	<i>káseškī</i>	<i>kigáseškō</i>	<i>tšigáseškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>kásemin</i>	<i>kásem</i>	<i>kásemī</i>	<i>kigásem</i>	<i>tšigásem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsegášin</i>	<i>tsegáse</i>	<i>tsegáši</i>	<i>kigásō</i>	<i>tšigásō</i>
<i>ńdi</i>	} <i>kášyēn</i> & <i>káššēn</i>	} <i>kášyē</i> & <i>káššē</i>	} <i>kášyē</i> & <i>káššē</i>	} <i>kigášyē</i> & <i>kigáššē</i>	} <i>tšigášyē</i> & <i>tšigáššē</i>
<i>nándi</i>					
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsagášin</i>	<i>tsagáse</i>	<i>tsagáši</i>	<i>kegásō</i>	<i>tšagásō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>ťseškin</i>	<i>ťseškē</i>	<i>ťseškī</i>	<i>kádiskō</i>	<i>tsádiskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>ťsemin</i>	<i>ťsem</i>	<i>ťsemī</i>	<i>kádīm</i>	<i>tsádīm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>ťšin</i>	<i>ťse</i> & <i>ťsō</i>	<i>ťši</i>	<i>káliō</i>	<i>tsádiō</i>

INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>ándi</i> <i>íšyēn</i>	<i>íšyē</i>	<i>íšyē</i>	{ <i>kúdiyē</i> & <i>kášyē</i>	<i>tsádiyē</i> & <i>tsásyē</i>
<i>nándi</i> <i>ísuwī</i>	<i>ísu</i>	<i>ísuwī</i>	{ <i>kúdiyā</i> & <i>káśšā</i>	<i>tsádiyū</i> & <i>tsáśšū</i>
<i>sándi</i> <i>ísei</i>	<i>ísa</i>	<i>ísei</i>	{ <i>káśšō</i> & <i>kášyō</i>	<i>tsáśšō</i> & <i>tsásyō</i>

δ. Polysyllabic verbs inserting *r* between the prefixes and the root.

§. 78. There are three verbs belonging to this class, viz. *bāfúskin*, "I am cooked;" *degáskin*. "I remain; and *gérēskin*, "I tie." They all insert *r* in the aorist and future tense, but in the third person singular and plural, only *gérēskin*, and in the plural *bāfúskin*. The insertion of *r* unites them into one class, but as each has also some other peculiarities, we must give the inflection of all of them.

INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i> <i>bāfúskin</i>	<i>bāfúskē</i>	<i>bāfúskī</i>	<i>karfāfúskō</i>	<i>tsarfāfúskō</i>
<i>ni</i> <i>bāfúmin</i>	<i>bāfūm</i>	<i>bāfūmī</i>	<i>karfāfūm</i>	<i>tsarfāfūm</i>
<i>ši</i> <i>bāfīn</i>	<i>bāfū</i>	<i>bāfī</i>	<i>karfāfō</i>	<i>tsarfāfō</i>
<i>ándi</i> <i>bāfēn</i>	<i>bāfē</i>	<i>bāfē</i>	<i>karfāfē</i>	<i>tsarfāfē</i>
<i>nándi</i> <i>bāfuwī</i>	<i>bāfū</i>	<i>bāfuwī</i>	<i>karfāfū</i>	<i>tsarfāfū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsabāfīn</i>	<i>tsabāfū</i>	<i>kasarfāfō</i>	<i>tsasarfāfō</i>
	<i>tsarbāfīn</i>	<i>tsarbāfū</i>		
	<i>babāfīn</i>	<i>babāfū</i>		
<i>wu</i> <i>degáskin</i>	<i>degáskē</i>	<i>degáskī</i>	<i>kargáskō</i>	<i>tsargáskō</i>
<i>ni</i> <i>degámin</i>	<i>degām</i>	<i>degámī</i>	<i>kúrgam</i>	<i>tsárgam</i>
<i>ši</i> <i>dégei</i>	<i>dégā</i>	<i>dégei</i>	<i>kárgō</i>	<i>tsárgā</i>
<i>ándi</i> <i>dégeiyēn</i>	<i>dégeiyē</i>	<i>dégeiyē</i>	<i>kárgéiyē</i>	<i>tsárgéiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i> <i>degáwī</i>	<i>dégau</i>	<i>degáwī</i>	<i>kárgou</i>	<i>tsárgou</i>
<i>sándi</i> <i>dúgui</i>	<i>dúgū</i>	<i>dúgui</i>	{ <i>kárgū</i> & <i>ka-</i>	<i>tsárgū</i> &
			<i>sárgū</i>	<i>tsasárgū</i>

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE
<i>wu</i>	<i>géręskin</i>	<i>géręskē</i>	<i>géręskī</i>	<i>kirgéręskō</i>	<i>tšigéręskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>géręmin</i>	<i>géręm</i>	<i>géręmī</i>	<i>kirgéręm</i>	<i>tširgéręm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsergérin</i>	<i>tsergére</i>	<i>tsergērī</i>	<i>kirgérō</i>	<i>tširgérō</i>
<i>úndi</i>	<i>gérēn</i>	<i>gérē</i>	<i>gérē</i>	<i>kirgérē</i>	<i>tširgérē</i>
<i>núndi</i>	<i>géruwī</i>	<i>gérū</i>	<i>géruwī</i>	<i>kirgérū</i>	<i>tširgérū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsargérin</i>	<i>tsargére</i>	<i>tsargērī</i>	<i>kergérō</i>	<i>tšargérō</i>

The *e* of *géręskin* is often changed in the third person into *e*, as *tsergérin*, *tsargérin*, &c. *Degąskin* is only used in the first conjugation; *bąfųskin* has in the fourth conjugation, *yitębąfųskin*, and then means "to cook," transitive. *Géręskin* has in the fourth conjugation, *yirgéręskin*, and the third conjugation we subjoin in full.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>tergéręskin</i>	<i>tergéręskē</i>	<i>tergéręskī</i>	<i>katergéręskō</i>	<i>tatergéręskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>tergéręmin</i>	<i>tergéręm</i>	<i>tergéręmī</i>	<i>katergéręm</i>	<i>tatergéręm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tergérin</i>	<i>tergére</i>	<i>tergērī</i>	<i>katergérō</i>	<i>tatergérō</i>
<i>úndi</i>	<i>tergérēn</i>	<i>tergérē</i>	<i>tergérē</i>	<i>katergérē</i>	<i>tatergérē</i>
<i>núndi</i>	<i>tergéruwī</i>	<i>tergérū</i>	<i>tergéruwī</i>	<i>katergérū</i>	<i>tatergérū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>targérin</i>	<i>targére</i>	<i>targērī</i>	<i>katargérō</i>	<i>tatargérō</i>

e. The verb *wąřęskin*, "I am sick.

§. 79. This verb is properly regular, and the forms which are peculiar to it arose simply from the euphonic changes to which *w* is liable. We now give its full inflection.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>wąřęskin</i>	<i>wąřęskē</i>	<i>wąřęskī</i>	<i>kíwąřęskō</i>	<i>tšúwąřęskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>wąřęmin</i>	<i>wąřęm</i>	<i>wąřęmī</i>	<i>kíwąřęm</i>	<i>tšúwąřęm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsuárin</i>	<i>tsuáre</i>	<i>tsuárī</i>	<i>kíwārō</i>	<i>tšúwārō</i>
<i>úndi</i>	<i>wąřēn</i>	<i>wąřē</i>	<i>wąřē</i>	<i>kíwārē</i>	<i>tšúwārē</i>
<i>núndi</i>	<i>wąřuwī</i>	<i>wąřū</i>	<i>wąřuwī</i>	<i>kíwārū</i>	<i>tšúwārū</i>
<i>súndi</i>	<i>(tsawárin</i>	<i>tsawáre</i> &	<i>tsawárī</i> &	<i>kéwārō</i>	<i>tšáwārō</i>
	<i>) &amp; tsouárin</i>	<i>tsouáre</i>	<i>tsouárī</i>		

2. *Inflection of verbs in skin, beginning with y.*

a. Such verbs with *monosyllabic roots*.

§. 80. This class contains only two verbs, one with the vowel *i*, and the other with the vowel *e*, viz. *yískin*, "I give," and *yéskin*, "I drink;" but they differ so much from each other, that it will be necessary to inflect them both. They only occur in the first conjugation.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yískin</i>	<i>yískē</i>	<i>yískī</i>	<i>kéškō</i>	<i>tšéškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yímin</i>	<i>yīm</i>	<i>yímī</i>	<i>kēm</i>	<i>tšēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tšin</i>	<i>tšō</i>	<i>tši</i>	<i>keínō</i>	<i>tšéinō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yíyēn</i>	<i>yíyē</i>	<i>yíyē</i>	<i>keiyē</i>	<i>tšéiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yúwī</i>	<i>yū</i>	<i>yúwī</i>	<i>kéou</i>	<i>tšéou</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsúdin</i>	<i>tsáde</i>	<i>tsádi</i>	<i>kédō</i>	<i>tšédō</i>

<i>wu</i>	<i>yéskin</i>	<i>yéskē</i>	<i>yéskī</i>	<i>kéškō</i>	<i>tšéškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yámin</i>	<i>yām</i>	<i>yámī</i>	<i>keām</i>	<i>tšām</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsei</i>	<i>tsā</i>	<i>tsei</i>	<i>keā</i>	<i>tšā</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yeíyēn</i>	<i>yéyē&amp;yeíyē</i>	<i>yeíyē</i>	<i>keýē</i>	<i>tšéýē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yáwī</i>	<i>yau</i>	<i>yáwī</i>	<i>keau</i>	<i>tšau</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsúsei</i>	<i>tsásā</i>	<i>tsásei</i>	<i>késā</i>	<i>tšésā</i>

§. 81. *b.* The verb *yáskin*, or *yátēskin*, "I carry," corresponds to the verbs in §. 74, and is conjugated as follows—

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yáskin</i>	<i>yáskē</i>	<i>yáskī</i>	<i>keáskō</i>	<i>tšáskō</i>
	<i>yátēskin</i>	<i>yátēskē</i>	<i>yátēskī</i>	<i>keátēskō</i>	<i>tšátēskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yátēmin</i>	<i>yátēm</i>	<i>yátēmī</i>	<i>keátēm</i>	<i>tšátēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsátin</i>	<i>tsátē</i>	<i>tsátī</i>	<i>keátō</i>	<i>tšátō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yátēn</i>	<i>yátē</i>	<i>yátē</i>	<i>keátē</i>	<i>tšátē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yátuwī</i>	<i>yátū</i>	<i>yátuwī</i>	<i>keátū</i>	<i>tšátū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsasátin</i>	<i>tsásatē</i>	<i>tsasátī</i>	<i>kesátō</i>	<i>tšasátō</i>

c. Polysyllabic verbs in *skin*, beginning with *y*.

§. 82. This class of verbs must again be subdivided according to the different formation of the third person in the Indefinite I:— part of them, *i.e.* all those whose last radical vowel is *a*, employing *i* for this purpose, which then unites with the radical *a* into the diphthong *ei*; and part of them, *i.e.* all those whose last radical vowel is either *e* or *u*, using the termination *n*, which then invariably changes the preceding *e* or *u* into *i*. But as most of the verbs constituting these two classes have also some other peculiarities, especially in forming the aorist and future tenses, it will be necessary to give the inflection of more than one verb from each class.

a. Polysyllabic verbs whose last radical vowel is *a*.

§. 83. Three verbs will be required to illustrate the inflection of this class, *viz.* *yakkáraskin*, “I teach,” (probably itself the causative conjugation of *karáskin*, “I read,”) *yēsáskin*, “I repair,,” *yirgáskin*, “I add.” The minor differences in the inflection of these three verbs seem to depend on the vowel directly after the initial *y*, *viz.* *a*, *e*, *i*, which undergo different changes. After the first of these three verbs *yaiyaiḡáskin*, “I mimic,,” is inflected, after the second: *yēsēráskin*, “I cough;,” *yētseráskin*, “I believe;,” but the third stands by itself.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yakkáraskin</i>	<i>yakkáraskē</i>	<i>yakkáraskē</i>	<i>kēakkáraskō</i>	<i>tšakkáraskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yakkárāmin</i>	<i>yakkárām</i>	<i>yākkárāmī</i>	<i>kēakkárām</i>	<i>tšakkárām</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsakkárei</i>	<i>tsakkárā</i>	<i>tsakkárei</i>	<i>kēakkárū</i>	<i>tšakkárā</i>
<i>ándi</i>	{ <i>yakkáreiyeḡ</i>	<i>yakkáreiye</i>	<i>yakkáreiye</i>	<i>kēakkáreiye</i>	<i>tšakkáreiye</i>
	{ & <i>yakkárēn</i>	& <i>yakkárē</i>	& <i>yakkárē</i>		
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yakkárāwī</i>	<i>yakkárau</i>	<i>yakkárāwī</i>	<i>kēakkárau</i>	<i>tšakkárau</i>
<i>sándi</i>	{ <i>tsakkárei</i>	& <i>tsakkárā</i>	& <i>tsakkárei</i>	& <i>kēakkárā</i>	& <i>tšsakkárā</i>
	{ <i>tsasakkárei</i>	<i>tsasakkárā</i>	<i>tsasakkárei</i>	<i>kesakkárā</i>	



	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yēsáskīn</i>	<i>yēsáskē</i>	<i>yēsáskī,</i>	<i>kēasáskō</i>	<i>tšēasáskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yasámin</i>	<i>yásām</i>	<i>yēsámī,</i>	<i>kēasām</i>	<i>tšēasām</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsásei</i>	<i>tsásā</i>	<i>tsásei,</i>	<i>kēasā</i>	<i>tšēasā</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yēseiyēn</i>	<i>yēseiyē</i>	<i>yēseiyē,</i>	<i>kēseiyē</i>	<i>tšēseiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yasáwī</i>	<i>yásau</i>	<i>yasáwī,</i>	<i>kēasau</i>	<i>tšēasau</i>
<i>sándi</i>	{ <i>tsásei</i> & <i>tsasásei</i>	{ <i>tsúsā</i> & <i>tsasásā</i>	{ <i>tsásei</i> & <i>tsasásei,</i>	{ <i>kēasā</i> & <i>kēsásā</i>	{ <i>tšvasā</i> & <i>tšesásā</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yīrgáskīn</i>	<i>yīrgáskē</i>	<i>yīrgáskī</i>	<i>kīrgáskō</i>	<i>tšīrgáskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yīrgámin</i>	<i>yīrgām</i>	<i>yīrgámī</i>	<i>kīrgām</i>	<i>tšīrgām</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsérgei</i>	<i>tsérgā</i>	<i>tsérgei</i>	<i>kīrgā</i>	<i>tšīrgā</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yīrgeiyēn</i>	<i>yīrgeiyē</i>	<i>yīrgeiyē</i>	<i>kīrgeiyē</i>	<i>tšīrgeiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yīrgáwī</i>	<i>yīrgau</i>	<i>yīrgáwī</i>	<i>kīrgau</i>	<i>tšīrgau</i>
<i>sándi</i>	{ <i>tsúrgei</i> & <i>tsasúrgei</i>	{ <i>tsúrgā</i> & <i>tsasúrgā</i>	{ <i>tsúrgei</i> & <i>tsasúrgei</i>	{ <i>kēsúrgā</i> <i>tsēsúrgā</i>	<i>tšesúrgā</i>

Of the third and fourth conjugations we only give the first person, as the others can be easily formed, and are of very rare occurrence.

### Conjugation III.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>takkáraskīn</i>	<i>takkáraskē</i>	<i>katakkáraskō</i>	<i>tatakkáraskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>tasáskīn</i>	<i>tasáskē</i>	<i>katətáskō</i>	<i>tatətáskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>tęrgáskīn</i>	<i>tęrgáskē</i>	<i>katęrgáskō</i>	<i>tatęrgáskō</i>

### Conjugation. IV.

<i>wu</i>	<i>yīteyakkáraskīn</i>	<i>yīteyakkáraskē</i>	<i>yītekēakkáraskō</i>	<i>yītętsákkáraskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yīteyēsáskīn</i>	<i>yīteyēsáskē</i>	<i>yītekēasáskō</i>	<i>yītętsēasáskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yīteyīrgáskīn</i>	<i>yīteyīrgáskē</i>	<i>kītekīrgáskō</i>	<i>tšītętsīrgáskō</i>

β. Polysyllabic verbs whose last radical vowel is *e*, *i*, or *u*.

αα. Such verbs with *a* for their first vowel.

§. 84. Of this class of verbs *yargúęskīn*, "I mind;" *yám-buskīn*, "I beget;" *yardúęskīn*, "I accompany;" *yarugęskīn*,

“I redeem;” are all inflected alike, but *yākéskin*, “I put,” deviates in several points.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yargáleskin</i>	<i>yargáleskē</i>	<i>yargáleskī</i>	<i>kərgáleskō</i>	<i>tšərgáleskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yargálemín</i>	<i>yargálem</i>	<i>yargálemī</i>	<i>kərgálem</i>	<i>tšərgálem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsargálin</i>	<i>tsargále</i>	<i>tsargálin</i>	<i>kərgálo</i>	<i>tšərgálo</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yargálēn</i>	<i>yargálē</i>	<i>yargálē</i>	<i>kərgálē</i>	<i>tšərgálē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yargáluwī</i>	<i>yargálu</i>	<i>yargáluwī</i>	<i>kərgálu</i>	<i>tšərgálu</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsargálin &amp; tsargále &amp; tsargálin &amp; tsasargálin</i>	<i>tsargále &amp; tsargále &amp; tsargále &amp; tsasargále</i>	<i>tsargálin &amp; tsargálin &amp; tsargálin &amp; tsasargálin</i>	<i>kəsgargálo</i>	<i>tšəsgargálo</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yākéskin</i>	<i>yākéskē</i>	<i>yākéskī</i>	<i>kəakéskō</i>	<i>tšəakéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yákémín</i>	<i>yákem</i>	<i>yákémī</i>	<i>kəakem</i>	<i>tšəakem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsákin</i>	<i>tsáke</i>	<i>tsákī</i>	<i>kəakō</i>	<i>tšəakō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yékēn</i>	<i>yékē</i>	<i>yékē</i>	<i>kékē</i>	<i>tšékē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yákuwī</i>	<i>yákū</i>	<i>yákuwī</i>	<i>kəakū</i>	<i>tšəakū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsasákin</i>	<i>tsasáke</i>	<i>tsasákī</i>	<i>kəsúkō</i>	<i>tšəsákō</i>

Of the third and fourth conjugation it will be sufficient to give merely the first person.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II	PERFECT	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>targáleskin</i>	<i>targáleskē</i>	<i>targáleskī</i>	<i>katargáleskō</i>	<i>tatargáleskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>tākéskin</i>	<i>tākéskē</i>	<i>tākéskī</i>	<i>katagégō</i>	<i>tatakéskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yiteyargáleskin</i>	—skē	—skī	<i>yitekərgáleskō</i>	<i>yitətsərgáleskō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yiteyākéskin</i>	—skē	—skī	<i>yitegəagéskō</i>	<i>yitətsəkéskō</i>

ββ. Such verbs with *e* and *i* for their first vowel.

§. 85. We only met with two verbs of this description, viz. *yětséskin*, “I kill,” and *yífuskin*, “I buy;” the inflection of both of which must be given.

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yětséskin</i>	<i>yětséskē</i>	<i>yětséskī</i>	<i>kětséskō</i>	<i>tšětséskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yětsəmin</i>	<i>yětsə</i>	<i>yětsə</i>	<i>kětsə</i>	<i>tšětsə</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsětsšin</i>	<i>tsětsšē</i>	<i>tsětsšī</i>	<i>kětsō</i>	<i>tšětsō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yětsēn</i>	<i>yětsē</i>	<i>yětsē</i>	<i>kětsē</i>	<i>tšětsē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yětsuwī</i>	<i>yětsū</i>	<i>yětsuwī</i>	<i>kětsū</i>	<i>tšětsū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tšětsšin</i>	<i>tšětsšē</i>	<i>tšětsšī</i>	<i>kětsō</i>	<i>tšětsō</i>

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yíjuskìn</i>	<i>yíjuskē</i>	<i>yíjuskī</i>	<i>keíjuskō</i>	<i>tseíjuskō</i>
<i>nì</i>	<i>yíjūmìn</i>	<i>yíjum</i>	<i>yíjumī</i>	<i>keíjum</i>	<i>tseíjum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tšíjìn</i>	<i>tšífū</i>	<i>tšíjī</i>	<i>keíjō</i>	<i>tseíjō</i>
<i>ándì</i>	<i>yíjēn</i>	<i>yíjē</i>	<i>yíjē</i>	<i>keíjē</i>	<i>tseíjē</i>
<i>nándì</i>	<i>yíjūwī</i>	<i>yíjū</i>	<i>yíjūwī</i>	<i>keíjū</i>	<i>tseíjū</i>
<i>sándì</i>	<i>tsásíjìn</i>	<i>tsásíjū</i>	<i>tsásíjī</i>	<i>keíjō</i>	<i>tšéšíjō</i>

The fourth conjugation is formed as usual; in the third, *yíjuskìn* does not occur, and *yčtséskin* loses its radical *s*, and becomes *tētéskin*, "I kill myself."

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>tētéskìn</i>	<i>tētéskē</i>	<i>tētéskī</i>	<i>katētéskō</i>	<i>tatētéskō</i>
<i>nì</i>	<i>tētēmìn</i>	<i>tētēm</i>	<i>tētēmī</i>	<i>katētēm</i>	<i>tatētēm</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tētìn</i>	<i>téte</i>	<i>tētī</i>	<i>katētō</i>	<i>tatéte</i>
<i>ándì</i>	<i>tētēn</i>	<i>tētē</i>	<i>tētē</i>	<i>katētē</i>	<i>tatētē</i>
<i>nándì</i>	<i>tétuwī</i>	<i>tētū</i>	<i>tétuwī</i>	<i>katētū</i>	<i>tatētū</i>
<i>sándì</i>	<i>tetétìn</i>	<i>tetété</i>	<i>tetētī</i>	<i>katéta</i>	<i>tatéta</i>

γγ. Such verbs with *e* or *u* for their first vowel.

§. 86. There is only one verb with the vowel *e*, viz. *yembúskìn*, "I fill," and three with the vowel *u*, viz. *yundúskìn*, "I swallow;" *yārúskìn*, "I fall," and *yúwūřeskìn*, or *yówūřeskìn*, "I laugh," the inflection of all of which had better be given, as it presents some minor differences in each case.

	INDEFINITE I	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE
<i>wu</i>	<i>yembúskìn</i>	<i>yembúskē</i>	<i>yembúskī</i>	<i>kimbúskō</i>	<i>tšimbúskō</i>
<i>nu</i>	<i>yembúlumìn</i>	<i>yembúlum</i>	<i>yembúlumī</i>	<i>kimbúlum</i>	<i>tšimbúlum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tšumbúlin</i>	<i>tšumbúle</i>	<i>tšumbúli</i>	<i>kimbúlo</i>	<i>tšimbúlo</i>
<i>ándì</i>	<i>yembúlēn</i>	<i>yembúlē</i>	<i>yembúlē</i>	<i>kimbúlē</i>	<i>tšimbúlē</i>
<i>nándì</i>	<i>yembúluwī</i>	<i>yembúlu</i>	<i>yembúluwī</i>	<i>kimbúlu</i>	<i>tšimbúlu</i>
<i>sándì</i>	<i>tsasambúlin</i>	<i>tsasambúle</i>	<i>tsasambúli</i>	<i>kesambúlo</i>	<i>tšesambúlo</i>

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yundúskin</i>	<i>yundúskē</i>	<i>yundúski</i>	{ <i>kíndúskō</i> & } <i>kūndúskō</i>	<i>tšundúskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yundúmin</i>	<i>yúndum</i>	<i>yundúmī</i>	<i>kíndum</i>	<i>tšúndum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsúndin</i>	<i>tsúnde</i>	<i>tsúndi</i>	<i>kíndō</i>	<i>tšúndō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yúndēn</i>	<i>yúndē</i>	<i>yúndē</i>	{ <i>kíndē</i> & } <i>kínduyē</i>	<i>tšúndē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yúnduwī</i>	<i>yúndū</i>	<i>yúnduwī</i>	<i>kíndū</i>	<i>tšúndū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsasúndin</i>	<i>tsasúndū</i>	<i>tsasúndi</i>	<i>kešúndō</i>	<i>tšesúndō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yūrúskin</i>	<i>yūrúskē</i>	<i>yūrúski</i>	<i>koúrúskō</i>	<i>tsourúskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yúrumin</i>	<i>yúrurum</i>	<i>yúrurumī</i>	<i>koúrurum</i>	<i>tsoururum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsúrín</i>	<i>tsúrē</i>	<i>tsúri</i>	<i>koúrō</i>	<i>tsourō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yúrēn</i>	<i>yúrē</i>	<i>yúrē</i>	<i>koúrē</i>	<i>tsourē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yúrurwī</i>	<i>yúrū</i>	<i>yúrurwī</i>	<i>koúrū</i>	<i>tsourū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsasúrín</i>	<i>tsasúrē</i>	<i>tsasúri</i>	<i>kesourō</i>	<i>tšesourō</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>yúwāreskin</i>	<i>yúwāreskē</i>	<i>yúwāreski</i>	<i>koúraskō</i>	<i>tsouraskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yúwāremín</i>	<i>yúwārum</i>	<i>yúwāremī</i>	<i>koúrurum</i>	<i>tsoururum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsúwūrín</i>	<i>tsúwūrē</i>	<i>tsúwūri</i>	<i>koúrō</i>	<i>tsourō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yúwūrēn</i>	<i>yúwūrē</i>	<i>yúwūrē</i>	<i>koúrē</i>	<i>tsourē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yúwūrurwī</i>	<i>yúwūrū</i>	<i>yúwūrurwī</i>	<i>koúrū</i>	<i>tsourū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsasúwūrín</i>	<i>tsasúwūrē</i>	<i>tsasúwūri</i>	<i>kesúwūrō</i>	<i>tšesúwūrō</i>

The third conjugation may be used of *yúwāreskin*, viz. *túwāreskin*, "I laugh at myself;" and the fourth of *yúwāreskin* and *yūrúskin*, viz. *yukúrúskin*, "I laugh at another," and *yukúrúskin*, "I fall on something."

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>túwāreskin</i>	<i>túwāreskē</i>	<i>túwāreski</i>	<i>katúwāreskō</i>	<i>tatúwāreskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>túwāremín</i>	<i>túwārem</i>	<i>túwāremī</i>	<i>katúwārem</i>	<i>tatúwārem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>túwūrín</i>	<i>túwūrē</i>	<i>túwūri</i>	<i>katúwūrō</i>	<i>tatúwūrō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>túwūrēn</i>	<i>túwūrē</i>	<i>túwūrē</i>	<i>katúwūrē</i>	<i>tatúwūrē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>túwūrurwī</i>	<i>túwūrū</i>	<i>túwūrurwī</i>	<i>katúwūrū</i>	<i>tatúwūrū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	{ <i>tsasúwūrín</i> & } <i>tatúwūrín</i>	{ <i>tsasúwūrū</i> & } <i>tatúwūrū</i>	{ <i>tsasúwūri</i> & } <i>tatúwūri</i>	{ <i>katasúwūrō</i> & } <i>katatúwūrō</i>	{ <i>tatasúwūrō</i> & } <i>tatatúwūrō</i>

	INDEFINITE I.	INDEFINITE II.	PERFECT.	AORIST.	FUTURE.
<i>wu</i>	<i>yukúruskín</i>	<i>yukúruskē</i>	<i>yukúruskī</i>	<i>kikúruskō</i>	<i>tšukúruskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>yukúrumín</i>	<i>yukúrum</i>	<i>yukúrumī</i>	<i>kikúrum</i>	<i>tšukúrum</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsukúrín</i>	<i>tsukúrę</i>	<i>tsukúrī</i>	<i>kikúrō</i>	<i>tšukúrō</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>yukúrēn,</i>	<i>yukúrē</i>	<i>yukúrē</i>	<i>kikúrē</i>	<i>tšukúrē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>yukúruwī</i>	<i>yukúrū</i>	<i>yukúruwī</i>	<i>kikúrū</i>	<i>tšukúrū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsasakúrín</i>	<i>tsasakúrę</i>	<i>tsasakúrī</i>	<i>kesakúrō</i>	<i>tšesakúrō</i>

V. *Moods of the verbs.*

All the forms of verbs in §§. 65—86 being those of the *Indicative* mood, we now consider that we have done with this, and shall proceed at once to the remaining moods; viz.

1. *The Imperative Mood.*

§. 87. There are particular imperative forms for the 2d per. sing. and pl., and for the 1st per. pl.

Conjugation I. The imperative is formed of—

a. Verbs in *nigin*, by changing *nęmín* into *né*, *nwī* into *nógō*, and *nyen* into *nyogo*, as :

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PERSON PLURAL.	1ST PERSON PLURAL.
<i>lěné</i> , “go thou”	<i>lěnógō</i> , “go ye”	<i>lěnyogō</i> , “let us go”
<i>dāné</i> , “stand thou”	<i>dānógō</i> , “stand ye”	<i>dānyogō</i> , “let us stand”
<i>wollé</i> , “return thou”	<i>wollógō</i> , “return ye”	<i>wóllēogō</i> , “let us re- turn”
<i>namné</i> , “sit thou”	<i>namnógō</i> , “sit ye”	<i>námnyogō</i> , “let us sit”

b. Verbs in *skin* in a variety of ways, viz.

1. The *monosyllables* form it differently, according as their vowel is either *i*, as in *dískin*, *lískin*, *yískin*; or *e*, as in *yěksin*; or *a* and *u* as in *báskin*, *gáskin*, *táskin*; *búskin*, *múskin*, *rúskin*.

α. Vowel *i*:

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PERSON PLURAL.	1ST PERSON PLURAL.
<i>dē</i> , “do”	<i>dégō</i> & <i>déogō</i>	<i>díyogō</i>
<i>lē</i> , “learn”	<i>légō</i> & <i>léogō</i>	<i>líyogō</i>
<i>yē</i> , “give”	<i>yégō</i> & <i>yéogō</i>	<i>yíyogō</i>

$\beta$  Vowel  $\epsilon$  :

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PERSON PLURAL	1ST PERSON PLURAL.
<i>yā</i> , "drink"	<i>yágō</i> & <i>yeígō</i>	<i>yeíyogō</i>

 $\gamma$  Vowel  $a$  and  $u$  :

<i>bei</i> , "mount"	<i>beígō</i>	<i>beíyogō</i>
<i>gei</i> , "follow"	<i>geígō</i>	<i>geíyogō</i>
<i>tei</i> , "catch"	<i>teígō</i>	<i>teíyogō</i>
<i>bui</i> , "cat"	<i>buígō</i>	<i>buíyogō</i>
<i>mui</i> , "put on"	<i>múigō</i>	<i>múiyogō</i>
<i>ru</i> , "see"	<i>rúigō</i>	<i>rúiyogō</i>

2. Verbs which may be considered *monosyllabic* or *dissyllabic*, (see §. 74), form their imperative either like the second and third conjugations of verbs in *nigin*, or like the polysyllabic verbs in *skin*. The following instances belong to the latter:—

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PERSON PLURAL.	1ST PERSON PLURAL.
<i>dāte</i> , "sew"	<i>dūtogō</i>	<i>dútēogō</i>
<i>kége</i> , "divide"	<i>kégogō</i>	<i>kégēogō</i>
<i>kúte</i> , "bring"	<i>kútogō</i>	<i>kútēogō</i>
<i>lúge</i> , "come out"	<i>lúgogō</i>	<i>lúgēogō</i>
<i>máge</i> , "take"	<i>mágogō</i>	<i>mágēogō</i>
<i>nóte</i> , "send"	<i>nótogō</i>	<i>nótēogō</i>
<i>yáte</i> , "carry"	<i>yátogō</i>	<i>yátēogō</i>

3. Polysyllabic verbs form their imperative differently, according as their final radical vowel is either  $a$  or  $\epsilon$  and  $u$ .

 $\alpha$ . The final vowel  $a$  :

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PER. PL.	1ST PERSON PLURAL.
<i>degei</i> & <i>degá</i> , "follow"	<i>degeígō</i>	<i>degeíyogō</i>
<i>yakkárei</i> , "teach"	<i>yakkáreígō</i>	<i>yakkárēogō</i>
<i>yései</i> , "repair"	<i>yéseígō</i>	<i>yēseíyogō</i>

 $\beta$ . The final vowel  $\epsilon$  or  $u$  :

<i>dóre</i> , "pick"	<i>dōrogō</i>	<i>dórēogō</i>	from <i>dóreşkin</i>
<i>gámbe</i> , "scratch"	<i>gámbogō</i>	<i>gámbēogō</i>	.. <i>gámbuskin</i>
<i>gére</i> , "tie"	<i>gérogo</i>	<i>gérēogō</i>	.. <i>géreşkin</i>

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PER. PL.	1ST PER. PL.
<i>káse</i> , "run"	<i>kásogō</i>	<i>kásšēogō</i> from <i>káseskin</i>
<i>lále</i> , "sell"	<i>lalogō</i>	{ <i>lálēgō</i> & <i>lálēogō</i> . . <i>lálēskin</i>
<i>lāre</i> , "rejoice"	<i>lārogō</i>	<i>lārēogō</i> . . <i>lāreskin</i>
<i>reṃbé</i> , "pay"	<i>reṃbógō</i>	<i>reṃbéogō</i> . . <i>reṃbúskin</i>
<i>róre</i> , "take out"	<i>rórogō</i>	<i>rórēogō</i> . . <i>róreskin</i>
<i>šírte</i> "flay"	<i>širtogō</i>	<i>širtēogō</i> . . <i>širteskin</i>
<i>yārūgē</i> , "redeem"	<i>yārūgógō</i>	<i>yārūgēogō</i> . . <i>yārūgeskin</i>
<i>yundē</i> , "swallow"	<i>yundógō</i>	<i>yundēogō</i> . . <i>yundúskin</i>

γ. Two verbs deviating from the above, viz. *yífuskin*, "I buy," *ísēskin*, "I come."

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PER. PL.	1ST PERSON PLURAL.
<i>yífē</i> , "buy"	<i>yífogō</i>	<i>yífēogō</i>
<i>áre</i> , "come"	<i>árogō</i>	<i>ísšēogō</i>

Note: The final *e* is sometimes dropped, imperative expressions aspiring after the greatest possible shortness; e.g. *dān' dūgō léngē*, "Stop till I go!" *al' lényē*, for *áre lényē*, "Come, let us go!" *tšīn' āntsánem gōné!* "Rise, take thy things."

Conjugation II. This forms the imperative similarly to conjugation I, as—

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PER. PL.	1ST PER. PL.
<i>dágené</i> , "stand upon"	<i>dágenógō</i>	<i>dágēogō</i> from <i>dágeskin</i>
<i>rúfūgené</i> , "write for"	<i>rúfūgenógō</i>	<i>rúfūgēogō</i> . . <i>rúfūgeskin</i>
<i>bógēné</i> , "lie upon"	<i>bógēnogō</i>	<i>bógēogō</i> . . <i>bógeskin</i>

Conjugation III. Here again a division must be made between verbs in *igin* and verbs in *skin*.

a. Verbs in *igin* form their imperative similarly to the second conjugation—

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PER. PL.	1ST PER. PL.
<i>rítēné</i> , "fear thyself"	<i>rítēnogō</i>	<i>rítēogō</i> from <i>ríteskin</i>
<i>wútēné</i> , "look at thyself"	<i>wútēnogō</i>	<i>wútēogō</i> . . <i>wútēskin</i>

b. Verbs in *skin* require a division into the following two classes :

1. Verbs whose last radical vowel is *a*, and monosyllabic verbs with the vowel *u*.

2D PERSON SINGULAR.	2D PERSON PL.	1ST PER. PL.
<i>takkárei</i> , "teach thyself"	<i>takkáreigō</i>	<i>takkárēogō</i> from <i>takkáraskin</i>
<i>tásei</i> , "prepare thyself"	<i>taseígō</i>	<i>taseiyogō</i> . . <i>tasáskin</i>
<i>túruí</i> , "see thyself"	<i>túruigō</i>	<i>turuíyogō</i> . . <i>túruskin</i>

2. Polysyllabic verbs whose last vowel is either *e* or *u*.

<i>tēlādé</i> , "sell thyself"	<i>tēlādógō</i>	<i>tēladégō</i> or <i>tēladéogō</i>
<i>tēgáre</i> , "tattoo thyself"	<i>tēgárogō</i>	<i>tēgárēgō</i> or <i>tēgárēogō</i>
<i>tērgēre</i> , "tie thyself"	<i>tērgērogō</i>	<i>tērgērēgō</i>
<i>tēlifé</i> , "guard thyself"	<i>tēlifógō</i>	<i>tēlifégō</i>
<i>degámbe</i> , "scratch thyself"	<i>degámbogō</i>	<i>degámbēogō</i>

Conjugation IV derives its forms from Conjugation II, as—

<i>yitēwúgené</i> , "cause to see"	<i>yitēwúgenógō</i>	<i>yitēwúgēogō</i>
<i>yígdé</i> , "do for one"	<i>yígdóyō</i>	<i>yígdéogō</i>
<i>yígēladé</i> , "sell for one"	<i>yígēladógō</i>	<i>yígēladéogō</i>

### 2. The Negative Mood.

§. 88. This mood is formed of the second indefinite and the future tense. In the first case the *gē* or *kē* of *igē* or *skē* become *ganí*, of which, however, only the second syllable appears to be the negative sign; the second person adds *mi*, which is doubtless a euphonic alteration of *ni*; the third person adds *ni*: in plural the first person adds *ndé*; the second *wi*, which also appears to be a euphonic substitution for *ni*; and the 3d per. pl. likewise adds *ni*. In the second case the future terminations *tsosko* and *skō* become *tsasganí* and *sganí*; *tsono*, of the 3d per. sing., becomes *tsanní*; and *tsou*, of the 2d per. pl., becomes *tsāwí*, which probably stands for *tsouni*. The other persons of the future coincide with the second indefinite. It would therefore appear, that, with the only exception of the 1st per. pl., negation is expressed throughout this mood by the ter-



mination *ni*, which is doubtless identical with the Germanic prefix *ni* or *n* in words like "nought, neither, never, neuter," &c., and with the negative particle *ganí*. It may even be asked, whether the negative termination of the 1st per. sing. is not this very negative particle *ganí* itself. The negative mood has always a strong accent on its last syllable, so that all the words are doubly accented.

Conjugation I. Here we give the negative indefinite in the first column, and the corresponding negative future in the second, of the following verbs: *wúnigin*, "I look;" *kārǎnigin*, "I approach;" *wólnigin*, "I return;" *séngin*, "I disentangle;" *dískin*, "I do;" *yískin*, "I give;" *táskin*, "I catch;" *yéskin*, "I drink;" *rúskin*, "I see;" *yundúskin*, "I swallow;" *ladéskin*, "I sell;" and *yargáleskin*, "I mind."

NEGATIVE INDEFINITE.

NEGATIVE FUTURE.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wúniganí</i>	<i>kārǎniganí</i>	<i>wútsasganí</i>	<i>kārǎntsasganí</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúnemmi</i>	<i>kārǎninemmi</i>	<i>wútsammí</i>	<i>kārǎntsammí</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wútseni</i>	<i>kārǎntseni</i>	<i>wútsanní</i>	<i>kārǎntsanní</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúnnyendé</i>	<i>kārǎnnyendé</i>	<i>wútseyendé</i>	<i>kārǎntseyendé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúnuwí</i>	<i>kārǎnuwí</i>	<i>wútsāwí</i>	<i>kārǎntsāwí</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútsānί</i>	<i>kārǎntsānί</i>	<i>wútsādānί</i>	<i>kārǎntsādānί</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>wólniganí</i>	<i>sénganί</i>	<i>wóltsasganí</i>	<i>séntsasganí</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wólnemmi</i>	<i>sénnemmi</i>	<i>wóltsammí</i>	<i>séntsammí</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wóltseni</i>	<i>séntseni</i>	<i>wóltsanní</i>	<i>séntsanní</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wólnendé</i>	<i>sénnnyendé</i>	<i>wóltseyendé</i>	<i>séntseyendé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wólnuwí</i>	<i>sénnuwí</i>	<i>wóltsāwí</i>	<i>séntsāwí</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wóltsānί</i>	<i>séntsānί</i>	<i>wóltsādānί</i>	<i>séntsādānί</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>dísganί</i>	<i>yískanί</i>	<i>tšídísganί</i>	<i>tšésganί</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>dímmí</i>	<i>yímmí</i>	<i>tšídimmí</i>	<i>tšémmí</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsédeni</i>	<i>tšínί</i>	<i>tšídeni</i>	<i>tšéínί</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>díyendé</i>	<i>yíyendé</i>	<i>tšídíyendé</i>	<i>tšéíyendé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>díwí</i>	<i>yíwí</i>	<i>tšídāwí</i>	<i>tšóúwí</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsúdēnί</i>	<i>tsúdēnί</i>	<i>tšédēnί</i>	<i>tšédēnί</i>

## NEGATIVE INDEFINITE.

## NEGATIVE FUTURE.

*wu* *tásganí* *yěsganı*  
*ni* *támmí* *yámmí*  
*ši* *tsétanı* *tsáni*  
*ándi* *teiyendé* *yěyendé*  
*nándi* *táwí* *yáwí*  
*sándi* *tsátanı* *tsásanı*

*wu* *rúsganı* *yúndusganí*  
*ni* *rúmmí* *yúndummí*  
*ši* *tsúrúńı* *tsúndúńı*  
*ándi* *rúiyendé* *yúndendé*  
*nándi* *rúwí* *yúndúwí*  
*sándi* *tsárúńı* *tsasúndúńı*

*wu* *ladésganı* *yargálesganı*  
*ni* *ládemmí* *yargálemmí*  
*ši* *tseládeńı* *tsargáleńı*  
*ándi* *ládēndé* *yargálēndé*  
*nándi* *ládūwí* *yargálūwí*  
*sándi* *tsaládeńı* *tsasargáleńı*

*tšítasganí* { *tšésganí* or  
*tšíasganí*  
*tšítámmí* *tšámmí*  
*tšítanı* *tšáni*  
*tšíteiyendé* *tšéiyendé*  
*tšítáwí* *tšáwí*  
*tšátanı* *tšésanı*

*tšírusganí* *tšúndusganí*  
*tšírúmmí* *tšúndummí*  
*tšírúńı* *tšúndúńı*  
*tšíruiyendé* *tšúndendé*  
*tšírúwí* *tšúndúwí*  
*tšárúńı* *tšasúndúńı*

*tšíládésganı* *tšargálesganı*  
*tšíládēmmí* *tšargálemmí*  
*tšíládeńı* *tšargáleńı*  
*tšíládēndé* *tšargálēndé*  
*tšíládūwí* *tšargálūwí*  
*tšēládeńı* *tšargáleńı*

Conjugation II—Two instances will suffice here, that of *wúńgin*, “I look,” and *námgin*, “I sit.”

*wu* *wúgęsganı* *nábgesganı*  
*ni* *wúgęmmí* *nábgemmí*  
*ši* *wátsegeńı* *náptsegeńı*  
*ándi* *wúgēndé* *nábgeńde*  
*nándi* *wúgūwí* *nábguwí*  
*sándi* *wútsaganı* *náptsaganı*

*wútsigęsganı* *náptsigęsganı*  
*wútsigęmmí* *náptsigęmmí*  
*wútsigeńı* *náptsigeńı*  
*wútsigēndé* *náptsigēndé*  
*wútsigūwí* *náptsigūwí*  
*wútsaganı* *náptsaganı*

Conjugation III.—This will be illustrated by the verbs, *wúńgin* “I see,” *yargáleskin* “I mind,” *yúwūreskin*, “I laugh,” and *yětséskin*, “I kill.”

NEGATIVE INDEFINITE.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wútęsganı</i>	<i>targálesganı</i>
<i>nı</i>	<i>wútęmmı</i>	<i>targálemmı</i>
<i>şı</i>	<i>wútęni</i>	<i>targáleni</i>
<i>ındı</i>	<i>wútendé</i>	<i>targálendé</i>
<i>nándı</i>	<i>wútüwi</i>	<i>targálüwi</i>
<i>sándı</i>	<i>wútáni</i>	<i>targáleni</i>

NEGATIVE FUTURE.

<i>wútatęsganı</i>	<i>tatargálesganı</i>
<i>wútatęmmı</i>	<i>tatargálemmı</i>
<i>wútatęni</i>	<i>tatargáleni</i>
<i>wútatendé</i>	<i>tatargálendé</i>
<i>wútatüwi</i>	<i>tatargálüwi</i>
<i>wútatáni</i>	<i>tatargáleni</i>

<i>wu</i>	<i>túwüřsganı</i>	<i>tétęsganı</i>
<i>nı</i>	<i>túwüřmmı</i>	<i>tétęmmı</i>
<i>şı</i>	<i>túwüřni</i>	<i>tétęni</i>
<i>ındı</i>	<i>túwürendé</i>	<i>tétendé</i>
<i>nándı</i>	<i>túwürüwi</i>	<i>tétüwi</i>
<i>sándı</i>	<i>tatúwüřeni</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>tetétęni</i>

<i>tatúwüřsganı</i>	<i>tatétęsganı</i>
<i>tatúwüřmmı</i>	<i>tatétęmmı</i>
<i>tatúwüřni</i>	<i>tatétęni</i>
<i>tatúwürendé</i>	<i>tatétendé</i>
<i>tatúwürüwi</i>	<i>tatétüwi</i>
<i>tatatúwüřeni</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>tatétáni</i>

The fourth conjugation is the same as the second, with the prefix *yite*.

3. *The Conjunctional Mood.*

§. 89. This answers to the *Conditional Mood* of other languages, and on this account we might have called it by that name; but as its use is peculiar in Kanuri, inasmuch as it expresses merely a *time relation*, and serves as the great *connective of propositions*, we prefer the more characteristic name of *conjunctional*. If it were not a contradiction in terms, we might have named it "the Temporal Mood." Its formal nature is still very obvious: it was probably nothing else, originally, than a preterite tense, with the enclitic suffix of the adverb *yā*, "if, when," which, in the course of time, so fully coalesced with it into one word, as now to constitute a distinct form for the conjunctional mood. The supposition that this mood was originally formed by the suffix *yā*, gains considerable support from forms like *báliya* or *bália* for the simple *báli*, "to-morrow." Thus we met with the two following passages: *nı yım lénnem bágōya*, "at the time when thou dost not sleep," and *wátšia sēbāya léngē*, "I will go to-morrow morning;"

<sup>1</sup>and *túwüřeni*.

<sup>2</sup>and *tatúwüřeni*.

*lit*, "when to-morrow, when morning." This suffix *yā*, and the second syllable of the word *kwōyā*, are likely to have the closest radical affinity with the conjunction *tšā*.

The conjunctive mood, which always stands in a subordinate proposition, has two different forms, in order to express whether the energy of the verb in the principal proposition, is to be considered as exercised antecedent or subsequent to the time of speaking.

The first we call the Past Conjunctive, and the second the Future Conjunctive.

*a.* The *past conjunctive mood* is derived from the aorist tense of the first conjugation by changing *gokō* into *gasgānyā*, or *skō* into *skānyā*, as from *wūgokō*, *wūgasgānyā*. "when I had looked;" from *nābgokō*, *nābgasgānyā*, "when I had sat down;" from *kālagokō*, *kālaggasgānyā*, "when I had turned;" from *pēsokō*, *pēsgasgānyā*, "when I had fanned;" from *kīlādēskō*, *kīlādēsgānyā*, "when I had sold;" from *kēsō*, *kēsānyā*, "when I had given;" from *keifuskō*, *keifusgānyā*; from *kēsō*, *kēsānyā*, "when I had drunk."

<i>wu</i>	<i>wūgasgānyā</i>	<i>nābgasgānyā</i>	<i>kālaggasgānyā</i>	<i>pēsgasgānyā</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wūgāmiā</i>	<i>nābgāmiā</i>	<i>kālaggāmiā</i>	<i>pēsāmiā</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wūgānyā</i>	<i>nābgānyā</i>	<i>kālaggānyā</i>	<i>pēsānyā</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>wūgeiēndeā</i>	<i>nābgeiēndeā</i>	<i>kālaggeiēndeā</i>	<i>pēsgeiēndeā</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>wūgoūwiā</i>	<i>nābgoūwiā</i>	<i>kālaggoūwiā</i>	<i>pēsgoūwiā</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>wūgedānyā</i>	<i>nābgedānyā</i>	<i>kālaggedānyā</i>	<i>pēsgedānyā</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>kīlādēsgānyā</i>	<i>kēsānyā</i>	<i>keifusgānyā</i>	<i>kēsānyā</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>kīlādēmiā</i>	<i>kēmīā</i>	<i>keifūmiā</i>	<i>keāmiā</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>kīlādēnyā</i>	<i>keīnyā</i>	<i>keifūnyā</i>	<i>keānyā</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>kīlādēndeā</i>	<i>keīyēndeā</i>	<i>keifēndeā</i>	<i>keīyēndeā</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>kīlādēwiā</i>	<i>keōūwiā</i>	<i>keifūwiā</i>	<i>keāwiā</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>kelādēnyā</i>	<i>kēdēnyā</i>	<i>kešifūnyā</i>	<i>kesānyā</i>

The second and third conjugations need no further illustration, as they are inflected entirely like the first, *gigeskō*,

being changed into *gigesgányā*, and *gateskō* into *gatesgányā*, or *skō* into *sgányā*

The conjunctive mood of the verb *nyin* is again identical with the mere terminations of the other verbs (vide §. 64.); as, *wu gasgányā*, *ni gámīā*, *ši gányā*, *ándi geiendeā*, *nándi goúyā*, *sándi gedányā*.

*b.* The *Future Conjunctive Mood* is derived from the perfect tense, by simply suffixing *ya*, of which suffix the *y* is generally dropped after *i*. We therefore only give the first conjugation of the following four verbs: *néskīa*, "when I shall have said;" *wúnigīa*, "when I shall have looked;" *diskīa*, "when I shall have done;" and *búskīa*, "when I shall have eaten."

<i>*wu</i>	<i>néskīa</i>	<i>wúnigīa</i>	<i>diskīa</i>	<i>búskīa</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>némīa</i>	<i>wúnemīa</i>	<i>dímīa</i>	<i>búmīa</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsénīa</i>	<i>wútsīa</i>	<i>tsédīa</i>	<i>tsébuīya</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>nyéa</i>	<i>wúnyēya</i>	<i>dīyēya</i>	<i>buīyēya</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>núwīa</i>	<i>wúnuwīa</i>	<i>dúwīa</i>	<i>búwīa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsánīa</i>	<i>wútsēīya</i>	<i>tsádīa</i>	<i>tsábuīya</i>

#### 4. *The Participial Mood.*

§. 90. The Kanuri language possesses a verbal form, which governs an object, and is used, at the same time, as a noun or adjective. In these respects it entirely corresponds to the participle of other languages. But, unlike the common participle, it is also regularly inflected, according to the different persons, tenses, and conjugations. It is to remind us of all these peculiarities, that we name it the *Participial Mood*.

The participial mood is used in three different tenses, the present, past, and future; and, accordingly, we shall have to speak of a *present*, *past*, and *future participial*. Its characteristic is uniform: it terminates in *na* in the 1st and 3d pers. sing. and pl., in the 2d per. sing., *na*, by assimilation, becomes *ma* and in the 2d per. pl. euphonic laws change it into *wa*.

a. *The Present Participial* is derived from the second indefinite tense, whose final *gē* or *kē*, in the 1st per. sing., through the influence of the suffix *na*, become changed into *ga*. We illustrate this form by inflecting the verbs *wāngana*, "I am looking;" *māngana*, "I am drawing tight;" *ladēsana*, "I am selling;" *gēresana*, "I am tying."

### Conjugation I.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wāngana</i>	<i>māngana</i>	<i>ladēsana</i>	<i>gēresana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wāngema</i>	<i>māngema</i>	<i>ladēsema</i>	<i>gēreema</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wātsena</i>	<i>mātsena</i>	<i>tselādēna</i>	<i>tsergērena</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>wānyēna</i>	<i>mānyēna</i>	<i>lādēna</i>	<i>gērēna</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>wānūwa</i>	<i>mānnūwa</i>	<i>lādūwa</i>	<i>gērūwa</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>wātsāna</i>	<i>mātsāna</i>	<i>tsalādēna</i>	<i>tsargērena</i>

### Conjugation II.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wāgesana</i>	<i>mādgēsana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wāgema</i>	<i>mādgema</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wātsēna</i>	<i>mātsēna</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>wāgēna</i>	<i>mādgēna</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>wāgūwa</i>	<i>mādgūwa</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>wātsagāna</i>	<i>mātsagāna</i>

### Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wātesana</i>	<i>māttesana</i>	<i>teladēsana</i>	<i>tergēresana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wātemma</i>	<i>māttemma</i>	<i>teladēmma</i>	<i>tergēremma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wātsēna</i>	<i>mātsēna</i>	<i>telādēna</i>	<i>tergērena</i>
<i>āndi</i>	<i>wātēna</i>	<i>māttēna</i>	<i>telādēna</i>	<i>tergērēna</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>wātūwa</i>	<i>māttūwa</i>	<i>telādūwa</i>	<i>tergērūwa</i>
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>wātāna</i>	<i>māttāna</i>	<i>talādēna</i>	<i>targērena</i>

The fourth conjugation is obtained by prefixing *yite* to the second conjugation of verbs in *njin*, or to the first conjugation of verbs in *skin*.

b. *The Past Participial* is derived from the aorist tense, of which the termination *goskō*, in the first person, becomes *gasgana*, and *gonō*, in the third person, *ganna*.

Conjugation I.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wúgasgana</i>	<i>mádyasgana</i>	<i>kiladésgana</i>	<i>kirgérésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúganna</i>	<i>mádyanna</i>	<i>kiládemma</i>	<i>kirgéremma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúganna</i>	<i>mádyanna</i>	<i>kilálena</i>	<i>kirgéréna</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúgeiyēna</i>	<i>mádgeiyēna</i>	<i>kilálēna</i>	<i>kirgérēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúgouwa</i>	<i>mádyouwa</i>	<i>kilálūwa</i>	<i>kirgérūwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúgedāna</i>	<i>mádgeđāna</i>	<i>kelálena</i>	<i>kergéréna</i>

Conjugation II.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wúgigesgana</i>	<i>mátkigesgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúgigemna</i>	<i>mátkigemna</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúgigena</i>	<i>mátkigena</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúgiyēna</i>	<i>mátkiyēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúgiūwa</i>	<i>mátkiūwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúgegāna</i>	<i>mátkegāna</i>

Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wúgatésgana</i>	<i>mádyatésgana</i>	<i>katelulésgana</i>	<i>katergérésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúgatemma</i>	<i>mádyatemma</i>	<i>katelúlemma</i>	<i>katergéremma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúgateña</i>	<i>mádyateña</i>	<i>katelúlena</i>	<i>katergéréna</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wúgateña</i>	<i>mádyateña</i>	<i>kateluléna</i>	<i>katergérēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúgatūwa</i>	<i>mádyatūwa</i>	<i>katelálūwa</i>	<i>katergérūwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúgatāna</i>	<i>mádyatāna</i>	<i>katelúlena</i>	<i>katergéréna</i>

c. *The Future Participial* is derived from the future tense, of which the termination *tsoskō*, in the first person, becomes *tsasgana*, and *tsonō* in the third person *tsanna*.

Conjugation I.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wútsasgana</i>	<i>máttasgana</i>	<i>tšiladésgana</i>	<i>tširgérésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wútsamma</i>	<i>máttamma</i>	<i>tšilálemma</i>	<i>tširgéremma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wútsanna</i>	<i>máttanna</i>	<i>tšilálena</i>	<i>tširgéréna</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wútseyēna</i>	<i>máttseyēna</i>	<i>tšiládēna</i>	<i>tširgérēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wútsouwa</i>	<i>máttouwa</i>	<i>tšilálūwa</i>	<i>tširgérūwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútsedana</i>	<i>máttsedana</i>	<i>tšelálena</i>	<i>tšergéréna</i>

## Conjugation II.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wútsigesgana</i>	<i>máttšigesgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúšigemma</i>	<i>máttšigemma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wútsigēna</i>	<i>máttšigēna</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wútsigēna</i>	<i>máttšigēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wútsigūwa</i>	<i>máttšigūwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútsagāna</i>	<i>máttšagāna</i>

## Conjugation III.

<i>wu</i>	<i>wútatēsgena</i>	<i>máttatēsgena</i>	<i>tatēlálēsgena</i>	<i>tatērgēřēsgena</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wútatēmma</i>	<i>máttatēmma</i>	<i>tatēlálēmma</i>	<i>tatērgēřēmma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wútatēna</i>	<i>máttatēna</i>	<i>tatēlálēna</i>	<i>tatērgēřēna</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>wútatēna</i>	<i>máttatēna</i>	<i>tatēlálēna</i>	<i>tatērgēřēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wútatūwa</i>	<i>máttatūwa</i>	<i>tatēlálūwa</i>	<i>tatērgēřūwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wútatāna</i>	<i>máttatāna</i>	<i>tatēlálēna</i>	<i>tatērgēřēna</i>

The participial mood of the verb *ńgin* or *ńeskin* is again identical with the terminations of the above verbs, as will be seen from the following :

	PRESENT PARTICIPIAL.	PAST PARTICIPIAL.	FUTURE PARTICIPIAL.
<i>wu</i>	<i>ńesgana</i>	<i>gąsgana</i>	<i>tsąsgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>ńemma</i>	<i>gamma</i>	<i>tsámma</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>tsēna</i>	<i>gánna</i>	<i>tsánna</i>
<i>ándi</i>	<i>ńełyēna</i>	<i>gełyēna</i>	<i>tsęłyēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>ńúwa</i>	<i>gouwa</i>	<i>tsouwa</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>tsádēna &amp; tsána</i>	<i>gędāna</i>	<i>tsędāna</i>

## VI. Infinitive und Participle.

§. 91. For the formation of the *infinitive* a separation of the verbs into two classes is again required, viz. those with the termination *ńgin* and those with *skin*.

*a.* Verbs terminating in *ńgin* form their infinitive by suffixing *tę* or *ta*, and if this assumes the suffixes *gę* or *gā*, we obtain the infinitive of the second conjugation. The third conjugation does not appear to have an infinitive



peculiar to itself, and the infinitive of the fourth is obtained by prefixing *yite*, indiscriminately either to the first or second infinitive.

FINITE VERBS.	INF. OF CONJUG. I.		INF. OF CONJUG. II.	
<i>wāṅgin</i> , "I look "	<i>wūte</i> ,	<i>wūtā</i>	<i>wūtege</i> ,	<i>wūtagā</i>
<i>wōṅgin</i> , "I return "	<i>wōlte</i> ,	<i>wōltā</i>	<i>wōltege</i> ,	<i>wōltagā</i>
<i>nāṅgin</i> , "I break "	<i>nāṁte</i> ,	<i>nāṁtā</i>	<i>nāṁtege</i> ,	<i>nāṁtagā</i>
<i>nāṁgin</i> , "I sit "	<i>nāpte</i> ,	<i>nāptā</i>	<i>nāptege</i> ,	<i>nāptagā</i>
<i>sēṅgin</i> , "I disentangle "	<i>sēnte</i> ,	<i>sēntā</i>	<i>sēntege</i> ,	<i>sēntagā</i>
<i>māṅgin</i> , "I draw tight "	<i>mātte</i> ,	<i>māttā</i>	<i>māttege</i> ,	<i>māttagā</i>
<i>kārāṅgin</i> , "I approach "	<i>kārāṁte</i>	<i>kārāṁtā</i>	<i>kārāṁtege</i> ,	<i>kārāṁtagā</i>
<i>kālaṅgin</i> , "I turn "	<i>kālakte</i> ,	<i>kālaktā</i>	<i>kālaktege</i> ,	<i>kālaktagā</i>
<i>tēkkṣkin</i> , II. "I lean "			<i>tēktege</i> ,	<i>tēktagā</i>
<i>tsēkkṣkin</i> , II. "I hasten to "			<i>tsēktege</i> ,	<i>tsēktagā</i>
<i>nāṅṣkin</i> , II. "I meet "			<i>nātege</i> ,	<i>nātagā</i>

§. 92. *b. Verbs in skin* evince a much greater variety in forming their *infinitive*; and to obtain a more convenient survey of the same, we have in the first place to retain their division into those without the initial *y*, and those with it.

*aa. Infinitive of verbs in skin whose initial is not y.*

Two changes have here to be attended to, one at the beginning and the other at the end of the word.

*α. The change at the beginning of words* consists in prefixing a liquid to verbs with the initials, *b*, *d*, *t*, *g*, *k*. This liquid, being accommodated to the initial consonant, is *m* before *b*, *n* before *d* and *t*, and *ṅ* before *g* and *k*. Agreeably to §. 15, the initial *k*., on receiving the prefix *ṅ*, becomes changed into *g*. Hence we get the infinitives: *ṅbā*, *ṅbū*, *ṅdīō*, *ṅdūtō*, *ṅtā*, *ṅtīō*, *ṅgā*, *ṅgālō*, *ṅgāsō*, *ṅgōrō*, from the verbs *bāskin*, *būskin*, *dāskin*, *dūteskin*, *tāskin*, *tīskin*, *gāskin*, *gūteskin*, *kāṣskin*, and *kōṅṣskin*; see also §. 26.

*β.* The change at the end of words is different, according as the verbal root is either monosyllabic or polysyllabic.

*αα.* Monosyllabic verbal roots separate into the following two classes :

1. *Monosyllables with the vowels a and u.* The only change produced here, is the lengthening of short vowels, as—

FINITE VERBS.	INFINITIVES.	FINITE VERBS.	INFINITIVES.
<i>báskin</i> , " I mount "	<i>ńbā</i>	<i>múskin</i> , " I put on "	<i>mū</i>
<i>gáskin</i> , " I follow "	<i>ńgā</i>	<i>rúskin</i> , " I see "	<i>rū</i>
<i>táskin</i> , " I catch "	<i>ńtā</i>	<i>núskin</i> , " I die "	<i>nū</i>
<i>búskin</i> , " I eat "	<i>ńbū &amp; mbú</i>		

2. *Monosyllables with the vowel i.* These add the vowel *o*, and then either leave their radical vowel unchanged, or convert it into *ē* ; as—

FINITE VERBS.	INFINITIVES.
<i>dúskin</i> , " I do "	<i>ndiō, ndéō</i>
<i>lúskin</i> , " I learn "	<i>liō, léō</i>
<i>túskin</i> , " I suffice "	<i>ntiō, ntéō</i>

*Note*—*ísgskin*, " I come," the only verb beginning with *i*, follows these verbs, by forming the infinitives, *íuliō* and *ndéō*.

*ββ.* *Polysyllabic verbal roots*, including some which are frequently contracted into monosyllables, but for our present purpose must be considered as polysyllabic. Most verbs of this class have for their final vowel *e*, a few have *u*, and only one has *a*. The last-mentioned verb, *degáskin*, " I stop," has in the infinitive, *ndégā*, and the others form their infinitive by changing the last vowel into *ō* ; as,

FINITE VERBS.	INFINITIVES.
<i>bāfúskin</i> , " I am cooked "	<i>mbáfjō</i>
<i>dóreskin</i> , " I pick "	<i>ndórō</i>
<i>dútéskin</i> , " I sew "	<i>ndútō</i>
<i>gámbuskin</i> , " I scratch "	<i>ngámbo</i>
<i>gádéskin</i> , " I murmur "	<i>ngánlō</i>
<i>gándéskin</i> , " I lick "	<i>ngándō</i>
<i>gágeskin</i> , " I enter "	<i>ngágjō</i>
<i>géndéskin</i> , " I shake "	<i>ngéndō</i>
<i>géréskin</i> , " I gnaw. "	<i>ngérō</i>
<i>gértéskin</i> , " I separate. "	<i>ngértō</i>
<i>gêreskin</i> , " I tie "	<i>ngêrō</i>
<i>káreskin</i> , " I tattoo "	<i>ngárō</i>
<i>káséskin</i> , " I run "	<i>ngásō &amp; kásō</i>
<i>kégeskin</i> , " I divide "	<i>ngéogō &amp; kéjō</i>
<i>kéndéskin</i> , " I tie a child on the back "	<i>ngéndō</i>
<i>kóreskin</i> , " I ask "	<i>ngórō</i>
<i>kútéskin</i> , & <i>kúskin</i> , " I bring "	<i>kútō &amp; ngútō</i>
<i>ladéskin</i> , " I sell "	<i>ládō</i>
<i>láreskin</i> , " I rejoice "	<i>lárō</i>
<i>lífúskin</i> , " I guard "	<i>ljfō</i>
<i>lúskin</i> & <i>lúgeskin</i> , " I come out "	<i>lúgō</i>
<i>máskin</i> & <i>mágeskin</i> , " I accept "	<i>mágō</i>
<i>mbáreskin</i> , " I am tired "	<i>mbárō</i>
<i>méreskin</i> , " I recover "	<i>mêrō</i>
<i>náskin</i> & <i>nátéskin</i> , " I plant "	<i>nátō</i>
<i>nándéskin</i> , " I bite "	<i>nándō</i>
<i>nóskin</i> & <i>nóteskin</i> , " I send "	<i>nótō</i>
<i>pánušeskin</i> , " I get "	<i>pándō</i>
<i>pértéskin</i> , " I cut with a sickle "	<i>pértō</i>
<i>rágeskin</i> , " I like "	<i>rágjō</i>
<i>rembúskin</i> , " I pay "	<i>rémbo</i>
<i>róreskin</i> , " I take out "	<i>rórō</i>
<i>ságeskin</i> , " I unload "	<i>ságjō</i>
<i>sáugeskin</i> , " I raise "	<i>sáugjō</i>
<i>saugéskin</i> , " I awake "	<i>sáugjō</i>

FINITE VERBS.	INFINITIVES.
<i>sébgēsķin</i> , " I forget "	<i>sébgō</i> & <i>séptagā</i>
<i>širtēsķin</i> , " I flay "	<i>širtō</i>
<i>támbusķin</i> , " I taste "	<i>támbō</i>
<i>wárešķin</i> , " I am sick "	<i>wárō</i>

*bb. Infinitive of Verbs in skin whose initial is not y.*

Here also two changes have to be attended to, the one initial, and the other final.

*α. The change at the beginning of words consists in the exchange of y for ts, which then receives a prosthetic n; and, besides this, a few verbs change their first vowel.*

*β. The change at the end of words is various.*

*αα. The two monosyllabic verbs yēsķin, " I drink," and yisķin, " I give," have for their infinitives respectively, ūtsā and ūtsō, probably for ūtsiō.*

*ββ. The polysyllabic verbs must be considered in reference to their final vowel, viz.—*

*1. Polysyllabic roots whose last vowel is a, either assume the suffix i, which then coalesces with the a into the diphthong ei, or only lengthen the a; as,*

FINITE VERBS.	INFINITIVES.
<i>yakkarásķin</i> , " I teach "	<i>ntsákkarei</i> ,* <i>ntsákkarā</i>
<i>yēsērásķin</i> , " I enough "	<i>ntsásarei</i> , <i>ntsásarā</i>
<i>yētserásķin</i> , " I believe "	<i>ntsásarei</i> , <i>ntsásarā</i>
<i>yaŋgaŋgásķin</i> , " I mimic "	<i>ntsáŋgaŋgei</i> , <i>ntsáŋgaŋgā</i>
<i>yēsásķin</i> , " I repair "	<i>ntsásei</i> , <i>ntsásā</i>
<i>yirgásķin</i> , " I add "	<i>ntsérgei</i> , <i>ntsérgā</i>

*2. The verb yekkkélisķin, " I teach," has in the infinitive ntsekkéliō.*

---

\* Frequently the *ei* of these Infinitives is marked by a strong accent, as *ntsákkarei*, &c.

3. *Polysyllabic roots whose final vowel is e or u, generally change the same into o, but sometimes admit of several changes, as :—*

FINITE VERBS.

INFINITIVES.

*yardúgeskin*, " I accompany "  
*yargáleskin*, " I mind "  
*yārūgéskin*, " I redeem "  
*yākéskin*, " I put "  
*yátéskin* & *yáskin*, " I carry "  
*yambúskin*, " I beget "  
*yětséskin*, " I kill "  
*yembúluskin*, " I fill "  
*yífuskin*, " I buy "  
*yundúskin*, " I swallow "  
*yūrúskin*, " I fall "  
*yúwūręskin*, " I laugh "

*ntsárdugō*, *ntsárdū*  
*ntsárgalō*, *ntsárgaléi*, *sárgaléi*  
*ntsáruḡō*, *ntsárō*, *ntsáruí*  
*ntsákō*, *ntsákō*  
*ntsátō*  
*ntsámbō*  
*ntsětsō*, *ntsěotsō*  
*ntsěmbulō*, *sěmbulō*  
*ntsífō*  
*ntsúndō*  
*ntsúrō*  
*ntsúrō*

§. 93. There are two *participles*, one present and active, and the other past and passive.

The *present or active participle* is regularly derived from the infinitive of the first and second conjugations, by suffixing *ma*, comp §. 40.

Conjugation I.

*a. Active Participles of Verbs in ṅgin.*

<i>kalákteṃa</i> , "turning"	<i>péstṃa</i> , "winnowing"
<i>kārḡáiteṃa</i> , "approaching"	<i>sénteṃa</i> , "disentangling"
<i>mátteṃa</i> , "drawing tight"	<i>tústṃa</i> , "resting"
<i>nýmteṃa</i> , "breaking"	<i>tustéṃa</i> , "beating"
<i>nápteṃa</i> , "sitting"	<i>wólteṃa</i> , "returning"
<i>pántṃa</i> , "hearing"	<i>wátṃa</i> , "looking"

*b. Active Participles of Verbs in skin.*

<i>ndéoma</i> , <i>kęndéoma</i> , <i>kundóma</i> , "doing, making."	<i>núma</i> , <i>kármūma</i> , "dying."
<i>ntáma</i> , <i>kęntáma</i> , "catching."	<i>mágōma</i> , <i>kommágōma</i> , "accepting."
<i>rúma</i> , <i>kúrřuma</i> , "seeing, a scer."	<i>nátōma</i> , <i>kęnnúdtōma</i> , "planting."

<i>ñgútōma, koñgútōma,</i> "bringing."	<i>wárōma, kowárōma,</i> "sick, being sick."
<i>ládōma, kēlládōma,</i> "selling."	
<i>lifōma, kēllifōma,</i> "guarding."	<i>ntsōma, kēntsōma,</i> "giving."
<i>ñgámbōma, kēñgámbōma,</i>	<i>ntsáma, kēntsáma,</i> "drinking."
"scratching."	<i>ntsátōma, kēntsátōma,</i> "carrying."
<i>ñgárōma, kēñgárōma,</i> "tattooing."	<i>ntsakkareíma,</i> "teaching, a teacher."
<i>pértōma, kēmpértōma,</i> "plucking."	
<i>ñgásōma, kēñgásōma,</i> "running."	<i>ntsásāma, kēntsásāma,</i> "repairing."
<i>širtōma, kēširtōma,</i> "flaying."	<i>ntsérgeima, kēntsérgeima,</i> "adding."
<i>ādēmtēma, ādēmmāma,</i> "reflecting."	<i>ntsúndōma, kōntsúndōma,</i> "swallowing."
<i>ndéōma, kēndéōma,</i> "coming."	
<i>mbáfōma, kēmbáfōma,</i> "cooking."	<i>ntsšifōma, kēntsšifōma,</i> "buying."
<i>rórōma, kērrórōma,</i> "taking out."	<i>ntsákōma, kēntsákōma,</i> "putting."
<i>ñgérōma, kēñgérōma,</i> "tying."	<i>ntsčotsōma, kēntsčotsōma,</i> "killing."

### Conjugation II.

<i>wūtégēma,</i> "showing."	<i>kārañtégēma,</i> "helping to approach."
<i>woltégēma,</i> "turning to."	
<i>ñamtégēma,</i> "breaking for."	<i>pšestégēma,</i> "winnowing for."
<i>napťégēma,</i> "sitting to."	<i>tustégēma,</i> "helping to beat."
<i>máttégēma,</i> "drawing to."	<i>nátégēma,</i> "overtaking."
<i>šentégēma,</i> "disentangling for."	<i>tšekkégēma,</i> "hastening."
<i>kalaktégēma,</i> "helping to turn."	

§. 94. Only verbs in *ñgin* have a *past* or *passive participle*, which is formed by suffixing *gata* to the simple verbal root. Its formal agreement with the 3d per. pl. of the aorist tense in the third conjugation seems to be merely accidental, and its form may be accounted for in the following manner: *ga* may be considered as the changed *go* of the aorist termination *goskō*, and *ta* as the real past or passive sign, which coincides with the ancient  $\pi$  of the participle perfect in Sanscrit, and the *tus* in Latin, and which root Professor Ewald also recognises in the prefix of the Hebrew *Hithpael*, see §. 123 *a*, of his "Ausführliches Lehrbuch der Hebräischen Sprache." When formed of

transitive verbs, it corresponds with the common past participle, but when formed of intransitive verbs, it has often to be rendered by our present participle ; as,

<i>wūgata</i> , "seen."	<i>dāgāta</i> , "having stood up, standing."
<i>ṇamgāta</i> , "broken."	<i>bōgāta</i> , "having laid down, lying."
<i>mādāgata</i> , "drawn tight."	<i>wōlgata</i> , "returned."
<i>ṣeṅgāta</i> , "disentangled."	<i>lēdgata</i> , "having fallen asleep, being asleep, sleeping."
<i>kalākkāta</i> , "turned."	<i>mālamyāta</i> , "having become a priest, being a priest."
<i>kōgāta</i> , "surpassed."	
<i>ṇemṅgata</i> , "narrated."	
<i>ḡṛāgata</i> , "hid."	
<i>tsakkāta</i> , "covered."	
<i>nābgata</i> , "having sat down, sitting."	

### VII. *The Objective Inflection of Transitive Verbs.*

§. 95. We now come to one of the most striking peculiarities of the Kanuri language. It is what we term its "objective inflection." This is opposed to the "subjective" inflection of our European languages, which depends merely on a change of the subject, *e.g.* "I know," but "*thou knowest, he knows.*" With this subjective inflection of the Bornu we have now finished. But it remains to notice an inflection which depends on a change of the *object*, and which is consequently restricted to *transitive* verbs. In English the verb "I know" has always the same form, whether its object be *thee*, or *him*, or *you*, or *them*. Not so in Kanuri. Here a change of the object produces as great an alteration in the verb, as a change of the subject. And this alteration of the verb which arises from a change of the object may be suitably termed its *objective inflection*. Such a peculiar inflection, of course, increases the verbal forms to a surprising degree ; for it produces modifications in all the tenses and moods of the different conjugations, and also varies according as the verb terminates in *ṅgiu* or *skin*. It will therefore be necessary to give paradigms of all the preceding subdivisions which affect

the verbal inflection, in order to afford a full illustration of the objective forms of transitive verbs.

As the nature of the objective forms consists in their expressing whether the object of transitive verbs is the first, second, or third person of the personal pronoun in either singular or plural, the question naturally suggests itself, whether these forms are not in reality the common subjective forms, with the addition of abbreviations of the personal pronouns. Such an origin of the objective inflection would be altogether what we might expect: in Hebrew, *e.g.*, where the personal pronoun may follow the verb separately, it also unites itself with it, in the form of an abbreviated suffix. But a mere glance at the objective forms of the verb, and the personal pronouns in Kanuri, must convince us that there is no connection between them.

*The American languages* present a feature much more similar to the one in question. Professor Vater (in his "Mithridates," Vol. III. 2. p. 385), says of the American languages in general: "They express the accusative of pronouns in a manner which is often entirely different from the common pronouns, and which is organically one with the personal forms of the verb itself." He gives instances of languages in the south and north of the continent, *e.g.* the Chili, Abipon, Onichua, Aymara, Karaib, Totonaca, Natick, Greenlandish, which bear out his assertion. But there is one circumstance by which the objective form of the Kanuri is distinguished from that of most American languages. Their *only* inflection generally consists in the pronominal suffixes, either subjective, or subjective and objective; and S. Kleinschmidt *e.g.* expressly states in his *Greenlandish Grammar*, §. 48., that "the Greenlandish knows of *no other* indication of person, but by suffixes, and in the few cases where independent words indicate the person, those words were only rendered independent by the use of suffixes." Now in Kanuri the personal pronouns are words as independent as any nouns; and they maintain their own position as nominatives *before the subjective form*, or as nominatives *and accusatives before*



*the objective form.* And even some of the American languages seem to agree with it in this. At least Professor Vater asserts of the Chilesian language, "that the first, second, and third persons have different *terminations*, when they refer to the accusative of the second, third, or first persons, although the accusative and dative of the pronouns may also be expressed by *independent words*."

Of *European languages*, the *Hungarian* only slightly approaches the Kanuri, by having a distinct objective form for the accusative of the third person; but the ancient *Basque* comes fully up to it. (see Mithridates, Vol. III. p. 321, &c.) There is also at least *one Asiatic language*, the *Grusinian* or *Georgian*, which is distinguished by an objective inflection. Vater gives the following instances: *mikwarchar*, "I love thee;" *mikwars*, "I love him;" *gikwarwar*, "thou lovest me;" *gikwars*, "thou lovest him;" *ukwarchar*, "he loves thee;" *ukwars*, "he loves him;" *wiznob*, "I know him;" *miznobs*, "he knows me;" *iznobs*, "he knows him;" *giznobs*, "he knows thee."

The *objective characteristic* in Kanuri is so entirely interwoven, so organically united with the inflectional terminations and prefixes, that it cannot be easily separated and shown by itself. We therefore here content ourselves with the general observation, that the objective character of the first person is *S*, of the second, *N*, the difference between the singular and plural being indicated by vowels; and that the objective of the third person, has no formal distinction from the subjective. When the subject and the object are the same persons, as, "I, me, thou, thee," &c., there is no objective form for it, this being expressed by the reflective conjugation, (see §. 56.)

#### A. *Objective inflection of Verbs in nigin.*

§. 96. This will be sufficiently illustrated by the four verbs *wûngin*, *mûngin*, *mângin*, and *kâlaigin*.

In all these verbs *the first per. sing.* has only one form for the objective and subjective, except in the bye-form to be noticed at the end of this paragraph, and in the aorist and

future, when the objective is the second person plural; and this identity of the subjective and objective is extended to all the other persons, both in the singular and plural, whenever their object is the third person, as already stated in §. 95.

*The second person singular* expresses the objective first person by changing the subjective termination *nemin* into *semin* for the singular, and into *samin* for the plural; and *the second person plural* by similarly changing *nuwī* into *suwī* and *sawī*.

*The third person singular* forms the objective first person singular by changing *ts* into *s*, and *tš* into *š*; and the objective second person singular by inserting *n* before *ts* and *tš*; in the plural of the objective pronoun the first and second *persons* are similarly expressed; but the *plurality* is indicated by the subjective termination, thus rendering the objective singular identical with the objective plural.

*The third person plural* expresses the objective of the first person singular and plural by changing *ts* into *s*, and of the second person by inserting *n* before *ts*.

*The first person plural* expresses the objective of the second person singular and plural by the insertion of *n*; and sometimes by the change of *ny* into *ntš* or *ntši*.

Those verbs which change their character have in all objective forms the flat mute with the vowel *e*, before the termination.

For the sake of brevity we always omit the perfect tense in the following examples, as it is so easily derived from the first indefinite, by merely dropping the final *n* and lengthening the vowel. So also we only want an illustration of the first and second conjugations, as the third has, of course, no objective forms, and as the fourth is formed by simply prefixing *yite* to the second.

Conjugation I.—Indefinite I.

SUBJECT.	OBJEKT.	wīgā	nīgā	siḡā	andīgā	nandīgā	sandīgā
wu			wāngin	wāngin	wāngin	wāngin	wāngin
ni	wāsemin	wāsemin	wāsemin	wāsemin	wāsemin	wāsemin	wāsemin
si	wāsin	wātsin	wātsin	wāsei	wāsei	wātsin	wātsin
andi		wāngin	wāngin	wāngin	wāngin	wāngin	wāngin
nandi	wāsuwi	wāsuwi	wāsuwi	wāsuwi	wāsuwi	wāsuwi	wāsuwi
sandi	wātsi	wātsi	wātsi	wātsi	wātsi	wātsi	wātsi
wu			mōngin	mōngin	mōngin	mōngin	mōngin
ni	mōsemin	mōsemin	mōsemin	mōsemin	mōsemin	mōsemin	mōsemin
si	mōsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōsei	mōsei	mōtsin	mōtsin
andi		mōngin	mōngin	mōngin	mōngin	mōngin	mōngin
nandi	mōsuwi	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin
sandi	mōsei	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin	mōtsin

<sup>1</sup> and *wātsin*, which seems to be the original, but less frequent, form.

<sup>2</sup> and *mōtsin*.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	wúgā	nígā	šigā	andigā	mandigā	sandigā
wu			māngin	māngin	mādēsamin	māngin	māngin
ní	mādēsamin		māngin	māngin	mādēsamin	māngin	māngin
ší	mādēsín		mādētšín	mādētšín	mādēsai	mādētsei	mādētšín
ándi	mādētšén		mādētšén	mānyen	mādētšén	mādētšén	mānyen
nándi	mādēsawī		mādētsei	mānuwī	mādēsawī	mādētsei	mānuwī
sándi	mādēsai		mādētsei	mādētsei	mādēsai	mādētsei	mādētsei
wu			kālaingín	kālaingín	kālagēsamin	kālaingín	kālaingín
ní	kālagēsamin		kālaingín	kālaingín	kālagēsamin	kālaingín	kālaingín
ší	kālagēsín		kālagētšín	kālagētšín	kālagēsai	kālagētsei	kālagētšín
ándi	kālagētšén		kālagētšén	kālaingén	kālagētšén	kālagētšén	kālaingén
nándi	kālagēsawī		kālaingín	kālaingín	kālagēsawī	kālagētsei	kālaingín
sándi	kālagēsai		kālagētsei	kālagētsei	kālagēsai	kālagētsei	kālagētsei

Indefinite II.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wáqā</i>	<i>náqā</i>	<i>sáqā</i>	<i>andáqā</i>	<i>nandáqā</i>	<i>sandáqā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>wáiqē</i>	<i>wáiqē</i>		<i>wáiqē</i>	<i>wáiqē</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>wásem</i>		<i>wámqem</i>	<i>wámqem</i>	<i>wásām</i>		<i>wámqem</i>
<i>sī</i>	<i>wáse</i>		<i>wántse</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wántse</i>	<i>wásā</i>	<i>wántsā</i>	<i>wántse</i>
<i>ándī</i>			<i>wántse</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wámqē</i>		<i>wántse</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wámqē</i>
<i>námlī</i>	<i>wásū</i>		<i>wánū</i>	<i>wánū</i>	<i>wásau</i>		<i>wánū</i>
<i>sándī</i>	<i>wásā</i>		<i>wántsā</i>	<i>wántsā</i>	<i>wásā</i>	<i>wántsā</i>	<i>wántsā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>móbiqē</i>	<i>móbiqē</i>		<i>móbiqē</i>	<i>móbiqē</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>mólesqem</i>		<i>móllem</i>	<i>móllem</i>	<i>mólesām</i>		<i>móllem</i>
<i>sī</i>	<i>mólese</i>		<i>móltsq</i>	<i>móltsq</i>	<i>mólesā</i>	<i>móltsā</i>	<i>móltsq</i>
<i>ándī</i>			<i>móltsē</i>	<i>mólle</i>		<i>móltsē</i>	<i>mólle</i>
<i>nándī</i>	<i>mólesū</i>		<i>mólū</i>	<i>mólū</i>	<i>mólesau</i>		<i>mólū</i>
<i>sándī</i>	<i>mólesā</i>		<i>móltsā</i>	<i>móltsā</i>	<i>mólesā</i>	<i>móltsā</i>	<i>móltsā</i>

<sup>1</sup> and *wántsā*.

## Indefinite II.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	wīgā	nīgā	šīgā	andīgā	nandīgā	sandīgā
uw		māngē	māngē	māngē	māngē	māngē	māngē
ū	mādesem	māngē	māngē	māngē	māngē	māngē	māngē
š	mādēse	mādēntse	mādēntse	māttse	mādēsā	mādēntse	māttse
āndi		mādēntšē	mādēntšē	mānnjē	mādēsā	mādēntšē	mānnjē
nāndi	mādesū	māngē	māngē	mānnū	mādēsau	māngē	mānnū
sāndi	mādēsā	mādēntse	mādēntse	māttse	mādēsā	mādēntse	māttse
uw		kālangē	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē
ū	kālageseṃ	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē	kālangē
š	kālagese	kālagentse	kālagentse	kāktse	kālagēsā	kālagentse	kāktse
āndi		kālagentšē	kālagentšē	kānnjē	kālagēsā	kālagentšē	kānnjē
nāndi	kālagesū	kālangē	kālangē	kānnū	kālagēsau	kālangē	kānnū
sāndi	kālagesā	kālagentse	kālagentse	kāktse	kālagēsā	kālagentse	kāktse

Aorist.

	OBJECT.	<i>wáqā</i>	<i>náqā</i>	<i>šáqā</i>	<i>andáqā</i>	<i>nandáqā</i>	<i>sandáqā</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>wángoskō</i>	<i>wángoskō</i>	<i>wágoskō</i>		<i>wángēdaskō</i>	<i>wágoskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>wáskam</i>		<i>wágam</i>	<i>wágam</i>	<i>wáskēdam</i>		<i>wágam</i>
<i>šī</i>	<i>wáskonō</i>	<i>wángonō</i>	<i>wángonō</i>	<i>wágonō</i>	<i>wáskēda</i>	<i>wángēda</i>	<i>wágonō</i>
<i>ándī</i>		<i>wángēiyē</i>	<i>wángēiyē</i>	<i>wágeiyē</i>		<i>wángēiyē</i>	<i>wágeiyē</i>
<i>nándī</i>	<i>wáskou</i>		<i>wágu</i>	<i>wágu</i>	<i>wáskēdau</i>		<i>wágu</i>
<i>sándī</i>	<i>wáskēda</i>	<i>wángēda</i>	<i>wángēda</i>	<i>wágēda</i>	<i>wáskēda</i>	<i>wángēda</i>	<i>wágēda</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>mōlēngoskō</i>	<i>mōlēngoskō</i>	<i>mōlgoskō</i>		<i>mōlēngēdaskō</i>	<i>mōlgoskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>mōlēskam</i>		<i>mōlgam</i>	<i>mōlgam</i>	<i>mōlēskēdam</i>		<i>mōlgam</i>
<i>šī</i>	<i>mōlēskonō</i>	<i>mōlēngonō</i>	<i>mōlēngonō</i>	<i>mōlgonō</i>	<i>mōlēskēda</i>	<i>mōlēngēda</i>	<i>mōlgonō</i>
<i>ándī</i>		<i>mōlēngēiyē</i>	<i>mōlēngēiyē</i>	<i>mōlgeiyē</i>		<i>mōlēngēiyē</i>	<i>mōlgeiyē</i>
<i>nándī</i>	<i>mōlēskou</i>		<i>mōlgu</i>	<i>mōlgu</i>	<i>mōlēskēdau</i>		<i>mōlgu</i>
<i>sándī</i>	<i>mōlēskēda</i>	<i>mōlēngēda</i>	<i>mōlēngēda</i>	<i>mōlēda</i>	<i>mōlēskēda</i>	<i>mōlēngēda</i>	<i>mōlēda</i>

## Aorist.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>nīgā</i>	<i>nīgā</i>	<i>śīgā</i>	<i>amīgā</i>	<i>nandīgā</i>	<i>sandīgā</i>
<i>ru</i>		<i>mādeṅgoskō</i>	<i>mādgoskō</i>	<i>mādgoskō</i>		<i>mādeṅgēdaskō</i>	<i>mādgoskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>m ādeska</i>		<i>mādgam</i>	<i>mādgam</i>	<i>mādeskēdam</i>		<i>mādgam</i>
<i>śī</i>	<i>mādeskonō</i>	<i>mādeṅgonō</i>	<i>mādgonō</i>	<i>mādgonō</i>	<i>mādeskēda</i>	<i>mādeṅgēda</i>	<i>mādgonō</i>
<i>āndī</i>		<i>mādeṅgeiyē</i>	<i>mādgeiyē</i>	<i>mādgeiyē</i>		<i>mādeṅgeiyē</i>	<i>mādgeiyē</i>
<i>nāndī</i>	<i>mādeskou</i>		<i>mādgou</i>	<i>mādgou</i>	<i>mādeskēdau</i>		<i>mādgou</i>
<i>sāndī</i>	<i>mādeskēda</i>	<i>mādeṅgēda</i>	<i>mādgēda</i>	<i>mādgēda</i>	<i>mādeskēda</i>	<i>mādeṅgēda</i>	<i>mādgēda</i>
<i>ru</i>		<i>kālāgeṅgoskō</i>	<i>kālaggoskō</i>	<i>kālaggoskō</i>		<i>kālāgeṅgēdaskō</i>	<i>kālaggoskō</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>kālāgeskam</i>		<i>kālaggam</i>	<i>kālaggam</i>	<i>kālāgeskēdam</i>		<i>kālaggam</i>
<i>śī</i>	<i>kālāgeskonō</i>	<i>kālāgeṅgonō</i>	<i>kālaggonō</i>	<i>kālaggonō</i>	<i>kālāgeskēda</i>	<i>kālāgeṅgēda</i>	<i>kālaggonō</i>
<i>āndī</i>		<i>kālāgeṅgeiyē</i>	<i>kālaggeiyē</i>	<i>kālaggeiyē</i>		<i>kālāgeṅgeiyē</i>	<i>kālaggeiyē</i>
<i>nāndī</i>	<i>kālāgeskou</i>		<i>kālaggou</i>	<i>kālaggou</i>	<i>kālāgeskēdau</i>		<i>kālaggou</i>
<i>sāndī</i>	<i>kālāgeskēda</i>	<i>kālāgeṅgēda</i>	<i>kālaggēda</i>	<i>kālaggēda</i>	<i>kālāgeskēda</i>	<i>kālāgeṅgēda</i>	<i>kālaggēda</i>



Future.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wáqā</i>	<i>náqā</i>	<i>śáqā</i>	<i>andáqā</i>	<i>nandáqā</i>	<i>sandáqā</i>
<i>ru</i>		<i>wántsoškō</i>	<i>wántsoškō</i>	<i>wántsoškō</i>		<i>wántśṣṭadaskō</i>	<i>wántsoškō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>wáśam</i>		<i>wántsam</i>	<i>wántsam</i>	<i>wáśadam</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wántsam</i>
<i>śí</i>	<i>wáśonō</i>		<i>wántsonō</i>	<i>wántsonō</i>	<i>wáśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wántsonō</i>
<i>ánda</i>		<i>wántseiyē</i>	<i>wántseiyē</i>	<i>wántseiyē</i>		<i>wántseiyē</i>	<i>wántseiyē</i>
<i>wánda</i>	<i>wáśou</i>		<i>wántsou</i>	<i>wántsou</i>	<i>wáśadau</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wántsou</i>
<i>sánda</i>	<i>wáśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wántśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wántśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wáśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wántśāda</i>
<i>ru</i>		<i>móltsoškō</i>	<i>móltsoškō</i>	<i>móltsoškō</i>		<i>móltśṣṭadaskō</i>	<i>móltsoškō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>mólesam</i>		<i>móltsam</i>	<i>móltsam</i>	<i>mólesadam</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>móltsam</i>
<i>śí</i>	<i>mólesonō</i>		<i>móltsonō</i>	<i>móltsonō</i>	<i>mólesāda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>móltsonō</i>
<i>ánda</i>		<i>móltseiyē</i>	<i>móltseiyē</i>	<i>móltseiyē</i>		<i>móltseiyē</i>	<i>móltseiyē</i>
<i>wánda</i>	<i>mólesou</i>		<i>móltsou</i>	<i>móltsou</i>	<i>mólesadau</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>móltsou</i>
<i>sánda</i>	<i>mólesāda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>móltśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>móltśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>mólesāda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>móltśāda</i> <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> All these terminations in which ś is immediately followed by a, have also two other forms, viz. one with śia, which is doubtless the original one, and which caused the change of s into ś according to §. 18, and one with śi, which is nothing but a contraction of i + a into e, just as in Sanskrit a + i are generally contracted into e.

## Future.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>u'égá</i>	<i>nígí</i>	<i>šígá</i>	<i>andígá</i>	<i>nandígá</i>	<i>sandígá</i>
<i>uu</i>			<i>máđentsoskō</i>	<i>máttoskō</i>		<i>máđentšáaskō</i>	<i>máttoskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>máđesam</i>		<i>máttsam</i>	<i>máttsam</i>	<i>máđesadam</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>máttsam</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>máđesonō</i>		<i>máđentsonō</i>	<i>máttsonō</i>	<i>máđesáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>máđentšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>máttsonō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>máđentseiyē</i>	<i>máttseiyē</i>		<i>máđentseiyē</i>	<i>máttseiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>máđesou</i>		<i>máttsou</i>	<i>máttsou</i>	<i>máđesadou</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>máttsou</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>máđesáda</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>máđentšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>máttšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>máđesáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>máđentšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>máttšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>uu</i>			<i>kálagentsoskō</i>	<i>kálaktoskō</i>		<i>kálagentšáaskō</i>	<i>kálaktoskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>kálagesam</i>		<i>kálaktsam</i>	<i>kálaktsam</i>	<i>kálagesádam</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>kálaktsam</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>kálagesonō</i>		<i>kálagentsonō</i>	<i>kálaktsonō</i>	<i>kálagesáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>kálagentšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>kálaktsonō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>kálagentseiyē</i>	<i>kálaktseiyē</i>		<i>kálagentseiyē</i>	<i>kálaktseiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>kálagesou</i>		<i>kálaktsou</i>	<i>kálaktsou</i>	<i>kálagesadou</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>kálaktsou</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>kálagesáda</i>		<i>kálagentšáda</i>	<i>kálaktšáda</i>	<i>kálagesáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>kálagentšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>kálaktšáda</i> <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Note on p. 109.

The bye-form of the 1st per. sing. mentioned in §. 54 distinguishes the objective 2d and 3d per. sing. and pl. in the following manner.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>nīgā</i>	<i>šīgā</i>	<i>nandīgā</i>	<i>sandīgā</i>
<i>cu</i>	<i>wāntšeskin,</i>	<i>wāneskin</i>	<i>wāneskin</i>	<i>wāntsaskin,</i>	<i>wāneskin</i>
<i>cu</i>	<i>mólentšeskin</i>	<i>mólleskin</i>	<i>mólleskin</i>	<i>mólentsaskin</i>	<i>mólleskin</i>
<i>cu</i>	<i>máđentšeskin</i>	<i>māneskin</i>	<i>māneskin</i>	<i>máđentsaskin</i>	<i>māneskin</i>
<i>cu</i>	<i>kálágentšeskin</i>	<i>kálāneskin</i>	<i>kálāneskin</i>	<i>kálágentšaskin</i>	<i>kálāneskin</i>

Conjugation II.

§. 97. It may suffice, to illustrate this merely by the two verbs, *wāigin* and *nāgin*, which, with the aid of §. 96, will render it easy, to inflect the other verbs in the same manner.

## Indefinite I.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wīgā</i>	<i>nīgā</i>	<i>siḡā</i>	<i>andīgā</i>	<i>nandīgā</i>	<i>sandīgā</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>wūntseḡeskin</i>	<i>wūḡeskin</i>	<i>wūḡeskin</i>	<i>wūḡeskin</i>	<i>wūntseḡeskin</i>	<i>wūḡeskin</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>wūseḡemin</i>	<i>wūntseḡemin</i>	<i>wūḡemin</i>	<i>wūḡemin</i>	<i>wūseḡemin</i>	<i>wūntseḡemin</i>	<i>wūḡemin</i>
<i>si</i>	<i>wūseḡin</i>	<i>wūntseḡin</i>	<i>wūḡin</i>	<i>wūḡin</i>	<i>wūseḡin</i>	<i>wūntseḡin</i>	<i>wūḡin</i>
<i>āndī</i>		<i>wūntseḡen</i>	<i>wūḡen</i>	<i>wūḡen</i>	<i>wūntseḡen</i>	<i>wūntseḡen</i>	<i>wūḡen</i>
<i>nāndī</i>	<i>wūseḡawī</i>	<i>wūntseḡawī</i>	<i>wūḡawī</i>	<i>wūḡawī</i>	<i>wūseḡawī</i>	<i>wūntseḡawī</i>	<i>wūḡawī</i>
<i>sāndī</i>	<i>wūseḡei</i>	<i>wūntseḡei</i>	<i>wūḡei</i>	<i>wūḡei</i>	<i>wūseḡei</i>	<i>wūntseḡei</i>	<i>wūḡei</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>mādentseḡeskin</i>	<i>mādgeskin</i>	<i>mādgeskin</i>	<i>mādentseḡeskin</i>	<i>mādentseḡeskin</i>	<i>mādgeskin</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>mādesḡemin</i>	<i>mādentseḡemin</i>	<i>mādemin</i>	<i>mādemin</i>	<i>mādesḡemin</i>	<i>mādentseḡemin</i>	<i>mādemin</i>
<i>si</i>	<i>mādesḡin</i>	<i>mādentseḡin</i>	<i>mādseḡin</i>	<i>mādseḡin</i>	<i>mādesḡin</i>	<i>mādentseḡin</i>	<i>mādseḡin</i>
<i>āndī</i>		<i>mādentseḡen</i>	<i>mādḡen</i>	<i>mādḡen</i>	<i>mādentseḡen</i>	<i>mādentseḡen</i>	<i>mādḡen</i>
<i>nāndī</i>	<i>mādesḡawī</i>	<i>mādentseḡawī</i>	<i>mādawī</i>	<i>mādawī</i>	<i>mādesḡawī</i>	<i>mādentseḡawī</i>	<i>mādawī</i>
<i>sāndī</i>	<i>mādesḡei</i>	<i>mādentseḡei</i>	<i>mādseḡei</i>	<i>mādseḡei</i>	<i>mādesḡei</i>	<i>mādentseḡei</i>	<i>mādseḡei</i>

Indefinite II.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	wúgū	níqā	šigā	andigā	nandigā	sandigā
wi			wántsegeskē	wúgeskē		wántsāgaskē	wúgeskē
ní	wúsegem		wúgem	wúgem	wúsaġam		wúgem
ší	wúsege		wántsege	wántsege	wútsāga	wántsāga	wútsēge
ándi			wántseġē	wúġē	wúsaġau	wántseġē	wúġē
nándi	wúseġū		wúġū	wúġū	wútsāga	wántsāga	wúġū
sándi	wútsāga		wútsāga	wútsāga		wántsāga	wútsāga
wu	wúgā & wúwō	wúgā & wúwō	níqā & nírō	šigā & šírō	andigā & -rō	nandigā & -rō	sandigā & -rō
ní	mádesegem	mádesegeskē	mádentsegeskē	mádeskē	mádesaġam	mádentšāgaskē	mádeskē
ší	mádesege	mádesegē	mádesegē	mádesge	mádesāga	mádentšāga	mádesge
ándi			mádentseġē	mádesġē		mádentseġē	mádesġē
nándi	mádesegū			mádesū	mádesaġau	mádentšāga	mádesū
sándi	mádesaga		mádentšāga	mátsāga	mádesāga	mádentšāga	mátsāga

\*  
c

## Aorist.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	wáǵá & wírō	níǵá & nírō	šǵá & šírō	andǵá & -rō	nandǵá & -rō	sandǵá & -rō
wu		wáǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>	wáǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>	wáǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>	wáǵǵǵeskō	wáǵǵǵeskō	wáǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>
ní	wúskǵeu	wúskǵeu	wúskǵeu	wúskǵeu	wúskǵeu	wúskǵeu	wúskǵeu
šǵ	wúskǵǵunō	wúskǵǵunō	wúskǵǵunō	wúskǵǵunō	wúskǵǵa	wúskǵǵa	wúskǵǵunō
ándi		wúǵǵǵē	wúǵǵǵē	wúǵǵǵē	wúǵǵǵē	wúǵǵǵē	wúǵǵǵē
nándi	wúskǵǵū	wúskǵǵū	wúskǵǵū	wúskǵǵū	wúskǵǵau	wúskǵǵū	wúskǵǵū
sándi	wúskǵǵǵa	wúskǵǵǵa	wúskǵǵǵa	wúskǵǵǵa	wúskǵǵǵa	wúskǵǵǵa	wúskǵǵǵa
wu		máǵǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>	máǵǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>	máǵǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>	máǵǵǵǵeskō	máǵǵǵǵeskō	máǵǵǵǵeskō <sup>1</sup>
ní	máǵǵǵǵǵem	máǵǵǵǵǵem	máǵǵǵǵǵem	máǵǵǵǵǵem	máǵǵǵǵǵem	máǵǵǵǵǵem	máǵǵǵǵǵem
šǵ	máǵǵǵǵǵunō	máǵǵǵǵǵunō	máǵǵǵǵǵunō	máǵǵǵǵǵunō	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵunō
ándi		máǵǵǵǵǵē	máǵǵǵǵǵē	máǵǵǵǵǵē	máǵǵǵǵǵē	máǵǵǵǵǵē	máǵǵǵǵǵē
nándi	máǵǵǵǵǵū	máǵǵǵǵǵū	máǵǵǵǵǵū	máǵǵǵǵǵū	máǵǵǵǵǵau	máǵǵǵǵǵū	máǵǵǵǵǵū
sándi	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa	máǵǵǵǵǵǵa

<sup>1</sup> The terminational *e* of the 1st per. sing. in the Aorist and Future is often changed into *u*, probably by the influence of the following *o*; and the terminational *u* of the 3d per. sing. arose in the same way, and is still sometimes sounded-like *e*.

Future.

SUBJECT	OBJECT.	<i>wéqā &amp; wúwō</i>	<i>nígā &amp; nírō</i>	<i>šīgā &amp; šírō</i>	<i>andīgā &amp; -rō</i>	<i>nandīgā &amp; -rō</i>	<i>sandīgā &amp; -rō</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>wántšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>wántšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>wántšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>wántšagaskō</i>	<i>wántšagaskō</i>	<i>wántšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>wúšigem</i>	<i>wúšigem</i>	<i>wúšigem</i>	<i>wúšigem</i>	<i>wúšagām</i>	<i>wúšagām</i>	<i>wúšigem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúšigunō</i>	<i>wúšigunō</i>	<i>wúšigunō</i>	<i>wúšigunō</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšigunō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wúšigē</i>	<i>wúšigē</i>	<i>wúšigē</i>	<i>wúšigē</i>	<i>wúšigē</i>	<i>wúšigē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúšigū</i>	<i>wúšigū</i>	<i>wúšigū</i>	<i>wúšigū</i>	<i>wúšagau</i>	<i>wúšagau</i>	<i>wúšigū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>	<i>wúšāga</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>máđentšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>máđentšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>máđentšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>máđentšegaskō</i>	<i>máđentšegaskō</i>	<i>máđentšigeskō<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>máđešigem</i>	<i>máđešigem</i>	<i>máđešigem</i>	<i>máđešigem</i>	<i>máđešagām</i>	<i>máđešagām</i>	<i>máđešigem</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>máđešigunō</i>	<i>máđešigunō</i>	<i>máđešigunō</i>	<i>máđešigunō</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešigunō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>máđentšigē</i>	<i>máđentšigē</i>	<i>máđentšigē</i>	<i>máđentšigē</i>	<i>máđentšigē</i>	<i>máđentšigē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>máđešigū</i>	<i>máđešigū</i>	<i>máđešigū</i>	<i>máđešigū</i>	<i>máđešagau</i>	<i>máđešagau</i>	<i>máđešigū</i>
<i>sándi</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>	<i>máđešāga</i>

<sup>1</sup> See note on p. 114.

*Imperative Mood.*

§. 98. The first person plural, from the nature of the case<sup>1</sup> can only have the third person for its object; and consequently has only a subjective form, so that we can omit it here altogether. The second person has for its object either the first or the third person.

## Conjugation I.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.			
	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>šígā &amp; sandígā.</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>wúṣeṇé</i>	<i>wúṣāné</i>	<i>wúné</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>wúṣeṇógō</i>	<i>wúṣānógō</i>	<i>wúnógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>móḷeṣeṇé</i>	<i>móḷeṣāné</i>	<i>móllé</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>móḷeṣeṇógō</i>	<i>móḷeṣānógō</i>	<i>móllógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>máḍeṣeṇé</i>	<i>máḍeṣāné</i>	<i>mánné</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>máḍeṣeṇógō</i>	<i>máḍeṣānógō</i>	<i>mánnógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>káḷageṣeṇé</i>	<i>káḷageṣāné</i>	<i>káḷainé</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>káḷageṣeṇógō</i>	<i>káḷageṣānógō</i>	<i>káḷainógō</i>	

## Conjugation II.

	<i>wúrō</i>	<i>andírō</i>	<i>šírō &amp; sandírō.</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>wúṣegeṇé</i>	<i>wúṣagāné</i>	<i>wúḡeṇé</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>wúṣegeṇógō</i>	<i>wúṣagānógō</i>	<i>wúḡeṇógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>móḷeṣegeṇé</i>	<i>móḷeṣagāné</i>	<i>móḷgeṇé<sup>1</sup></i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>móḷeṣegeṇógō</i>	<i>móḷeṣagānógō</i>	<i>móḷgeṇógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>máḍeṣegeṇé</i>	<i>máḍeṣagāné</i>	<i>máḍgeṇé</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>máḍeṣegeṇógō</i>	<i>máḍeṣagānógō</i>	<i>máḍgeṇógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>káḷageṣegeṇé</i>	<i>káḷageṣagāné</i>	<i>káḷaggeṇé</i>	
<i>náandi</i>	<i>káḷageṣegeṇógō</i>	<i>káḷageṣagānógō</i>	<i>káḷaggeṇógō</i>	

<sup>1</sup>And *móḷeḡeṇé*, &c.



*Negative Mood.*

§. 99. This is derived so regularly from the second indefinite tense, that it will be sufficiently illustrated by the verb *wúngin*.

Conjugation I—Present Tense.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>naulígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>wúntsęganí</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wúņęganí</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wúntsasęganí</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúšemmi</i>			<i>wúņęmmí</i>	<i>wúšāmmí</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúšęní</i>	<i>wúntsęní</i>	<i>wútsęní</i>	<i>wúšāní</i>	<i>wúntsāní</i>	
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wúntsęndé</i>	<i>wúnyęndé</i>		<i>wúntsęndé</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúšāwí</i>		<i>wúwāwí</i>	<i>wúšāwí</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúšāní</i>	<i>wúntsāní</i>	<i>wútsāní</i>	<i>wúšāní</i>	<i>wúntsāní</i>	

Future Tense.

<i>wu</i>		<i>wúntsasęganí</i>	<i>wútsasęganí</i>		<i>wúntsędasęganí</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúšāmmí</i>		<i>wútsāmmí</i>	<i>wúšādāmmí</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúšānní</i>	<i>wúnstānní</i>	<i>wútsānní</i>	<i>wúšādānní</i>	<i>wúntsādānní</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wúntseiyęndé</i>	<i>wútsęiyęndé</i>		<i>wúntseiyęndé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúšāwí</i>		<i>wútsāwí</i>	<i>wúšādāwí</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúšādāní</i>	<i>wúntsādāní</i>	<i>wútsādāní</i>	<i>wúšādāní</i>	<i>wúntsādāní</i>

Conjugation II—Present Tense.

	<i>wúrō</i>	<i>nírō</i>	<i>šírō, sandírō</i>	<i>andírō</i>	<i>nandírō</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>wúntseęęęganí</i>	<i>wúęęęganí</i>		<i>wúntsasasęganí</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúšęęęmmí</i>		<i>wúęęęmmí</i>	<i>wúšasęęęmmí</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúšęęęní</i>	<i>wúntseęęęní</i>	<i>wútsęęęęní</i>	<i>wúšasęęęní</i>	<i>wúntsasęęęní</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wúntseęęęndé</i>	<i>wúęęęndé</i>		<i>wúntseęęęndé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúšęęęwí</i>		<i>wúęęęwí</i>	<i>wúšasęęęwí</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúšasęęęní</i>	<i>wúntsasęęęní</i>	<i>wútsasęęęní</i>	<i>wúšasęęęní</i>	<i>wúntsasęęęní</i>

<sup>1</sup> And the common form *wúngani*.

## Future Tense.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandigā</i>	<i>andigā</i>	<i>nandigā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>wúntšigesgāni</i>	<i>wútsigesgāni</i>		<i>wúntšagasgāni</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúšigemmi</i>			<i>wútsigemmi</i>	<i>wúšagāmmi</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúšigeni</i>	<i>wúntšigeni</i>	<i>wútsigeni</i>	<i>wúšagāni</i>		<i>wúntšagāni</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wúntšigendé</i>	<i>wútsigendé</i>			<i>wúntšigendé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúšigūwi</i>		<i>wútsigūwi</i>	<i>wúšagāwi</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúšagāni</i>	<i>wúntšagāni</i>	<i>wútsagāni</i>	<i>wúšagāni</i>		<i>wúntšagāni</i>

## Conjunctive Mood.

§. 100. This being derived so regularly from the aorist and perfect tenses, it will be sufficient to illustrate it by the verb *wúngin*.

## Past Conjunctive.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandigā</i>	<i>andigā</i>	<i>nandigā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>wūngasgányā</i>	<i>wūngasgányā</i>		<i>wūngedasgányā</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wūškámīā</i>			<i>wūngámīā</i>	<i>wūškédámīā</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>wūškányā</i>	<i>wūngányā</i>	<i>wūngányā</i>	<i>wūškédányā</i>		<i>wūngédányā</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wūngēiéndēā</i>	<i>wūngēiéndēā</i>			<i>wūngēiéndēā</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wūškōúwīā</i>		<i>wūngōúwīā</i>	<i>wūškédōúwīā</i> <sup>1</sup>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wūškédányā</i>	<i>wūngédányā</i>	<i>wūngédányā</i>	<i>wūškédányā</i>		<i>wūngédányā</i>

## Future Conjunctive.

<i>wu</i>		<i>wúntšeskīā</i>	<i>wúntšeskīā</i> <sup>2</sup>			<i>wúntšaskīā</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>ni</i>	<i>wúšemīā</i>		<i>wúntšemīā</i>	<i>wúšamīā</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>wúšīā</i>	<i>wúntšīā</i>	<i>wúntšīā</i>	<i>wúšēīā</i>		<i>wúntšēīā</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>wúntšēīā</i>	<i>wúntšēīā</i>			<i>wúntšēīā</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>wúšuwīā</i>		<i>wúntšuwīā</i>	<i>wúšawīā</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>wúšēīā</i>	<i>wúntšēīā</i>	<i>wúntšēīā</i>	<i>wúšēīā</i>		<i>wúntšēīā</i>

<sup>1</sup> And *wūškédámīā*.<sup>2</sup> And *wūngīā*.

Participial Mood.  
 §. 101. This will be illustrated by the verbs *wāngin* and *māngin*.

Conjugation I.

SUBJECT.	<i>wāgā</i>	<i>nāgā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandigā</i>	<i>andigā</i>	<i>nandigā</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>wāntseḡana</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>wāneḡana</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>wāntseḡana</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>nī</i>	<i>wāseḡama</i>		<i>wāneḡama</i>	<i>wāseḡama</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>wāseḡana</i>	<i>wāntseḡa</i>	<i>wāntseḡa</i>	<i>wāseḡana</i>	<i>wāntseḡa</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>āndi</i>		<i>wāntseḡa</i>	<i>wānyeḡa</i>		<i>wāntseḡa</i>
<i>wāndi</i>	<i>wāseḡawa</i>		<i>wānūwa</i>	<i>wāseḡawa</i>	
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>wāseḡana</i>	<i>wāntseḡa</i>	<i>wāntseḡa</i>	<i>wāseḡana</i>	<i>wāntseḡa</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>mādeḡseḡana</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>māneḡana</i> <sup>3</sup>		<i>mādeḡseḡana</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>nī</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡama</i>		<i>māneḡama</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡama</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡana</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡa</i>	<i>māntseḡa</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡana</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡa</i>
<i>āndi</i>		<i>mādeḡseḡa</i>	<i>mānyeḡa</i>		<i>mādeḡseḡa</i>
<i>nāndi</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡawa</i>		<i>mānūwa</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡawa</i>	
<i>sāndi</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡana</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡa</i>	<i>māntseḡa</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡana</i>	<i>mādeḡseḡa</i>

<sup>1</sup> Also *wāngana*.

<sup>2</sup> And *wāntseḡa*.

<sup>3</sup> And *māngana*.

## Conjugation II.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúró</i>	<i>nírò</i>	<i>šírò &amp; sandírò</i>	<i>andírò</i>	<i>nandírò</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>wántsegešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>		<i>wántsağasgana</i>
<i>nì</i>	<i>wúsegešgana</i>		<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wúsağamma</i>	
<i>šì</i>	<i>wúsegešgana</i>	<i>wántsegešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wúsağāna</i>	<i>wántsağāna</i>
<i>ándì</i>	<i>wúsegešgana</i>	<i>wántsegešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wúsağāna</i>	<i>wántsegešgana</i>
<i>nándì</i>	<i>wúsağāna</i>	<i>wántsağāna</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wágešgana</i>	<i>wúsağāna</i>	<i>wántsağāna</i>
<i>sándì</i>						
<i>wu</i>			<i>mádešgešgana</i>	<i>mádešgana</i>		<i>mádešsağasgana</i>
<i>nì</i>	<i>mádešgešgana</i>		<i>mádešgana</i>	<i>mádešgana</i>	<i>mádešsağamma</i>	
<i>šì</i>	<i>mádešgešgana</i>	<i>mádešgešgana</i>	<i>mádešgana</i>	<i>mádešgana</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>
<i>ándì</i>	<i>mádešgešgana</i>	<i>mádešgešgana</i>	<i>mádešgana</i>	<i>mádešgana</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsegešgana</i>
<i>nándì</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>	<i>mádešsağāna</i>
<i>sándì</i>						

*B. Objective Inflection of Verbs in skin.*

1. *Verbs in skin not beginning with y.*

§. 102. The objective character of these verbs, corresponds, on the whole, with that of verbs in *ngin*; but it always takes its place *before* the verbal root. Its minor differences may be observed from the following examples.

*Indicative Mood.*

Here we only illustrate the first indefinite, the aorist, and the future tenses, as the others can be easily derived from these.

Indefinite I.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.					
		<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsédęskin</i>	<i>dįskin</i>		<i>ntsádeşkin</i>
<i>nı</i>	<i>şédęmın</i>			<i>dımın</i>	<i>sádeęmın</i>	
<i>şı</i>	<i>şédın</i>	<i>ntsédın</i>		<i>tsédın</i>	<i>sáđın</i>	<i>ntsáđın</i>
<i>ándı</i>		<i>ntsédıyen</i>		<i>dıyen*</i>		<i>ntsáđıyen</i>
<i>nándı</i>	<i>şéduwı</i>			<i>dıwı</i>	<i>sáduwı</i>	
<i>sándı</i>	<i>sáđın</i>	<i>tsáđın</i>		<i>tsáđın</i>	<i>sáđın</i>	<i>ntsáđın</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsúrúşkin</i>		<i>rúşkin</i>		<i>ntsárúşkin</i>
<i>nı</i>	<i>súrúmın</i>			<i>rúmın</i>	<i>sárúmın</i>	
<i>şı</i>	<i>súrui</i>	<i>ntsúrui</i>		<i>tsúrui</i>	<i>sárui</i>	<i>ntsárui</i>
<i>ándı</i>		<i>ntsúruiyen</i>		<i>ruıyen</i>		<i>ntsáruiyen</i>
<i>nándı</i>	<i>súruiwı</i>			<i>rúwı</i>	<i>sáruiwı</i>	
<i>sándı</i>	<i>sárui</i>	<i>ntsárui</i>		<i>tsárui</i>	<i>sárui</i>	<i>ntsárui</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsémáşkin</i>		<i>máşkin</i>		<i>ntsámáşkin</i>
<i>nı</i>	<i>şémágeęmın</i>			<i>mágeęmın</i>	<i>sámágeęmın</i>	
<i>şı</i>	<i>şémágin</i>	<i>ntsémágin</i>		<i>tsémágin</i>	<i>sámágin</i>	<i>ntsámágin</i>
<i>ándı</i>		<i>ntsémágeęn</i>		<i>mágeęn</i>		<i>ntsémágeęn</i>
<i>nándı</i>	<i>şémáguwı</i>			<i>máguwı</i>	<i>sámáguwı</i>	
<i>sándı</i>	<i>sámágin</i>	<i>ntsámágin</i>		<i>tsámágin</i>	<i>sámágin</i>	<i>ntsámágin</i>

\* Sometimes *en* of the 1st per. pl. may be *long*, but generally a final *n* prefers a *short* vowel before it.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>w'igā</i>	<i>n'igā</i>	<i>š'igā</i> & <i>sand'igā</i>	<i>and'igā</i>	<i>nand'igā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntselādēskin</i>	<i>ladēskin</i>		<i>ntsaladēskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>selādēmin</i>			<i>ladēmin</i>	<i>salādēmin</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>selād'in</i>	<i>ntselād'in</i>		<i>tšelād'in</i>	<i>salād'in</i>	<i>ntsalād'in</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntselādēn</i>		<i>lādēn</i>		<i>ntselādēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>selād'uwī</i>			<i>lād'uwī</i>	<i>salād'uwī</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>salād'in</i>	<i>ntsalād'in</i>		<i>tsalād'in</i>	<i>salād'in</i>	<i>ntsalād'in</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsegārēskin</i>	<i>kārēskin</i>			<i>ntsagārēskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>segārēmin</i>		<i>kārēmin</i>	<i>sagārēmin</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>segār'in</i>	<i>ntsegār'in</i>	<i>tsegār'in</i>	<i>sagār'in</i>		<i>ntsagār'in</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsegārēn</i>	<i>kārēn</i>			<i>ntsagārēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>segār'uwī</i>		<i>kār'uwī</i>	<i>sagār'uwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sagār'in</i>	<i>ntsagār'in</i>	<i>tsagār'in</i>	<i>sagār'in</i>		<i>ntsagār'in</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsúgōrēskin</i>	<i>kōrēskin</i>			<i>ntsógōrēskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>súgōrēmin</i>		<i>kōrēmin</i>	<i>sógōrēmin</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>súgōr'in</i>	<i>ntsúgōr'in</i>	<i>tsúgōr'in</i>	<i>sógōr'in</i>		<i>ntsógōr'in</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsúgōrēn</i>	<i>kōrēn</i>			<i>ntsógōrēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>súgōr'uwī</i>		<i>kōr'uwī</i>	<i>sógōr'uwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sógōr'in</i>	<i>ntsógōr'in</i>	<i>tsógōr'in</i>	<i>sógōr'in</i>		<i>ntsógōr'in</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntšebertēskin</i>	<i>pertēskin</i>			<i>ntšabertēskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šebertēmin</i>		<i>pertēmin</i>	<i>šabertēmin</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>šebert'in</i>	<i>ntšebert'in</i>	<i>tšebert'in</i>	<i>šabert'in</i>		<i>ntšabert'in</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšebertēn</i>	<i>pertēn</i>			<i>ntšabertēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šebert'uwī</i>		<i>pert'uwī</i>	<i>šabert'uwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šabert'in</i>	<i>ntšabert'in</i>	<i>tsabert'in</i>	<i>šabert'in</i>		<i>ntšabert'in</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntšergērēskin</i>	<i>gērēskin</i>			<i>ntšargērēskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šergērēmin</i>		<i>gērēmin</i>	<i>šargērēmin</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>šergēr'in</i>	<i>ntšergēr'in</i>	<i>tšergēr'in</i>	<i>šargēr'in</i>		<i>ntšargēr'in</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšergērēn</i>	<i>gērēn</i>			<i>ntšergērēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šergēr'uwī</i>		<i>gēr'uwī</i>	<i>šargēr'uwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šargēr'in</i>	<i>ntšargēr'in</i>	<i>tsargēr'in</i>	<i>šargēr'in</i>		<i>ntšargēr'in</i>

Aorist.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>š́tgā &amp; sandítgā</i>	<i>andítgā</i>	<i>nandítgā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngídískō</i>	<i>kídískō</i>		<i>ngédéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skídēm</i>			<i>kídēm</i>	<i>skédēm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skídō</i>		<i>ngídō</i>	<i>kídō</i>	<i>skédō</i>	<i>ngédō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngídíyē</i>	<i>kídíyē</i>		<i>ngúdíyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skídū</i>			<i>kídū</i>	<i>skédū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skédō</i>		<i>ngédō</i>	<i>kédō</i>	<i>skédō</i>	<i>ngédō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngíruskō</i>	<i>kíruskō</i>		<i>ngéruskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skírurū</i>			<i>kírurū</i>	<i>skérurū</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skírū</i>		<i>ngírū</i>	<i>kírū</i>	<i>skérū</i>	<i>ngérū</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngírúiyē</i>	<i>kírúiyē</i>		<i>ngírúiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skírū</i>			<i>kírū</i>	<i>skérū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skérū</i>		<i>ngérū</i>	<i>kérū</i>	<i>skérū</i>	<i>ngérū</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngímaskō</i>	<i>kímaskō</i>		<i>ngémaskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skímāgēm</i>			<i>kímāgēm</i>	<i>skémāgēm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skímogō</i>		<i>ngímogō</i>	<i>kímogō</i>	<i>skémogō</i>	<i>ngémogō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngímagē</i>	<i>kímagē</i>		<i>ngímagē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skímogū</i>			<i>kímogū</i>	<i>skémogū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skémogō</i>		<i>ngémogō</i>	<i>kémogō</i>	<i>skémogō</i>	<i>ngémogō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngíládéskō</i>	<i>kíládéskō</i>		<i>ngeládéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skíládēm</i>			<i>kíládēm</i>	<i>skeládēm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skílálō</i>		<i>ngíládō</i>	<i>kíládō</i>	<i>skelálō</i>	<i>ngeládō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngíládē</i>	<i>kíládē</i>		<i>ngiládē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skíládū</i>			<i>kíládū</i>	<i>skeládū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skeládō</i>		<i>ngeládō</i>	<i>keládō</i>	<i>skeládō</i>	<i>ngeládō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngigáreskō</i>	<i>kigáreskō</i>		<i>ngegáreskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skigárem</i>			<i>kigárem</i>	<i>skegárem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skigárō</i>		<i>ngigárō</i>	<i>kigárō</i>	<i>skegárō</i>	<i>ngegárō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngigárē</i>	<i>kigárē</i>		<i>ngigárē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skigárū</i>			<i>kigárū</i>	<i>skegárū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skegárō</i>		<i>ngegárō</i>	<i>kegárō</i>	<i>skegárō</i>	<i>ngegárō</i>

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandigā</i>	<i>andigā</i>	<i>nandigā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ńígígōręskō</i>	<i>kígōręskō</i>		<i>ńégégōręskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skígōręm</i>			<i>kígōręm</i>	<i>skégōręm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skígōrō</i>		<i>ńígígōrō</i>	<i>kígōrō</i>	<i>skégōrō</i>	<i>ńégégōrō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ńígígōrē</i>	<i>kígōrē</i>		<i>ńígígōrē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skígōrū</i>			<i>kígōrū</i>	<i>skégōrū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skégōrō</i>		<i>ńégégōrō</i>	<i>kégōrō</i>	<i>skégōrō</i>	<i>ńégégōrō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ńígibertęskō</i>	<i>kibertęskō</i>		<i>ńębertęskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skibertęm</i>			<i>kibertęm</i>	<i>skębertęm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skibertō</i>		<i>ńígibertō</i>	<i>kibertō</i>	<i>skębertō</i>	<i>ńębertō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ńígibertē</i>	<i>kibertē</i>		<i>ńębertē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skibertū</i>			<i>kibertū</i>	<i>skębertū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skębertō</i>		<i>ńębertō</i>	<i>kębertō</i>	<i>skębertō</i>	<i>ńębertō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ńígirgęręskō</i>	<i>kirgęręskō</i>		<i>ńęrgęręskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skirgęręm</i>			<i>kirgęręm</i>	<i>skęrgęręm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skirgęrō</i>		<i>ńígirgęrō</i>	<i>kirgęrō</i>	<i>skęrgęrō</i>	<i>ńęrgęrō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ńígirgęrē</i>	<i>kirgęrē</i>		<i>ńígirgęrē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skirgęrū</i>			<i>kirgęrū</i>	<i>skęrgęrū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skęrgęrō</i>		<i>ńęrgęrō</i>	<i>kęrgęrō</i>	<i>skęrgęrō</i>	<i>ńęrgęrō</i>
<b>Future.</b>						
<i>wu</i>			<i>ńtšidískō</i>	<i>tšidískō</i>		<i>ńtšędískō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>šidęm</i>			<i>tšidęm</i>	<i>šędęm</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šidō</i>		<i>ńtšidō</i>	<i>tšidō</i>	<i>šędō</i>	<i>ńtšędō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ńtšidiyę</i>	<i>tšidiyę</i>		<i>ńtšidiyę</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šidęm</i>			<i>tšidū</i>	<i>šędū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šędō</i>		<i>ńtšędō</i>	<i>tšędō</i>	<i>šędō</i>	<i>ńtšędō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ńtšúruskō</i>	<i>tšúruskō</i>		<i>ńtšáruskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>šúrum*</i>			<i>tšúrum</i>	<i>šárum</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šúrū</i>		<i>ńtšúrū</i>	<i>tšúrū</i>	<i>šárū</i>	<i>ńtšárū</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ńtšúruiyę</i>	<i>tšúruiyę</i>		<i>ńtšáruiyę</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šúrū</i>			<i>tšúrū</i>	<i>šárū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šárū</i>		<i>ńtšárū</i>	<i>tšárū</i>	<i>šárū</i>	<i>ńtšárū</i>

\* Perhaps originally *šiúrum*, etc.



SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andiga</i>	<i>nandigā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšimaskō</i>	<i>tšimaskō</i>		<i>ntšémaskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šimagem</i>			<i>tšimagem</i>	<i>šémagem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šimogō</i>	<i>ntšimogō</i>		<i>tšimogō</i>	<i>šémogō</i>	<i>ntšémogō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšimagē</i>		<i>tšimagē</i>		<i>ntšémagē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šimogū</i>			<i>tšimogū</i>	<i>šémogū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šémogō</i>	<i>ntšémogō</i>		<i>tšémogō</i>	<i>šémogō</i>	<i>ntšémogō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšiladéskō</i>	<i>tšiladéskō</i>		<i>ntšēladéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šiládem</i>			<i>tšiládem</i>	<i>šeládem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šiládō</i>	<i>ntšiládō</i>		<i>tšiládō</i>	<i>šeládō</i>	<i>ntšēládō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšiládē</i>		<i>tšiládē</i>		<i>ntšēládē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šiládū</i>			<i>tšiládū</i>	<i>šeládū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šeládō</i>	<i>ntšēládō</i>		<i>tšēládō</i>	<i>šeládō</i>	<i>ntšēládō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšigáreškō</i>	<i>tšigáreškō</i>		<i>ntšagáreškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šigárem</i>			<i>tšigárem</i>	<i>šagárem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šigárō</i>	<i>ntšigárō</i>		<i>tšigárō</i>	<i>šagárō</i>	<i>ntšagárō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšigárē</i>		<i>tšigárē</i>		<i>ntšagárē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šigárū</i>			<i>tšigárū</i>	<i>šagárū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šagárō</i>	<i>ntšagárō</i>		<i>tšagárō</i>	<i>šagárō</i>	<i>ntšagárō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšigōreškō</i>	<i>tšigōreškō</i>		<i>ntšógōreškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šigōrem</i>			<i>tšigōrem</i>	<i>šógōrem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šigorō</i>	<i>ntšigorō</i>		<i>tšigorō</i>	<i>šógorō</i>	<i>ntšógorō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšigorē</i>		<i>tšigorē</i>		<i>ntšigorē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šigorū</i>			<i>tšigorū</i>	<i>šógorū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šógorō</i>	<i>ntšógorō</i>		<i>tšógorō</i>	<i>šógorō</i>	<i>ntšógorō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšibertéskō</i>	<i>tšibertéskō</i>		<i>ntšabertéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šibértem</i>			<i>tšibértem</i>	<i>šabértem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šibértō</i>	<i>ntšibértō</i>		<i>tšibértō</i>	<i>šabértō</i>	<i>ntšabértō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšibértē</i>		<i>tšibértē</i>		<i>ntšibértē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šibértū</i>			<i>tšibértū</i>	<i>šabértū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šabértō</i>	<i>ntšabértō</i>		<i>tšabértō</i>	<i>šabértō</i>	<i>ntšabértō</i>

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntširgêreskō</i>	<i>tširgêreskō</i>		<i>ntšergêreskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>širgêrem</i>			<i>tširgêrem</i>	<i>šergêrem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>širgêrō</i>	<i>ntširgêrō</i>		<i>tširgêrō</i>	<i>šergêrō</i>	<i>ntšergêrō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntširgêrē</i>		<i>tširgêrē</i>		<i>ntširgêrē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>širgêrū</i>			<i>tširgêrū</i>	<i>šergêrū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šergêrō</i>	<i>ntšergêrō</i>		<i>tšergêrō</i>	<i>šergêrō</i>	<i>ntšergêrō</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

§. 103. The 1st per. having no distinct objective forms, we only give the 2d per. sing. and pl., with the 1st and 3d per. as its object.

Conjugation I.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>andíga</i>	<i>šígā &amp; sandígā</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šedé</i>		<i>sadé</i>	<i>dē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šedógō</i>		<i>sadógō</i>	<i>déogō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>súruí</i>		<i>sáruí</i>	<i>ruí</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>súruígō</i>		<i>sáruígō</i>	<i>ruígō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šemúge</i>		<i>samúge</i>	<i>múge</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šemágogō</i>		<i>samágogō</i>	<i>mágogō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šeladé</i>		<i>saladé</i>	<i>ladé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šeladógō</i>		<i>saladógō</i>	<i>ladógō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šegáre</i>		<i>sagáre</i>	<i>káre</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šegárogō</i>		<i>sagárogō</i>	<i>károgō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šeberté</i>		<i>saberté</i>	<i>perté</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šebertógō</i>		<i>sabertógō</i>	<i>pertógō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šergére</i>		<i>sargére</i>	<i>gére</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šergérogō</i>		<i>sargérogō</i>	<i>gérogō</i>

Conjugation II. <sup>1</sup>

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúrō</i>	<i>andírō</i>	<i>šírō</i> & <i>sandírō</i>
<i>ni</i>		<i>seǵdlé</i>	<i>sagdlé</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>yigdlé</i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>seǵdlogō</i>	<i>sagdlogō</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>yigdlogō</i>
<i>ni</i>		<i>seǵemáǵe</i>	<i>sagamáǵe</i>	<i>yigemáǵe</i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>seǵemáǵogō</i>	<i>sagamáǵogō</i>	<i>yigemáǵogō</i>
<i>ni</i>		<i>seǵeladé</i>	<i>sagaladé</i>	<i>yigeladé</i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>seǵeladógō</i>	<i>sagaladógō</i>	<i>yigeladógō</i>
<i>ni</i>		<i>seǵakār<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>sagakār<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>yigakār<sup>3</sup></i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>seǵakārógō<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>sagakārógō<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>yigakārógō<sup>3</sup></i>
<i>ni</i>		<i>seǵeperté</i>	<i>sagaperté</i>	<i>yigeperté</i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>seǵepertógō</i>	<i>sagapertógō</i>	<i>yigepertógō</i>
<i>ni</i>		<i>sergeǵére</i>	<i>sargeǵére</i>	<i>yirgeǵére</i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>sergeǵérogō</i>	<i>sargeǵérogō</i>	<i>yirgeǵérogō</i>

Negative Mood.

§. 104. This being so regularly derived from the indicative, it will suffice to illustrate it by only one verb.

Present Negative.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúǵā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsédēsǵanı</i>	<i>dísǵanı</i>		<i>ntsásédēsǵanı</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>sédemmi</i>			<i>dímııı</i>	<i>sádemmi</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>sédenı</i>		<i>ntsédeni</i>	<i>tsédeni</i>	<i>sádenı</i>	<i>ntsásedenı</i>
<i>andı</i>			<i>ntsédıyendé</i>	<i>dıyendé</i>		<i>ntsásıyendé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sédıwı</i>			<i>dıwı</i>	<i>sádıwı</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sádenı</i>		<i>ntsásedenı</i>	<i>tsásedenı</i>	<i>sádenı</i>	<i>ntsásedenı</i>

<sup>1</sup> Of *rúskin*, no second Conjugation is used.

<sup>2</sup> Also *sasagdlé* and *sasagdlogō*.

<sup>3</sup> In all these forms the *k* of the root is also changed into *ǵ*.

## Future Negative.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wígā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsídęsganı</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>tšídęsganı</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>ntsédęsganı</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šídęmmí</i>			<i>tšídęmmí</i>	<i>šédęmmí</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šídęní</i>		<i>ntsídęní</i>	<i>tšídęní</i>	<i>šédęní</i>	<i>ntsédęní</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsídilyendé</i>	<i>tšídilyendé</i>		<i>ntsédilyendé</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šídūwí</i>			<i>tšídūwí</i>	<i>šédūwí</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šédęní</i>		<i>ntsédęní</i>	<i>tšédęní</i>	<i>šédęní</i>	<i>ntsédęní</i>

## Conjunctive Mood.

§. 105. This, also, is so regularly formed, that one verb can serve as a paradigm for all the rest.

## Past Conjunctive.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wígā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šigā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngirusgányā</i>	<i>kirusgányā</i>		<i>ngerusgányā</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skirúmiā</i>			<i>kirúmiā</i>	<i>skerúmiā</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skirúnyā</i>		<i>ngirúnyā</i>	<i>kirúnyā</i>	<i>skerúnyā</i>	<i>ngerúnyā</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngiruiyéndēā</i>	<i>kiruiyéndēā</i>		<i>ngeruiyéndēā</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skirúwiā</i>			<i>kirúwiā</i>	<i>skerúwiā</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skerúnyā</i>		<i>ngerúnyā</i>	<i>kerúnyā</i>	<i>skerúnyā</i>	<i>ngerúnyā</i>

## Future Conjunctive.

<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsúruskīa</i>	<i>rúskīa</i>		<i>ntsáruskīa</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>súrúmiā</i>		<i>rúmiā</i>	<i>sárúmiā</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>súrúiya</i>	<i>ntsúrúiya</i>	<i>tsúrúiya</i>	<i>sárúiya</i>	<i>ntsárúiya</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsúrúiyēya</i>	<i>rúiyēya</i>		<i>ntsárúiyēya</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>súrúwiā</i>		<i>rúwiā</i>	<i>sárúwiā</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sárúiya</i>	<i>ntsárúiya</i>	<i>tsárúiya</i>	<i>sárúiya</i>	<i>ntsárúiya</i>

<sup>1</sup> Or with *i* after *d*.

*Participial Mood.*

§. 106. Here again not more than one paradigm will be required.

*Present Participial.*

SUBJECT	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšladésgana</i>	<i>ladésgana</i>		<i>ntsaladésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šgládemma</i>			<i>lademma</i>	<i>saládemma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šgládena</i>	<i>ntšgládena</i>		<i>tšgládena</i>	<i>saládena</i>	<i>ntsaládena</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšgládēna</i>		<i>ládēna</i>		<i>ntsaládēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šgládūwa</i>			<i>ládūwa</i>	<i>saládūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>saládēna</i>	<i>ntsaládēna</i>		<i>tsaládēna</i>	<i>saládēna</i>	<i>ntsaládēna</i>

*Past Participial.*

<i>wu</i>		<i>ngiladésgana</i>	<i>kiladésgana</i>		<i>ngladésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>škiládemma</i>		<i>kiládemma</i>	<i>škiládemma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>škiládēna</i>	<i>ngiládēna</i>	<i>kiládēna</i>	<i>škiládēna</i>	<i>ngeládēna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngiládēna</i>	<i>kiládēna</i>		<i>ngeládēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>škiládūwa</i>		<i>kiládūwa</i>	<i>škiládūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>škiládēna</i>	<i>ngeládēna</i>	<i>keládēna</i>	<i>škiládēna</i>	<i>ngeládēna</i>

*Future Participial.*

<i>wu</i>		<i>ntšiladésgana</i>	<i>tšiladésgana</i>		<i>ntšēladésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šiládemma</i>		<i>tšiládemma</i>	<i>šēlademma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šiládēna</i>	<i>ntšiládēna</i>	<i>tšiládēna</i>	<i>šēladēna</i>	<i>ntšēladēna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšiládēna</i>	<i>tšiládēna</i>		<i>ntšēladēna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šiládūwa</i>		<i>tšiládūwa</i>	<i>šēladūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šēladēna</i>	<i>ntšēladēna</i>	<i>tšēladēna</i>	<i>šēladēna</i>	<i>ntšēladēna</i>

2. *Objective Inflection of Verbs in skin, with the initial y.*

§. 107. These verbs differ from the preceding class chiefly by their losing the initial *y*, in consequence of the objective prefixes, which take its place. This and their other peculiarities will appear from the following examples.

SUBJECT	OBJECT.	Indefinite I.				
		<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsísikin</i>	<i>yísikin</i>			<i>ntsásésikin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šímín</i>		<i>yímín</i>	<i>sáúgémín</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>šín</i>	<i>ntsín</i>	<i>tsín</i>	<i>sáúlin</i>		<i>ntsáúlin</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsítjen</i>	<i>yítjen</i>			<i>ntsáúdiyen</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šíwī</i>		<i>yíwī</i>	<i>sáúwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sáúlin</i>	<i>ntsáúlin</i>	<i>tsáúlin</i>	<i>sáúlin</i>		<i>ntsáúlin</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsásáskin</i>	<i>yásáskin</i>			<i>ntsásásáskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>sátémín</i>		<i>yátémín</i>	<i>sásátémín</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>sátín</i>	<i>ntsátín</i>	<i>tsátín</i>	<i>sásátín</i>		<i>ntsásátín</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsátēn</i>	<i>yátēn</i>			<i>ntsásátēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sátuwī</i>		<i>yátuwī</i>	<i>sásátuwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sásátín</i>	<i>ntsásátín</i>	<i>tsásátín</i>	<i>sásátín</i>		<i>ntsásátín</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsatsēráskin</i>	<i>yētseráskin</i>			<i>ntsasatsēráskin</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>ni</i>	<i>satsērámín</i>		<i>yētserámín</i>	<i>sasatsērámín</i> <sup>1</sup>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>sátserei</i>	<i>ntsátserei</i>	<i>tsátserei</i>	<i>sásatserei</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>ntsásatserei</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsatsereiyen</i>	<i>yētserēiyen</i>			<i>ntsasatsereiyen</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>satsērāwī</i>		<i>yētserāwī</i>	<i>sasatsērāwī</i> <sup>1</sup>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sátserei</i>	<i>ntsátserei</i>	<i>tsátserei</i>	<i>sásatserei</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>ntsásatserei</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntsargáleskin</i>	<i>yargáleskin</i>			<i>ntsasargáleskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>sargálemín</i>		<i>yargálemín</i>	<i>sasargálemín</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>sargálin</i>	<i>ntsargálin</i>	<i>tsargálin</i>	<i>sasargálin</i>		<i>ntsasargálin</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsargálēn</i>	<i>yargálēn</i>			<i>ntsasargálēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sargáluwī</i>		<i>yargáluwī</i>	<i>sasargáluwī</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sasargálin</i>	<i>ntsasargálin</i>	<i>tsasargálin</i>	<i>sasargálin</i>		<i>ntsasargálin</i>

<sup>1</sup> All these forms have also *satsā,* instead of *sasā.*

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>néga</i>	<i>šígā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andíga</i>	<i>namlígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsšífuskin</i>	<i>yífuskin</i>		<i>ntsásíjuskín</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šífūmin</i>			<i>yífūmin</i>	<i>sásíjūmin</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šífín</i>		<i>ntsšífín</i>	<i>tšífín</i>	<i>sásíjín</i>	<i>ntsásíjín</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsšífēn</i>	<i>yífēn</i>		<i>ntsásíjēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šífuwī</i>			<i>yífuwī</i>	<i>sásíjuwī</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sásíjín</i>	<i>ntsásíjín</i>		<i>tsásíjín</i>	<i>sásíjín</i>	<i>ntsásíjín</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsákéskin</i>	<i>yákéskin</i>		<i>ntsasákéskín</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>sákemín</i>			<i>yákemín</i>	<i>sasákemín</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>sákin</i>		<i>ntsákin</i>	<i>tsákin</i>	<i>sasákin</i>	<i>ntsasákin</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsákēn</i>	<i>yákēn</i>		<i>ntsasákēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sákuwī</i>			<i>yákuwī</i>	<i>sasákuwī</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sasákin</i>	<i>ntsasákin</i>		<i>tsasákin</i>	<i>sasákin</i>	<i>ntsasákin</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsčtséskin</i>	<i>yčtséskin</i>		<i>ntsčššéšeskin</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šššemín</i>			<i>yčtsémín</i>	<i>šššemín</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šššín</i>		<i>ntsčtššín</i>	<i>tščtššín</i>	<i>šššššín</i>	<i>ntsčššššín</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsčtššēn</i>	<i>yčtššēn</i>		<i>ntsčššššēn</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šššuwī</i>			<i>yčtšuwī</i>	<i>šššššuwī</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šššššín</i>	<i>ntsčššššín</i>		<i>tšššššín</i>	<i>šššššín</i>	<i>ntsčššššín</i>

Aorist.

<i>wu</i>		<i>ngéškō</i>	<i>kéškō</i>		<i>ngédēškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>ském</i>		<i>kēm</i>	<i>skédem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skéinō</i>	<i>ngéinō</i>	<i>kéinō</i>	<i>skédō</i>	<i>ngédō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngéiyē</i>	<i>kéiyē</i>		<i>ngédiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skédū</i>		<i>kéon</i>	<i>skédū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skédō</i>	<i>ngédō</i>	<i>kédō</i>	<i>skédō</i>	<i>ngédō</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ngéáškō</i>	<i>keáškō</i>		<i>ngesáškō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skeátem</i>		<i>keátem</i>	<i>skesátem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skeátō</i>	<i>ngéátō</i>	<i>keátō</i>	<i>skesátō</i>	<i>ngesátō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngéátē</i>	<i>keátē</i>		<i>ngesátē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skeátū</i>		<i>keátū</i>	<i>skesátū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skesátō</i>	<i>ngesátō</i>	<i>kesátō</i>	<i>skesátō</i>	<i>ngesátō</i>

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngētseráškō</i>	<i>kētseráškō</i>		<i>ngēsētseráškō</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skētserām</i>			<i>kētserām</i>	<i>skēsátserām</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skētserā</i>	<i>ngētserā</i>		<i>kētserā</i>	<i>skēsátserā</i>	<i>ngēsátserā</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngētseréiyē</i>		<i>kētseréiyē</i>		<i>ngēsatsseréiyē</i>
<i>núnli</i>	<i>skētserau</i>			<i>kētserau</i>	<i>skēsátserau</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skētserā</i>	<i>ngētserā</i>		<i>kētserā</i>	<i>skēsátserā</i>	<i>ngēsátserā</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ngergálēškō</i>	<i>kergálēškō</i>			<i>ngesargálēškō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skergálem</i>			<i>kergálem</i>	<i>skesargálem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skergálō</i>	<i>ngergálō</i>		<i>kergálō</i>	<i>skesargálō</i>	<i>ngesargálō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngergálē</i>		<i>kergálē</i>		<i>ngesargálē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skergálū</i>			<i>kergálū</i>	<i>skesargálū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skesargálō</i>	<i>ngesargálō</i>		<i>kesargálō</i>	<i>skesargálō</i>	<i>ngesargálō</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ngéifuskō</i>	<i>keifuskō</i>			<i>ngéšifuskō</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skeifum</i>			<i>keifum</i>	<i>skéšifum</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skeifō</i>	<i>ngéifō</i>		<i>keifō</i>	<i>skéšifō</i>	<i>ngéšifō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngélfē</i>		<i>keifē</i>		<i>ngéšifē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skeifū</i>			<i>keifū</i>	<i>skéšifū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skéšifō</i>	<i>ngéšifō</i>		<i>kéšifō</i>	<i>skéšifō</i>	<i>ngéšifō</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ngēakéškō</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>kēakéškō</i> <sup>2</sup>			<i>ngesakéškō</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>ní</i>	<i>skēákem</i>			<i>kēákem</i>	<i>skēsákem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skēákō</i>	<i>ngēákō</i>		<i>kēákō</i>	<i>skēsákō</i>	<i>ngesákō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngékē</i>		<i>kékē</i>		<i>ngesákē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skēákū</i>			<i>kēákū</i>	<i>skēsákū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skēsákō</i>	<i>ngesákō</i>		<i>kesákō</i>	<i>skēsákō</i>	<i>ngesákō</i>

<sup>1</sup> These forms have also *ngēts* for *ngēs*.<sup>2</sup> Also *kuskō* for *kēškō*.



SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>š'ígā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ngětsěskō</i>	<i>kětsěskō</i>		<i>ngěšasěskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skětsēm</i> <sup>1</sup>			<i>kětsēm</i>	<i>skesásēm</i> <sup>5</sup>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skěsō</i>		<i>ngětsō</i>	<i>kětsō</i>	<i>skēsósō</i>	<i>ngěšósō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ngětsě</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>kětsě</i>		<i>ngěšěšě</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skětsū</i> <sup>2</sup>			<i>kětsū</i>	<i>skěšěšū</i> <sup>6</sup>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skesěsō</i>		<i>ngěšěsō</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>kesěsō</i>	<i>skesěsō</i>	<i>ngesěsō</i>

Future.

<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsěskō</i>	<i>tšěskō</i>		<i>ntsědęskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šēm</i>			<i>tšēm</i>	<i>š'edem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>š'ínō</i>		<i>ntsěínō</i>	<i>tšěínō</i>	<i>š'édō</i>	<i>ntsěídō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsěíyē</i>	<i>tšěíyē</i>		<i>ntsěídiyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>š'ěou</i>			<i>tš'ěou</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>š'édū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>š'édō</i>		<i>ntsěídō</i>	<i>tšěsātō</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>š'édō</i>	<i>ntsěídō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsěáskō</i>	<i>tšěáskō</i>		<i>ntsěšāsāskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>š'átēm</i>			<i>tš'átēm</i>	<i>š'ásātēm</i> <sup>9</sup>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>š'átō</i>		<i>ntsěátō</i>	<i>tš'átō</i>	<i>š'ésātō</i>	<i>ntsěšsātō</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsěátē</i>	<i>tš'átē</i>		<i>ntsěšsātē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>š'átū</i>			<i>tš'átū</i>	<i>š'ésātū</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>š'ésātō</i>		<i>ntsěšsātō</i>	<i>tš'ésātō</i>	<i>š'ésātō</i>	<i>ntsěšsātō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsětsęráskō</i>	<i>tšětsęráskō</i>		<i>ntsěšsatsęráskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>š'ětsęrām</i>			<i>tš'ětsęrām</i>	<i>š'ětsšsātęrām</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>š'ětsęrā</i>		<i>ntsětsęrā</i>	<i>tš'ětsęrā</i>	<i>š'ětsšsātęrā</i>	<i>ntsěšsatsęrā</i>
<i>ándi</i>			<i>ntsětsęrēíyē</i>	<i>tš'ětsęrēíyē</i>		<i>ntsěšsatsęrēíyē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>š'ětsęrau</i>			<i>tš'ětsęrau</i>	<i>š'ětsšsātęrau</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>š'ětsęrā</i>		<i>ntsětsęrā</i>	<i>tš'ětsęrā</i>	<i>š'ětsšsātęrā</i>	<i>ntsěšsatsęrā</i>

<sup>1</sup> And *skěsēm*.

<sup>2</sup> And *skěsū*.

<sup>3</sup> And *ngětsěšē*.

<sup>4</sup> And *ngěšěsō*.

<sup>5</sup> And *kesěsēm*.

<sup>6</sup> And *kesěšū*.

<sup>7</sup> And *tšou*.

<sup>8</sup> And *tš'édō*.

<sup>9</sup> And *š'ésātēm*.

<sup>10</sup> And *tš'ásātō*.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wīgā</i>	<i>nīgā</i>	<i>šigā</i> & <i>sandīgā</i>	<i>andīgā</i>	<i>nandīgā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšergáleskō</i>	<i>tšergáleskō</i>		<i>ntšesargáleskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šergálem</i>			<i>tšergálem</i>	<i>šesargálem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šargálō</i>	<i>ntšergálō</i>	<i>tšergálō</i>	<i>šesargálō</i>		<i>ntšesargálō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšergáleiyē<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>tšergáleiyē<sup>1</sup></i>			<i>ntšesargáleiyē<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šargálū</i>		<i>tšargálū</i>	<i>šesargálū</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šesargálō</i>	<i>ntšesargálō</i>	<i>tšesargálō</i>	<i>šesargálō</i>		<i>ntšesargálō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšeiǰuskō</i>	<i>tšeiǰuskō</i>		<i>ntššeiǰuskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>seiǰum</i>			<i>tšeiǰum</i>	<i>ššeiǰum</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>seiǰō</i>	<i>ntšeiǰō</i>	<i>tšeiǰō</i>	<i>ššeiǰō</i>		<i>ntššeiǰō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšeiǰē</i>	<i>tšeiǰē</i>			<i>ntššeiǰē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>seiǰū</i>		<i>tšeiǰū<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>ššeiǰū</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>ššeiǰō</i>	<i>ntššeiǰō</i>	<i>tššeiǰō</i>	<i>ššeiǰō</i>		<i>ntššeiǰō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšakéskō</i>	<i>tšakéskō<sup>3</sup></i>		<i>ntšesakéskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>sákem</i>			<i>tšákem<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>šesákem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šákō</i>	<i>ntšékō</i>	<i>tšákō<sup>5</sup></i>	<i>šesákō</i>		<i>ntšesákō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšékē</i>	<i>tšékē</i>			<i>ntšesákē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šákū</i>		<i>tšákū<sup>6</sup></i>	<i>šesákū</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šesákō</i>	<i>ntšesákō</i>	<i>tšesákō</i>	<i>šesákō</i>		<i>ntšesákō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntščtséskō</i>	<i>tščtséskō</i>		<i>ntššščtséskō</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>ščsem</i>			<i>tščtsem</i>	<i>ššščsem</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>ščsō</i>	<i>ntščtsō</i>	<i>tščtsō</i>	<i>ššščsō</i>		<i>ntššščsō</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntščtšē</i>	<i>tščtšē</i>			<i>ntššščtšē</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>ščsū</i>		<i>tščtsū</i>	<i>ššščsū</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>ššščsō</i>	<i>ntššščsō</i>	<i>tššščsō</i>	<i>ššščsō</i>		<i>ntššščsō</i>

<sup>1</sup> And *lē* for *leiye*.<sup>1</sup> And *tščakem*.<sup>2</sup> And *tšššijū*.<sup>5</sup> And *tščakō*.<sup>3</sup> And *tščakéskō*.<sup>6</sup> And *tščakū*.

*Imperative Mood.*

§. 108. We again omit the first person, as it has no distinct form for the objective.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wáya</i>	<i>andíyā</i>	<i>síyā &amp; sandíyā</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>šē</i>	<i>sáulē</i>	<i>yē</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šógō</i>	<i>sáulogō</i>	<i>yógō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>sáte</i>	<i>sásáte</i>	<i>yáte</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sátogō</i>	<i>sásátogō</i>	<i>yátogō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>sargále</i>	<i>sasargále</i>	<i>yargále</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sargálogō</i>	<i>sasargálogō</i>	<i>yargálogō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>šíjē</i>	<i>sásíjē</i>	<i>yíjē</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šíjogō</i>	<i>sásíjogō</i>	<i>yíjogō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>sáké</i>	<i>sāsáké</i>	<i>yáké</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sákogō</i>	<i>sasákogō</i>	<i>yákogō</i>	
<i>ní</i>	<i>šēsé</i>	<i>šēsésé</i>	<i>yétsé</i>	
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šēsogō</i>	<i>šēsésogō</i>	<i>yétsogō</i>	

*Negative Mood.*

§. 109. All verbs agree so fully in the Negative, that they can be illustrated by a single example.

*Present Negative.*

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúrō</i>	<i>nírō</i>	<i>širō &amp; sandírō</i>	<i>andírō</i>	<i>nandírō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsísyāní</i>	<i>yísyāní</i>		<i>ntsásálesyāní</i>
<i>ní</i>		<i>šímmí</i>		<i>yímmí</i>	<i>sádēm mī</i>	
<i>ši</i>		<i>šíní</i>	<i>ntsíní</i>	<i>tšíní</i>	<i>sáulēní</i>	<i>ntsásáulēní</i>
<i>úndi</i>			<i>ntsíyēndé</i>	<i>yíyēndé</i>		<i>ntsásáliyēndé</i>
<i>nándi</i>		<i>šíwí</i>		<i>yíwí</i>	<i>sáulūwí</i>	
<i>sándi</i>		<i>sáulēní</i>	<i>ntsásáulēní</i>	<i>tsásáulēní</i>	<i>sáulēní</i>	<i>ntsásáulēní</i>

## Future Negative.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wáwō</i>	<i>níwō</i>	<i>šáwō &amp; sáníwō</i>	<i>andíwō</i>	<i>nandíwō</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšésgáí</i>	<i>tšésgáí</i>		<i>ntšédsqáí</i>
<i>ní</i>	<i>šénní</i>		<i>ntšénní</i>	<i>tšénní</i>	<i>šédení</i>	
<i>šá</i>	<i>šéí</i>		<i>ntšéí</i>	<i>tšéí</i>	<i>šédení</i>	<i>ntšédení</i>
<i>ándí</i>			<i>ntšéiyendé</i>	<i>tšéiyendé</i>		<i>ntšéíyendé</i>
<i>nándí</i>	<i>šéwí<sup>1</sup></i>		<i>ntšéwí</i>	<i>tšéwí</i>	<i>šéíwí</i>	
<i>sándí</i>	<i>šédení</i>		<i>ntšédení</i>	<i>tšédení</i>	<i>šédení</i>	<i>ntšédení</i>

## Conjunctional Mood.

§. 110. This, also, is derived so uniformly, that one verb will serve as an example for all the rest.

<sup>1</sup> And *šówí*.

Past Conjunctional.

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wīgā</i>	<i>nīgā</i>	<i>šīgā &amp; sandīgā</i>	<i>andīgā</i>	<i>nandīgā</i>
<i>wu</i>	<i>skergalēmīā</i>	<i>niḡergalēsḡānyā</i>	<i>kergalēsḡānyā</i>	<i>kergalēmīā</i>	<i>skēsargalēmīā</i>	<i>niḡsargalēsḡānyā</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>skergalēnyā</i>	<i>niḡergalēnyā</i>	<i>kergalēnyā</i>	<i>kergalēmīā</i>	<i>skēsargalēmīā</i>	<i>niḡsargalēnyā</i>
<i>ši</i>		<i>niḡergalēndēā</i>	<i>kergalēndēā</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>kergalēndēā</i>	<i>skēsargalēnyā</i>	<i>niḡsargalēnyā</i>
<i>āndī</i>	<i>skergalūwīā</i>		<i>kergalūwīā</i>	<i>kergalūwīā</i>	<i>skēsargalūwīā</i>	<i>niḡsargalēnyā</i>
<i>nāndī</i>		<i>niḡsargalēnyā</i>	<i>kēsargalēnyā</i>	<i>kēsargalēnyā</i>	<i>skēsargalēnyā</i>	<i>niḡsargalēnyā</i>
<i>sāndī</i>	<i>skēsargalēnyā</i>					

Future Conjunctional.

<i>wu</i>		<i>ntargalēskīā</i>	<i>yargalēskīā</i>	<i>yargalēskīā</i>	<i>ntsasargalēskīā</i>
<i>nī</i>	<i>sargalēmīā</i>		<i>yargalēmīā</i>	<i>yargalēmīā</i>	<i>ntsasargalēskīā</i>
<i>ši</i>	<i>sargaldīā</i>	<i>ntsargaldīā</i>	<i>tsargaldīā</i>	<i>sasargaldīā</i>	<i>ntsasargaldīā</i>
<i>āndī</i>		<i>ntsargaldēyā</i>	<i>yargaldēyā</i>	<i>yargaldēyā</i>	<i>ntsasargaldēyā</i>
<i>nāndī</i>	<i>sargalūwīā</i>		<i>yargalūwīā</i>	<i>ēsargalūwīā</i>	<i>ntsasargaldēyā</i>
<i>sāndī</i>	<i>sasargaldīā</i>	<i>ntsasargaldīā</i>	<i>tsasargaldīā</i>	<i>sasargaldīā</i>	<i>ntsasargaldīā</i>

<sup>1</sup> And *kergalēndēā*.

<sup>2</sup> And *niḡsargalēndēā*.

*Participial Mood.*

§. III. The objective inflection of the participial will be illustrated by the two verbs, *yākéskin* and *yētšéskin*.

*Present Participial.*

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wúgā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā &amp; sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsākésgana</i>	<i>yākésgana</i>		<i>ntsasakésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>sākémma</i>			<i>yākémma</i>	<i>sasakémma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>súkəna</i>	<i>ntsákəna</i>		<i>tsákəna</i>	<i>sasákəna</i>	<i>ntsasákəna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsakéna</i>		<i>yekéna</i>		<i>ntsasakéna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>sákūwa</i>			<i>yákūwa</i>	<i>sasákūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>sasákəna</i>	<i>ntsasákəna</i>		<i>tsasákəna</i>	<i>sasákəna</i>	<i>ntsasákəna</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntsčtsésgana</i>	<i>yētšésgana</i>		<i>ntsčšésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>ššésmma</i>			<i>yčtsémma</i>	<i>šššésmma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>ššəna</i>	<i>ntsčtsəna</i>		<i>tšštsəna</i>	<i>ššššəna</i>	<i>ntsčššəna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntsčtsčna</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>yčtsčna</i>		<i>ntsčšššəna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šššūwa</i>			<i>yčtsūwa</i>	<i>šššššūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>ššššəna</i>	<i>ntsčšššəna</i>		<i>tššššəna</i>	<i>šššššəna</i>	<i>ntsčšššəna</i>

*Past Participial.*

<i>wu</i>		<i>ngēakésgana</i>	<i>kēakésgana</i>		<i>ngesakésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skēakémma</i>		<i>kēakémma</i>	<i>skesakémma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skēakəna</i>	<i>ngēakəna</i>	<i>kēakəna</i>	<i>skesakəna</i>	<i>ngesakəna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngēakéna</i>	<i>kēakéna</i>		<i>ngesakéna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skēakūwa</i>		<i>kēakūwa</i>	<i>skesakūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skesakəna</i>	<i>ngesakəna</i>	<i>kesakəna</i>	<i>skesakəna</i>	<i>ngesakəna</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ngčtsésgana</i>	<i>kčtsésgana</i>		<i>ngesčšésgana</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>skčtsémma</i> <sup>2</sup>		<i>kčtsémma</i>	<i>skeššémma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>skčtsəna</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>ngčtsəna</i>	<i>kčtsəna</i>	<i>skeššəna</i>	<i>ngesčššəna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ngčtsična</i>	<i>kčtsična</i>		<i>ngesčššična</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>skčtsūwa</i>		<i>kčtsūwa</i>	<i>skešššūwa</i>	
<i>sándi</i>	<i>skešššəna</i>	<i>ngesčššəna</i>	<i>kešššəna</i>	<i>skešššəna</i>	<i>ngesčššəna</i>

<sup>1</sup> And *ntsčtsična*<sup>2</sup> And *skčtsémma*.<sup>3</sup> And *ksčtsična*.

*Future Participial.*

SUBJECT.	OBJECT.	<i>wígā</i>	<i>nígā</i>	<i>šígā</i> & <i>sandígā</i>	<i>andígā</i>	<i>nandígā</i>
<i>wu</i>			<i>ntšēakésgāna</i>	<i>tšēakésgāna</i>		<i>ntšēsākésgāna</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šēakémma</i>			<i>tšēakémma</i>	<i>šēsčkémma</i>	
<i>ši</i>	<i>šēakēna</i>	<i>ntšēúkēna</i>	<i>tšēakēna</i>	<i>šēsákēna</i>		<i>ntšēsákēna</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšēkénu</i>	<i>tšēkéna</i>			<i>ntšēsakéna</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šēakúwa</i>		<i>tšēakúwa</i>	<i>šēsakúwa</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šēsákēna</i>	<i>ntšēsákēna</i>	<i>tšēsákēna</i>	<i>šēsákēna</i>		<i>ntšēsákēna</i>
<i>wu</i>		<i>ntšētšésgāna</i>	<i>tšētšésgāna</i>			<i>ntšēsšésgāna</i>
<i>ni</i>	<i>šēsémma</i> <sup>1</sup>		<i>tšētšémma</i>	<i>šēsšémma</i>		
<i>ši</i>	<i>šššina</i>	<i>ntšētššina</i>	<i>tšētššina</i>	<i>šēsššina</i>		<i>ntšēsššina</i>
<i>ándi</i>		<i>ntšētššiena</i>	<i>tšētššiena</i>			<i>ntšēsššiena</i>
<i>nándi</i>	<i>šššúwa</i>		<i>tšētššúwa</i>	<i>šēsššúwa</i>		
<i>sándi</i>	<i>šššššina</i>	<i>ntšēsšššina</i>	<i>tšēsšššina</i>	<i>šššššina</i>		<i>ntšēsšššina</i>

VIII. *Defective Verbs.*

§. 112. By these we understand such verbs as occur only in certain Conjugations, or Moods, or Tenses, or Persons. The first three classes are already illustrated in the above, see §§. 54 and 74. But as a proof that the verb *nágeskin*, "I meet one," was rightly considered as a defective verb of the 2d Conjugation, I may here observe, that Ali assured me that the Mábr and Kóyām tribes still use the form *nángin* or *nágeskin*, for "I go," of which the second conjugation is regularly *nágeskin*, "I go to, towards, *i.e.* I meet one."

Of Verbs defective in the *persons* we may here mention :

1. Certain reciprocal forms which do not naturally occur,

<sup>1</sup> And *šššimma*.

except in the plural : *ándi tádēn, nándi táduwī, sándi tádin; ándi tádlē, nándi tádu and táduwī, sándi tátę, tádlō, tádi; ándi katadéndeā nándi katadúwiā, sándi katadényā; ándi táđēna, nándi táđwa, sándi táđena, "to meet."*

*ándi tabáinyen, nándi tabáinuwi, sándi tabáktsei, "to agree, &c."*

2. As imperative of *śşekin*, we only met with *áre! árogō!* and for the third person plural of *gágeskin*, *támui* is generally used, of which no other forms occur, except it be in the verb *múskin*, "to put on a shirt," perhaps = "to get into it."
3. Certain impersonal verbs, *i.e.* verbs with the subject *dínā* understood, whose final *i* may be long or short—

*bínęmtši, "it is winter," or dínā bínęmtši, id.*

*bétši, "it is dry-season."*

*dibdiťútši, "it is summer."*

*nęngalıtši, "it is rainy-season."*

*bigelıtši, "it is spring."*

*bunyętši, "it is night."*

*kaıtši, "it is day."*

*đértętši. "it is midnight."*

*kau dábútši, "it is noon."*

*kęnawátši & lamboátši, "it is famine."*

*kasalarwátši, "there is plenty (of provisions)."*

*křiguátši, "there is war."*

*kalafiatši, "there is peace, prosperity."*

#### 4. Other Impersonal Verbs.

*dámťšin, "it flows" (e.g. *ńkī*).*

*ťśudárin, "it falls" (viz. *đělęge*).*

*ťśíręťši, "it is verified" (e.g. *mána*).*

*ťlęlaktšin, "it drops" (e.g. *ńkī*).*

*ťśámbin, "it burns" (viz. *kánu*).*

*ťśui and ťśęťi, "it is enough."*

*śęťi or śítō, "it is enough for me."*

*ńťśęťi and ńťśítō, "it is enough for thee."*

*ťśęřńdin, "it ashes."*



*mbétši*, "there is, there exists."

*wūagátšę*, "it happens."

*wūagátši*, "it has happened."

5. The verb *gámgin* is indeed regularly inflected, but *gáptši* is sometimes used impersonally; as, *sándi kām dęge nigáfon gáptši*, "four persons were left behind."

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### ETYMOLOGY OF ADVERBS.

---

§. 113. In an etymological point of view the Kanuri adverbs may be divided into *original*, *converted*, *deflected*, and *compound* adverbs.

§. 114. I. *Original Adverbs* are those which bear no trace of having been derived from other parts of speech. They separate into two classes; viz. those which are unlimited in their use, and those which are each confined to a particular verb or adjective. The former we call *general*, and the latter *specific* adverbs.

#### 1. *List of General Adverbs.*

*ái*, "verily, truly, really."

*ba*, the sign of interrogation.

Perhaps it may be derived from the same source as the German "ob;" Old German "oba;" which, in Old German, was likewise used in *direct* questions see Becker's Gram. I., §. 176.

*bágō*, "not."

*biā*, "for nothing, in vain."

*bug*, *búggō*, "violently, with force."

*dígō*, "first, at first, before."

*ganí*, "not."

*gelé*, "now."

*kádag*, "gently, softly."

*kúrū*, *kúrūma*, "again."

*lintá*, *lintárō*, "much, very, very much, too much, most."

*nda*, "here, there, now, where?"

*nigálle*, *nigálte*, "ever, always, at any time."

*ngei*, "so, thus."

*ngō*, "behold, here," corre-

sponding with the Hebrew רָגַע.	<i>wáge</i> , "soon, immediately, presently."
<i>sérag</i> , "ever, constantly, always."	<i>wónté</i> , "now, then."
<i>tsébed</i> , "the whole day."	<i>yāye</i> , "when" (relative).

2. *List of Specific Adverbs, answering to our "very."*

<i>bug, búggō</i>	<i>keñ</i>	<i>pau</i>	<i>sul</i>	<i>tsai</i>
<i>dē</i>	<i>kédeg</i>	<i>pēt</i>	<i>šiliñ</i>	<i>tsar</i>
<i>fárei</i>	<i>lai, lei</i>	<i>píot</i>	<i>tarét</i>	<i>tsēr</i>
<i>fog</i>	<i>las</i>	<i>pīt</i>	<i>téles, tēlessō</i>	<i>tširit</i>
<i>fōg</i>	<i>loi</i>	<i>póleg</i>	<i>tēn, ndēn</i>	<i>tšit</i>
<i>fōr</i>	<i>mēu, mīu</i>	<i>póteg</i>	<i>tēs</i>	
<i>karañ</i>	<i>ntšil</i>	<i>sálag</i>	<i>tim</i>	

§. 115. II. *Converted Adverbs* comprise a number of substantives, adjectives, pronouns, and one postposition, which are used adverbially without undergoing any change of form. The following is a list of them.

1. *Substantives converted into adverbs—*

<i>bāli</i> , "to-morrow."	<i>kérma</i> , "presently."
<i>bisgā</i> , "yesterday."	<i>kū</i> , "to-day."
<i>búnyē</i> , "by night."	<i>lēsá</i> , "in the evening."
<i>búrgō</i> , "at first, originally."	<i>mágarifū</i> , "in the evening, about six or seven o'clock."
<i>déregē</i> , "next, after, at last."	<i>méndē</i> , "last year."
<i>dérte</i> , "at midnight."	<i>mímca</i> , "next year."
<i>fátsar</i> , "at day-break"	<i>wágarē</i> , "on the day after to-morrow."
<i>kátsirī</i> , "at vesper."	
<i>kau dábū</i> , "at noon."	
<i>kémendē</i> , "this year."	

2. *Adjectives converted into adverbs: dūa*, "quickly;" *ganá*, "a little, shortly;" *gáral*, "stretched out;" *ngalā*, "well;" *sérin*, "silently."

3. *Pronouns converted into adverbs: átēmā*, "therefore;" *ndirā*, "where, whither?" *tīgō*, "there, yonder."

4. A *Postposition* converted into adverbs: *gadi*, "as, as if, as when."

§. 116. III. *Deflected Adverbs* are either nouns with case-terminations or inflected verbs.

1. Adverbs formed by the *Locative* or *Instrumental Case*—

a. Of *Substantives*.—

<i>būrgōn</i> , "at first, originally."	<i>kāraḡigen</i> , "near."
<i>dēgan</i> , "without."	<i>ḡántšīn</i> , "before."
<i>dēlin</i> , "out of town."	<i>ḡáfon</i> , "behind."
<i>fūrin</i> , "above, on high."	<i>sēgerin</i> , "aside."
<i>jūgun</i> , "before."	<i>tsūron</i> , "within."
<i>gānān</i> , "from childhood."	<i>tsāman</i> , "before, previously."

b. Of *Adjectives*.—

<i>dibin</i> , "badly."	<i>ḡglān</i> , "well, fine."
<i>dūan</i> , "quickly."	<i>suluacīnyin</i> , "lazily."
<i>ilān</i> , "slowly, gently."	<i>tsāḡitān</i> , "diligently, zealously."
<i>kānadin</i> , "quietly, meekly."	<i>tsūnyin</i> , "angrily."
<i>kārēten</i> , "fine, beautifully."	

- c. Of *Pronouns*: *ātemān*, "there, then; here, now; therefore;" *ndān*, "whence?"

2. Adverbs formed by the *Dative Case*—

a. Of *Substantives*.—

<i>dēgārō</i> , "without, out."	<i>ḡáforō</i> , "back, backwards."
<i>dēlirō</i> , "out of town."	<i>ḡántširō</i> , "before."
<i>fūrirō</i> , "above, up."	<i>sēgerirō</i> , "aside."
<i>jūgurō</i> , "before, onward."	<i>tsurōrō</i> , "within, inside."
<i>kāraḡirō</i> , "near."	

b. Of *Adjectives*—

<i>dībirō</i> , “badly.”	<i>ṅgūburō</i> , “much, very.”
<i>dūarō</i> , “quickly.”	<i>sérinnō</i> , “silently.”
<i>īlārō</i> , <i>īlānnō</i> , “softly, gently.”	<i>sūluweirō</i> , “lazily.”
<i>kanadīrō</i> , <i>kanadīnnō</i> , “quietly, meekly.”	<i>tilómīrō</i> , “at once, presently.”
<i>kāriturō</i> , “beautifully.”	<i>tsāgitsārō</i> , “diligently.”
<i>kétsīrō</i> , “sweetly, pleasantly.”	<i>tsūrō</i> , “angrily, violently.”
<i>ṅgalārō</i> , “well.”	<i>tsīremārō</i> , “truly.”

c. Of *Pronouns*—

<i>āfirō</i> , “because.”	<i>gadērō</i> , “more, again.”
<i>atēmārō</i> , “therefore, on that account.”	<i>ndārārō</i> , “whither? where?”
	<i>ndārō</i> , “whither? where.”

d. Of *Numerals*—

<i>tilórō</i> , “once.”	<i>yāsgurō</i> , “thrice.”
<i>ndīrō</i> , “twice.”	<i>dégurō</i> , “four times,” &c. see §. 47.

3. Adverbs are also produced by the *deflection* of the following *verbal forms*—

a. An *Imperative*—*āte*, “not,” see Syntax.

b. A *Conjunctival*—*galāgīa*, “next year,” per ellipsis for *dīnīa galāgīa*, “when the world will have been the present year.”

§. 117. IV. *Compound Adverbs* are formed in the following manner—

1. By connecting a *substantive* and *pronoun*—

<i>bīsgātē</i> , “on the day before yesterday.”	<i>sāfi</i> , <i>yīmpī</i> ? “at what time? when?”
<i>lōktētē</i> , “all that time, at this time, then, now.”	<i>yīmtē</i> , <i>yīmturō</i> , <i>yīmtēmā</i> , <i>yīmtē- man</i> , <i>yīmtēmārō</i> , “at that time, at this time, then, now.”
<i>nāten</i> , <i>nāteman</i> , “there, then, immediately, at once,” comp. the German “auf der Stelle.”	

2. By a composition with *yaye* or *so*—

<i>kérmayāyé</i> , “now, at present.”		<i>koágusō</i> , “till now.”
<i>sáfīyāyé</i> , “at any time, always.”		<i>ndárasōn</i> , “everywhere.”
<i>yímpiyāyé</i> , “whenever.”		<i>yímpisō</i> , “at any time, always.”

3. By a composition with *gei—ájigei?* “in what manner? how? wherefore? why?” *átegei*, *átegeínyin*, *átegeírō*, *átegeíma*, *átegeíman*, *átegeímārō*, “thus, in such a manner” (*átegei* is at the same time a converted adverb, from the pronoun *átegei*, “such”). *kóagei*, (from *kū?*) “about this time;” *e.g.* *bālī mínwa kóagei*, “next year about this time.”

4. By *Phraseological Composition*—*uáten júgun*, “next time, in future;” *wónté nígáfon*, “afterwards, hereafter;” *áte nauiga*, or *áte níngārō*, or *áte nauigátemārō*, “therefore, on that account;” *áten díngō*, “then, at that time, at that moment;” *kūn kásen*, “henceforth, in future;” *kā adúgusō* or *tām kūrō kuté*, “till to-day, up to this moment.”

CHAPTER X.

ETYMOLOGY OF POSTPOSITIONS.

§. 118. The Kanuri has no *prepositions*, properly so called; for in most cases where other languages have prepositions, it makes use of substantives, but, in a few cases, it employs *postpositions* which correspond to the prepositions of other languages. The following are the postpositions in use—

1. *lan*, “on, upon;” *e.g.* *múskōlan*, “on the hand.” This appears to have arisen from a noun *lā*, with the locative termination *n*; and, accordingly, *lā* and *n* may

still be separated from one another. I met with this separation in the following two instances—

*tsurī yāsgelāten kōā gērgātse*, “on the third leap, the man was vexed.”

*atēlāman āndi kargeiyē*, “it is on *this* that we live.”

2. *derī* or *derin*, “round, round about;” *e. g.* *belāderī* or *belāderin*, “round the town.”
3. *naiga*, “because of, for the sake of, on account of.”  
*abāni naiga*, “for my father’s sake.”
4. *gadi*, or contracted into *gei*, “as, like;” *āfi gadi*, “like what?” *kōāgei*, “like a man.”

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### ETYMOLOGY OF CONJUNCTIONS.

---

§. 119. I. *Original* conjunctions, *i. e.* words which occur at present in the language only in the capacity of conjunctions, are either simple, or compound, or correlative.

#### 1. *Simple* conjunctions—

*rā*, “or,” probably standing in the same relation to *rāgeskin*, “I like,” as, *e. g.*, ᠠᠨᠢ does to ᠠᠨᠢᠰ, and *vel* to *velle*.

*sei*, *sai*, “except, but;” *tšā*, “except, unless, when;”  
*yā*, “if.”

#### 2. *Compound* conjunctions—

*kwōyā*, “if;” *āfeiya*, “if;” *yāyē*, “whether, if, although.”

#### 3. *Correlative* conjunctions—

*wa—wa*, “both—and.” When added to *o* and *u*, the

*w* is generally dropped and *a* only appended: *símōa mískōa*, "ear and hand;" *búltūa gádūa*, "the hyena and the hog."

In several cases "i" is changed into *u* when it ought to take *wa*, and then also assumes *a* only, instead of *wa*; e. g. *dígalwa búšūa*, "a bed and a mat."

The *i* of the personal and possessive pronouns becomes *yu*, and then takes also *a*, instead of *wa*: *nyúu šyúu*, "thou and he;" *andyúu sandyúu*, "we and they;" *yányúu abányúu*, "my mother and my father." Sometimes, however, it becomes *núu šúu*. A final *e* is likewise changed into *u*; e. g. *yásgūa dégūa*, "three and four."

*n—n* or *nyin—nyin*, "both—and, as well—as;" the simple *n* is used after nouns terminating in a vowel, and *nyin* usually after a consonant.

*ō—ō*, "either—or," viz. after a vowel: *kaldō kuloō*, "either the head, or the money = your money or your life!"

If the final vowel is *e*, it becomes *u* before *o*: *yásquō déguō*, "either three or four;" *sóloō kréguō* "either peace or war."

*wō—wō*, "id.," viz. after consonants, and rarely after vowels: *némwō dágawō*, "either the house or the bed."

*rā—rā*, "whether—or," after vowels and consonants: *dímírā pérā*, "whether a sheep or a cow;" *némrā dígalrā*, "whether a house or a bed."

*kwōya—kwā* or *kōa*, "if—so, if—then"

*tšā—kwōga*, "if, when."

§. 120. II. Only one of the converted conjunctions is compound, viz. *áteyāyé, áteyāčrō*, "and yet, nevertheless," and all the rest are simple. Most of the latter are converted from

adverbs; as, *áfirō*, “why, wherefore;” *átēmā*, *átēman*, *átēmārō*, “therefore;” *dúgō*, “till, until;” *ńdu*, “then.” One is converted from a postposition, viz. *gei*, “as,” and two from verbs, viz. *áte*, “lest,” which is properly an imperative, and *genyā*, which is properly a conjunctive mood.

---



---

## CHAPTER XII.

### INTERJECTIONS.

---

§. 121. The language appears to be rather poor in interjections, but we met with the following—

*wóí!* *wóíó!* expressive of grief and pain; e. g. *wóíó*, *tígini ńgásō tseréndin*, “ah! my whole body is aching.”

*wóíáyō!* expressive of grief and complaint; e. g. *wóíáyō*, *wúgā kógōsei*, “O! they have beaten me;” *wóíáyō*, *yáni pátsēgī*, “O! my mother has died.”

*yóúwā!* expressive of joy and surprise; e. g. *yóúwā*, *kídāni dātši*, “ah! my work is done.”

---



---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### MECHANICAL CONSTRUCTION OF PROPOSITIONS.

---

#### I. *Simple Propositions.*

§. 122. In simple propositions the subject almost invariably stands before the predicate. This will here be illustrated by a number of examples.

##### 1. *Indicative Propositions.*

###### a. *Positive—*

<i>Álla mbétši</i> , “there is a God.”		<i>ši létši</i> , “he is gone.”
<i>wu páńgín</i> , “I hear.”		<i>ándi tsasunúyē</i> , “we shall die.”



*Note 1.* In propositions like *tšítsa sándi ndísō*, the expressed subject had better be taken as in apposition to the subject implied in the verb, and the whole translated, "they arose, both of them."

*Note 2.* The common order of words is inverted, when the statement is made that what precedes is a quotation (comp. Lat. *inquit*. E. *says he*); as, *yčtsarámī ganyá? gónō šírō komándē*, "dost thou believe? said our Lord to him;" *loktéji tšinyen? gonō yānáyē*, "at what o'clock shall we rise? said my mother;" *kánūtę rúsganí, kónō kényérirō búltiyē*, "I did not see the fire, said the hyena to the weasel;" *pántsan ndúma bágō, tšę ába pérōberō yā pérōbeyē*, "there is nobody in their house, says the girl's mother to the girl's father."

*b. Negative—*

*mei tšeni*, "the king did not come."

*mei tšin bágō*, "the king does not come at all."

*wu pánganí*, "I do not hear it."

*ándi tsasunúyendé*, "we shall not die."

2. *Interrogative Propositions.* These differ from indicative propositions merely by the *tone*, or by the affix *ba*, which is the sign of interrogation—

*‘Allā mbétsi?* or *‘Allā mbétsiba?* "is there a God?"

*mei tšiba?* or *mei tši?* "has the king come?"

*mei tšin bágōba?* "does the king not come at all?"

*ándi tsasunúyendé?* or *tsasunúyendéba?* "shall we not die?"

3. *Imperative Propositions* can have their subject either expressed or included in the verb. In the first case, the subject likewise precedes the verb.

*léné!* or *ni léné!* "go thou!"

*lénogō!* or *nándi lénogō!* "go ye!"

*lénýogō!* or *ándì lénýogō!* "let us go!"

*áte lénemmi!* or *nì áte lénemmi!* "do not go!"

4. When the predicate is a substantive or adjective, it simply follows the subject, and is not connected with it by a copula; but instead of the latter it sometimes has the affix *gō*.

*Allā meì,* or *Allā meìgō,* "God is the king."

*ši meína,* or *ši meínagō,* "he is a prince."

*ši málam ganí,* "he is not a prince," or *ši málam ganígō,* id.

*wu meítram ganí,* or *meítram ganígō,* "I am not a princess."

## II. *Complex Propositions,* with complements of the subject and predicate.

§. 123. *The complements of the subject* may be adjectives, numerals, possessive pronouns, and substantives, either in apposition, or in the genitive case, and participles which may likewise be complemented.

1. *Adjectives and numerals* always follow the subject —  
*ām wúra nā meíbērō létsei,* "great men went to the king."  
*kām tálagā íši,* "a poor person came."  
*meì ndì lẹbála tsádin,* "two kings made war."  
*pẹr úgu tsagáši,* "five horses have run away."

2. *Possessive Pronouns* are always suffixed to the subject, even when the latter is defined by adjectives or numerals—

*kemándē kúra,* "our Lord is great."

*abántsa pẹrntsa tsaládī* "their father has sold their horses."

*mánāni tìlō mbétši,* literally, "my word one is there,"  
*i. e.* "I have one word to say."

*pẹrni kúrā nui,* "my large horse died."

*mánāntsa tsírē gúltsei,* "they have spoken their true words," *i. e.* "the truth."

3. *Nouns in the genitive case, or in apposition* may precede the subject; but generally they follow it—

*Bornúbē mei kām kúra* and *mei Bornúbē kām kúra*, “the king of Bornu is a great man.”

*abánibē nēm kánuyē tsébuí* and *nēm abánibē kánuyē tsébuí*, “fire consumed my father’s house.”

*mei abáni lúptši* and *abáni mei lúptši*, “my father, the king, has died.”

‘*Ali yayáni létši* and *yayáni ‘Ali létši*, “Ali, my brother, has gone.”

*kām dége, kálíá, tsagáši*, and *kílíá, kām dége, tsagáši*, “slaves, four in number,” *i. e.* “four slaves have run away.”

4. *Participles, with their complements* before them, follow the subject—

*bárbū kām ’dí kálgūni nlagédāna mína tílōma manátsāní*, “the two thieves who were stealing my shirt did not speak one word.”

*wu nāntsúrō léngūna tátántse rúskī*, “going to his place, I saw his child.”

§. 124. The complements of the predicate may be adverbs, a next and remote object, and an infinitive, which may itself be variously complemented.

1. The *adverbs* may stand either before or after the predicate, yea, even before the subject—

*bárbū ílān kádiō*, or *bárbū kádiō ílān*, or *ílan bárbū kádiō*, “the thief came softly.”

*per dúarō úgérémtšin*, or *per úgérémtšin dúarō*, or *dúarō per úgérémtšin*, “the horse gallops quickly.”

The same position is occupied by substantives which are used adverbially—

*wu tsédin kádiskō*, or *wu kádiskō tsédin*, or *tsédin wu kádiskō*, “I came by land.”

*ši múskōn kítā*, or *ši kítā múskōn*, or *múskōn ši kítā*, “he caught it with the hand.”

2. *The next and remote objects* can occupy all possible positions with regard to the subject, to the predicate, and to each other—

*ši wúrō dá šō*, or *ši wúrō šō dā*, or *wúrō ši dá šō*, or *dá ši wúrō šō*, or *ši dá šō wúrō*, or *dā wúrō ši šō*, “he gave me meat.”

*wu per meírō kúskō*, or *wu meírō per kúskō*, or *meírō wú per kúskō*, or *per wu meírō kúskō*, or *wú per kúskō meírō*, or *per meírō wu kúskō*, “I brought a horse to the king.”

*kām kúnāyē ngúbu tsétšin bágō*, “a famine does not kill many people.”

Sometimes the object and its verb are separated from each other by another verb—

*wúgā dánem šigóremba?* “wouldest thou stop and ask me?”

*wu kū lífā kórōbē, léngin, dúgō Állāyē pélēsēgē, búskē*, “I ate to-day the corpse of an ass, which God showed me as I walked.”

The position occupied by the next and remote object, can also be occupied by an object and an adverb, or an object and a noun used adverbially—

*ši kitábugā ilān gótši*, or *ši ilān gótši kitábugā*, or *ilān ši kitábugā gótši*, or *kitábugā ši ilān gótši*, or *ši kitábugā gótši ilān*, or *kitábugā ilān ši gótši*, “he took the book softly.”

*ši búltugā kášagarnyin tsétši*, or *ši kášagarnyin tsétši*

*búltugā*, or *kášagarnyin ši búltugā tšétši*, or *búltugā ši kášagarnyin tšétši*, or *ši búltugā tšétši kášagarnyin*, or *búltugā kášagarnyin ši tšétši*, “he killed a hyena with the sword.”

When a proposition contains an adverb, in addition to a next and remote object, the adverb has the same freedom of position.

*wu bisgā per meirō kúskō*, or *bisgā wu per kúskō meirō*, or *wu per kúskō bisgā meirō*, or *wu per kúskō meirō bisgā*, or *wu per bisgā meirō kúskō*, “yesterday I brought a horse to the king.”

3. The same freedom of position is also extended to an infinitive and its complements which may qualify the predicate—

*wu kúyinturō létē rágeskī*, or *wu létē rágeskī kúyinturō*, or *kúyinturō wu létē rágeskī*, &c., “I like to go far away.”  
*wu pérni kásugurō ntsátō wángī*, or *kásugurō wu pérni ntsátō wángī*, or *wu pérni ntsátō wángī kásugurō*, or *wu kásugurō pérni ntsátō wángī*, “I will not take my horse to market.”

### III. Junction of Propositions.

§. 125. In connecting propositions with each other, various means can be adopted—

1. *Conjunctions*, e. g. *nì wúrō kídā šúlem kwōyá, wu nígā beántsóskō*, “if thou workest for me, I will pay thee.”
2. *The Conjunctional Mood*: *nì abánigā rúmīa ši labártē gúlentsonō*, “when thou shalt see my father, he will tell thee the news.” *wu pátorō wólteskē léngā, am pátoḃēyē wúrō*, “ndán kádìm?” *tsányā wéyē “káragan kádiskō” néskīa, am pátoḃē wúro “tšírē gúlēmī” tšédábá?* “if I

return home, and the people at home say to me, 'whence camest thou?' and I tell them, 'I came from the forest,' will the people at home say to me, 'thou hast spoken truth?'

*wu, kúnurō sunōtēm lēgasgēnyā, kánu rúsganı,* "I, when thou sentest me for fire, and I had gone, did not see fire."

3. Sometimes propositions remain formally *unconnected*, which, in other languages, are joined by conjunctions.

a. Interrogative subordinate propositions:

*nǵáldōndē rúiyē tsúlugíbá,* "let us see whether our beans have come up."

*wíné abáni tšiba,* "see, if my father has come."

- b. Subordinate propositions expressive of the object of a principal proposition, they being included between the subject and predicate of the latter. The conjunction omitted here is the propositional article, which is also frequently omitted in other languages—

*mei Fulátāwa tsagášin tsúrui,* "the king sees the Phula flee."

*ši tšéntsę dáǵel tsétei nótšǐ,* "he knew that the monkey held his rope."

*tšā wu tsábālan wúa nyúa kǵlā fóktsēiyē nōngsganı kwōya,* "if I had known that you and I would have met."

*bárbu ši kandirayē šǵā gurétsin nótšęní.* "the thief knows not that the hunter watches him."

4. There is in Kanuri a peculiar *encasement of propositions*, one proposition being, as it were, parenthetically inserted or encased in another, which we have sometimes to express by a participial construction, or a conjunction.

*ši tsúrō pərbē, ágō tsúrō pərbēn degánā nótšēní, tšijunáté,*  
 “he who had bought the belly of the horse (what was  
 in the belly of the horse he knew not.)”

*sundígā dábūntsa fónnēm tei,* “catch them and tie their  
 neck.”

*wōkítātē, málamwa bóbōtsa, karánógō,* “call the priests,  
 and read the letter.”

*sándi nášā tlon, méiyē ná tšō, náptsāna,* “they were sitting  
 on one side, the king having given them a place.”

*ándi nā pěrōnēmbērō, kámurō rágē nyē, kásyē,* “we are  
 come to thy daughter, as we thought we would like  
 her for a wife.”

*nā nigalāróbērō, ši kérébē tségā, kádiō,* “he came to the  
 place of the ram, following the footsteps of the dog.”

*kámūtē wúrō nigā dé šé!* “as for this woman, making mar-  
 riage, give her to me,” *i.e.* give her to me in marriage.”

*nigulō kēndegeilan, ām 'gāsō šígā tsáru, pártšē,* “the bird  
 flies from the court, the people all seeing it.”

*nā dágelsō kasálteirō, kóuntšē ganá gótšē, gerátšē, tšī,* “he  
 came to the place where the monkeys bathe, having  
 taken to himself a little stone and concealed it.”

*pěrōntšē karagārō kóayē gótšē gágī,* “the man took her  
 girl, and entered the forest.”

*karáminítē, wu šiga sóbā abániberō, nigā dískē, yiskī,* “as  
 for my younger sister, I gave her in marriage to  
 my father’s friend.”

*nírō gerángē kíguskō,* “I hid it, and brought it to thee.”

*kámū sandirō kómbū gótšē kéinyā,* “the woman having  
 taken food and given it to them.”

*abántsurō níkī gótšē tšō,* “she took water and gave it to  
 her father.”

*átē, bíndiyē nigā tšē góntšēní,* “lest a beast come and  
 take thee.”

*wu béla gaulérō tátāni táskē lēnškin,* “I will take my child  
 and go to another town.”

## CHAPTER XIV.

## SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§. 126. The *proper names* of persons are generally accompanied by that of a parent, in the following manner: the *patronymics of males* are derived from the name of the *mother* by means of the adjective-termination *mi*, and the *patronymics of females* from that of the *father* by means of the adjective-termination *ram*.

1. *Names of males*—

‘*Ali Eísāmi*, i.e. “*Ali*, whose mother was *Eísā*.”

‘*Atši Kódōmi*, i.e. “*Atši*, whose mother was *Kódō*.”

‘*Ngóama Nánāmi*, i.e. “*Ngóama*, whose mother was *Nánā*.”

‘*Mastáfā Kélūmi*, i.e. “*Mastáfā*, whose mother was *Kélū*.”

‘*Ibram Kárēmi*, “*Ibram*, whose mother was *Kárē*.”

2. *Names of females*—

*Eísā Magátširam*, i.e. “*Eísa*, whose father was *Magátšī*.”

*Lígeram Wúmarram*, i.e. “*Lígeram*, whose father was *Omar*.”

*Kárū Aşmáram*, i.e. “*Kárū*, whose father was *Aşema*.”

*Pésām ‘Atširam*, i.e. “*Pesam*, whose father was ‘*Atšī*.”

*Tsárū Búgarram*, i.e. *Sarah*, whose father was *Bugar*.”

The *profession* or *office of the father* is often added to the proper name in a similar manner—

1. *Names of males*—

‘*Ali Eísāmi málammi*, i.e. “*Ali*, whose mother was *Eísa*, and whose father was a priest.”



‘*Ibram Kēlūmi mālamtīmī*, “*Ibram*, whose mother was *Kēlūmi*, and whose father was a cattle-owner.”  
*Dāla kōganāmi*, i.e. “*Dala*, whose father was a soldier.”

2. Names of females—

*Mārīam ‘Atšīram mālamram*; i.e. “*Mary*, whose father was the priest *Atšī*.”

*Kāru kōganāram*, i.e. “*Karu*, whose father was a soldier.”

*Eīsā bēlamāram*, i.e. “*Eisa*, whose father was a magistrate.”

§. 127. The sons of kings and of the first minister of war (*keigama*) are termed *meina*, and the daughters *meiram*. But both these words have the peculiarity of being placed *before* the proper name, as substantives, corresponding to our “prince” and “princess;” although originally they appear to have been real adjectives. In order to express whether a prince or princess is the son or daughter of the king or of the first minister of war, *meimī* and *meiram*, or *keigamāmi* and *keigamāram* are respectively joined to the name.

Children of the king—

*meina Būgar meimī*, “prince Bugar.”

*meina Eīsāmi meimī*, “prince Eisami.”

*meina Mūsā meimī*, “prince Moses.”

*meiram Tsārā meiram*, “princess Sarah.”

*meiram Eīsa meiram*, “princess Eīsa.”

*meiram Kēlū meiram*, “princess Kēlu.”

Children of the *keigamā*—

*meina ‘Alī keigamāmi*, “prince Ali.”

*meina Ibrām keigamāmi*, “prince Ibrahim.”

*meiram Tsārā keigamāram*, “princess Sarah.”

*meiram ‘Ašā keigamāram*, “princess Asha.”

*meiram Būgarram keigamāram*, “princess Bugarram.”

The grandsons of a king and of his first minister of war are termed *meidugū*, and the granddaughters *kīngī*. But the king's grandchildren add to their name *meināmi* and *meināram*, and the *keigama*'s grandchildren, *keigamāmi* and *keigamāram*.

*meidugū* *‘Ali meināmi*, “prince Ali.”

*kīngī Tsārā meināram*, “princess Sara.”

*meidugū Būgar keigawāmi*, “prince Bugar.”

*kīngī Kārē keigamāram*, “princess Kare.”

*Note.*—The children of a *meidugū* and *kīngī* have no further distinguishing title, but merely add to their own that of their parents, like other people—*‘Ali meidugū*, *‘Ali kīngīmi*, *Eisa meidugūrām*.

When the king is addressed, the word *kōma*, which, like our “Lord,” is also used in addressing God, is usually added after the word *mei*, e.g. *mei komāni*, “my lord king.”

§. 128. The Kánurī language has no words exactly corresponding to our “Mr.,” “Mrs.,” “Sir,” “Madam,” and in their stead it uses terms which properly denote family-relations. These terms can be used with or without the proper name, and have generally the suffix of the first person singular of the possessive pronoun.

*yáya*, = “great grandfather,” “great grandmother,” is used in addressing extremely old people, who are thereby designated as being able to be somebody's real great grandparents, a thing considered most honourable, e.g. *yáyāni*, “my great grandfather!”  
*yáyāni ‘Ali*, “my great grandfather Ali;” *yáyāni Eísā*.

*kagá* = “grandfather,” “grandmother,” is used in addressing aged persons, if, by way of compliment, one wishes to express himself so much their junior, that he could be their real grandchild, e.g. *kagāni*, “my grandfather;”

*kagáni 'Ibrām*, "my grandfather Ibram;" *kagáni Tsírā*, "my grandmother Sarah."

*āba* = "father" and *yā* = "mother" are used, the first in addressing males, and the second in addressing females, to whom one wishes to show filial reverence. This is the usual mode of address, answering to our "Mr." and "Mrs."—*abāni*, "my father;" *yāni*, "my mother;" *abāni Búgar*, "father Bugar;" *yāni Kārē*, "mother Kare."

*yayá* = "elder brother," and "elder sister" is used in addressing males and females whom one considers older than oneself, and yet not old enough to be one's parents, e.g. *yayāni*, "my elder brother;" *yayāni Dálā*, "elder brother Dala;" *yayāni 'Amsa*, "elder sister Amsa."

*karāmi* = "younger brother, younger sister," is used in addressing males and females whom one considers younger than oneself, and yet not so young as to be one's children; e.g. *karāminí*, "my younger brother;" *karāminí Suleíman*, "my younger brother Solomon;" *karāminí Sábēa*, "my younger sister Sabea."

*tāta* = "child, son, or daughter," is used in addressing those whom one considers so much younger as to admit of one's being their parent, e.g. *tātāni*, "my son;" *tātāni 'Isā*, "my son Jesus," also *tātāni kēngalī Isa*, id. If one addresses a female, *pērō* is necessarily added after *tātāni*, e.g. *tātāni pērō*, "my daughter;" *tātāni pērō Ņgoálí*, "my daughter Ngoali."

*dígō* = "grandchild, grandson, and granddaughter," is used in addressing youths and children over whom age and experience gives one the superiority of grandparents—*dígōni*, "my grandson;" *dígōni Músa*, "my grandson Moses;" *dígōni Áúa*, "my granddaughter Eve."

*yayáři* = "great grandchild, great grandson, great granddaughter," is used by very old persons in addressing young people—*yayáriní*, "my great grandchild;" *yayáriní Edírísa*, "my great grandson Edirisa;" *yayáriní Magáltum*, "my great granddaughter Magaltum."

§. 129. A peculiar use of certain other substantives may here be noticed:

*diniā* or *dīniā* is often used when we predicate a thing of the *grammatical* subject—

*dīniā kau dābū*, lit. “the world is noon,” *i.e.* “it is noon.”

*dīniā bunētšī*, lit. “the world has become night,” *i.e.* “it has become night.”

*dīniā bīnēmtšī*, lit. “the world has cold season,” *i.e.* “it is cold season.”

*dīniā nūngalūtšī*, lit. “the world has rainy season,” *i.e.* “it is rainy season.”

*dīniā bántenyēwa*, lit. “the world is hazy,” *i.e.* “it is hazy.”

*dīniā kīnā kadīnyā*, “when a famine had come.”

*dīniā nēmtsēlām*, “the sky is darkness,” *i.e.* “there is darkness.”

*dīniā tšīšī*, “there is a commotion, an uproar.”

*kāma*, “companion, associate,” is used for our “other,” as the Hebrew עֲרֵךְ and אֶרֶךְ.

*wūtę kōaigā kāmānēm*, “as for me, a man thy fellow,” *i.e.* “who am a man as well as thou, like thyself.”

*būrgōwa kāmāntsūa kālā fóktsāna*, “one eunning one met with the other.”

*ndūndē kāmāntsēgā kōtseyāyē, ni tšūrum*, “thou shalt see whoever of us surpasses the other.”

*ágō tilōrō dīmmāté, kāmāntsūrō dīmmi kwōyá*, “if what thou doest to the one, thou doest not to the other.”

*nā*, “place,” is used in connexions where other languages employ the word “hand,” or personal pronouns, or even the verb “to have.”

*mūlam wōkīta nānyīn tšémāgī*, “the priest took the letter from my hand.”

*árgem nántsán ganá ganá tsémāge*, "he takes very little millet from their hand."

*kérmei nántsən māsķē*, "I take the kingdom from him."

*nā komāndēbērō lēgedányā, komāndērō* : " *ándi nānémmō kásyē.*" *Komāndē sandírō* : " *áfi nányin mánuwē?*"

"when they had come to our Lord, they said to our Lord : 'we are come to thee.' Our Lord said to them : 'what do you want of me?'"

*wu kamágeŋ bágō nányin*, "I have no honey."

For *ró* and *kálā*, see §. 193; for *kām*, *kóá*, *kōónigā*, see §.

*sányā*, "profession," has this peculiarity, that, when the profession is specified, it is never done by the concrete, but always by the abstract noun.

*kríge* or *nógana sányānígō*, "I am a soldier by profession."

*yántē sányāntsúgō*, "he is a fisherman by profession."

*sábr sányā sōbānibēgō*, "my friend is a merchant by profession."

*ši nándirā* or *bírā sányāntsúgō*, "he is a hunter by profession."

The same rule holds good in reference to *kágalla*, "rank, office," e. g. *ši kágallāntse nátsalla*, "he is a general by rank."

*kágallānɛm nɛmbélābá?* "art thou a magistrate by office?"

#### *Use of the Cases—Nominative.*

§. 130. Few languages having developed a real *Nominative* termination, it is natural that the Bòrnu should not be very rigid in its use, but often omit it. A noun is often sufficiently marked out as the nominative, when it stands in the proximity of other words with oblique case-terminations. But the use of the nominative termination is a means by which the subject of a proposition can enjoy a more extensive *freedom of position*, without producing any ambiguity in the

construction. It would seem, that this nominative suffix (*ye*) is generally long, but not always.

*kāṇāyē sandīgā tsétei*, "hunger seized them."

*túlōye kāmāntségā tsúgōre*, "one asks the other."

*kāṅṅmyē sandīgā gótse*, "sleep overwhelms them."

*tšílwā ṅgampátuyē tšin gótse*, "the cat takes the rat in the mouth."

*ṅem gálijūbē kāmuyē tsébū*, "fire consumes the house of the rich man."

*tsa mei Bórnumārō kōganawántsīyē gulgēda*, "said his soldiers to the king at Bornu."

§. 131. The *Nominative termination* is sometimes retained before another case-termination—

*wáyērō rásīde kām yásge séogō* ! "give me three men !"

*yáte málamyērō* ! "carry him to the priest !"

*nandíyērō állū barga tsaké* ! "may God bless you !"

*wáyēga sáte* ! "carry me !"

*kitábnyēga gótsei*, "they took a book."

*árgalámyēga gótsei*, "they took a pen."

This may be the case, even when the *accusative termination* which should follow it is omitted, so that, in fact, the nominative becomes an accusative—

*yāntsīyē tšírūní, abāntsīyē tšírūní*, "he cannot see his mother, he cannot see his father."

*dátīyē ṅgāsō dénogō*, "cook all this flesh."

*bélan kāmuyē déptsāní*, "they do not leave a woman in the town."

*árgemyē rúntsēn ganánogō, tšírāyē rúntsēn ganánogo*, "lay down the corn by itself and the sand by itself."

*yaláyē wútsi, áṅṅmyē wútsi*, "he looked at the north, he looked at the south."

#### *Genitive.*

§. 132. With regard to the *position of the genitive* it may be

said, that, in most cases, it immediately follows the word which it qualifies. But this order, although predominant, is yet not unfrequently reversed; and sometimes there is even another word intervening between the genitive and its governing noun. The following instances will illustrate these three different cases—

1. *mána ǎllábē*, “word of God.”  
*tšírē mánabē*, “the truth of the word.”  
*kánu nēm abánibē tsébuí*, “fire consumed my father’s house.”  
*kitábu yayánibē šē*, “give me my brother’s book.”
2. *kúguibē kúnā yétsēmin?* “canst thou destroy the appetite of fowls.”  
*kóábē tšē wúitšē*, “he looses the man’s rope.”  
*táta dúlǐma sǎbǎntšibē mána pǎnyǎnyǎ*, “the leprous boy having heard his friend’s word.”  
*šímā pǎrǒtibē kóá, tšē*, “he shall be the girl’s husband, said he.”  
*ám wúra kaúbē tšou pǎngédányǎ*, “when the great men had felt the heat of the sun.”
3. *ngampátū tsúbā wátšín kúguibē*, “the cat sees the way of the fowls.”  
*níkǐ tsúlǒri ngǎlǒbē*, “the water of the beans boiled.”  
*ǎjǐ rágēm krǐgibē?* “what (implement) of war dost thou like?”

§. 133. Of the various relations expressed by the genitive, that of *possession* predominates (*genitivus possessivus*)—

- kúlǐa ǎllábē* or *kǎntšǐ ǎllábē*, “servant of God.”  
*pátō abánibē*, “my father’s house,”  
*táta yayánibē*, “my brother’s son.”  
*bérni méibē*, “the king’s residence.”  
*tsúneí kǎmubē*, “the woman’s clothes.”  
*ǎndí Bǎrnubi*, “we of Bornu, or belonging to Bornu.”

The *material*, also, of which a thing consists, its *quality* or the *profession, rank, and office* which one has, can be expressed by a noun in the genitive, (*genitivus qualitativus*)—

*lītsām lijulābē*, “ a bridle of silver.”

*lītsām sūbē*, “ a bridle of iron.”

*kóšša gēsgābē*, “ a wooden spoon.”

*kóšša lijulābē*, “ a silver spoon.”

*ngáwa kárambē*, “ a shield made of an alligator’s hide.”

*ngáwa ngáranbē*, “ a shield made of a wild-cow’s hide.”

*kášagar sūbē*, “ an iron sword.”

*sóbāntse málabē*, “ his friend, the priest.”

*sóbāntse kērdibē*, “ his friend, the heathen.”

*abáni bēlamābē pátsegī*, “ my father, the magistrate, has died.”

*sóbā meínābē kándirābē pátsegī*, “ the hunter, the prince’s friend, has died.”

*níte sóbāni tširēbē*, “ thou art my friend of a truth ; or, my true, real friend.”

*ni pátōbē, wu dēlibē*, “ thou art in the house, I in the field ; or, thou belongest to the house, I to the field.”

The lack of a *partitive* use of the genitive is supplied by the postposition *lan*, or by placing the whole of which part is referred to absolutely at the head of a proposition—

*táta kánibē ndūlan tīlō kolótse tīlō gótse*, “ of the two kids he leaves one and takes one.”

*tsánei ilíji rágem?* lit. “ as to cloth, what sort dost thou like? *i. e.* “ what sort of cloth dost thou like?”

§. 134. A genitive whose *governing word* is *not* expressed has frequently to be rendered in English by, “ men, people, followers, disciples,” or by words like, “ work, office, duty, speech, life, suffering,” &c.—



*nábi* *‘Isabēté sándi kámū tilō gótsa*, “the followers of the prophet Jesus take one wife.”

*állabēma šīgō tsq.* “he said, that he belonged to God; or, was God’s servant.”

*kóabē tsúlugī*, “the man’s business is over.”

*abánibē dátši*, “my father’s speech, or work, or life, is over.”

*bélamābē béla guréta*, “it is the magistrate’s to keep the town.”

*kárgunmābē kárgun kéntšo*, “it is the doctor’s to give medicine.”

*búltū dāgel tilō dáubēn tsétā*, “the hyena takes one monkey by the neck.”

*kámū kómāndēbē tserám̄bī*, “the woman paid her debt (*kásu*) to our Lord,” *i. e.* she died.

*ándi šiga múskōben teiyendé kwōyá* “if we do not take him by his hand.”

*kasgimābērō légonō*, “he went to the diviner’s.”

*abánibērō léngin*, “I go to my father’s.”

*állabēma šīgō*, “God’s will be done.”

*fúgubēmātiyē tsúrānī*, “he who was before saw it not.”

*wu kērmēi šībēn máskī*, “I have taken the kingdom from him.”

*wúbē dátši*, “it is all over with me, I am as good as dead.”

§. 135. The Kanuri, not admitting of composition, has sometimes to make use of a *genitive*, where *we* can *compound*—

*rúngō árgembē*, “millet flour.”

*kanḡádī pēbē*, “cow-horn.”

*kídā kúlōbē*, “farm-work.”

*tábēra nēmbē*, “house-door.”

*ngampátū káragābē*, “bush-cat.”

*ši kárgūa tsírēbē*, “he is true-hearted.”

Sometimes the *genitive* is used in a connexion where it must be rendered by our “for, to, in order to, against, towards” —

*kátsumū kāmūnībēn kágēn wūrō šīmā*, “he having given me clothes both for my wife and myself.”

*kēlfūnēmtē lebaíabēbá?* “is this thy matron for trade?”

*béogō gégā tsáltābē*, “axes for cutting trees.”

*kátkunni tsétēnī*, lit. “it does not reach my load,” *i. e.* “it is not yet a load for me.”

*sóbānī nēm kāmuntsībē tēmtšī*, “my friend built an house for his wife.”

*kárgun káramābē*, “a charm against witches.”

*kóā tsábā pāntsībē gótšē*, “the man took the road towards his home.”

*ágō kómbuntsábē tsífū*, “he buys something for their food.”

*tsálintšē kou gótibē širō tšin, béogōntšē gégā kántibē širō tšin*, “he gives him his bag for taking stones, and his axe for cutting wood.”

*kúmōntšē níkī ntsábē gótšī*, “he has taken his calabash for drinking water.”

§. 136. It is surprising, that the Genitive termination is often added to an *inflected verb*, or even to a longer *proposition*, similarly to the Hebrew, where a noun can appear in the state of construction before a proposition, *e. g.* 1 Sam. xxv. 15, *מִן־לְיָמֵי הַתְּהַלְכָנִי אֶתָּא*; and it is still more surprising that, even in this latter case, there can be an ellipsis of the governing noun, when it may be gathered from the context,

*lókṭē tšínógōbē*, lit. “the hour of ‘rise ye.’” *i. e.* “the hour when God will say ‘rise!’” *i. q.* *lókṭē tšítibē*, “the hour of rising,” *i. e.* “of the resurrection.”

*nemé ‘ágō yásgetē ndásō nigúbugōbē’ nemé badígonō*, “he began to tell the tale of ‘which three things are the greatest?’”

*kóā gédirō debátsēgenābētē sirtogō*, “flay the one (*sc.* sheep) of that man who has killed it towards the east.”

*múnu wásilī rúntšē nemētšimbē šī pántšī*, “he heard the word which the white man was saying by himself,”

which is the same as : *mánu wásilī rúntse nemétsē-nāté šī pántšī.*

*tatoáñemwa bu, dúgō lénógōbē,* "thou and thy children may eat, before you go."

§. 137. If a word is defined both by a *noun in the genitive and a possessive pronoun*, the latter is suffixed to that word, and the genitive follows it, in the same way as adjectives do, a construction which we also meet with in Hebrew, *e. g.* *עֲצֻמַת־יְהוָה*, "my refuge of strength," *i. e.* "my strong refuge"—

*kásunindē ñgádōbē mányē,* "let us seek our bean-seed," *i. e.* "beans for seed."

*gōálevántse ñkíbē tsífū,* "he buys his water-calabash," *i. e.* "a calabash to fetch water in."

*létendē kábēté,* "this our going of to-day."

*neméntsū áširbē nemétsē,* "they speak their word of secrecy," *i. e.* "their secret word."

*kámūntse ñgábē,* "his wife of matrimony," *i. e.* "his married wife."

*kárevntse krígibē tsáptse,* "he takes his war-instruments together."

*kášintse kómbubē širō tšin,* "he gives him his provision of food for the journey."

§. 138. But generally the genitive and its governing noun, forming only *one logical word*, are also to such an extent dealt with as a *grammatical unit*, that case-terminations and pronouns—often both at the same time—are affixed to the word in the genitive, instead of that qualified by it.

*sándi nā sábanábērō létša,* "they go to my friend's place."

*nā ām wúrabērō ísēskī,* "I came to the place of the great men."

*wu táta máham kúrabēga rúskī,* "I saw the son of the great priest."

*tšī pčrō meibē pátsegeñbērō pčtsege*, “he holds it to the mouth of the king’s diseased daughter.”

*kóayē pčran tsúrō kámubēn tsutúlūge*, “the man takes the leg out of the midst of the fire.”

*ñgō, wu řseškī mána bísgábčturō*, “behold, I have come on account of the word of yesterday.”

*tšī tšínnábēn, dátse*, “he stops at the entrance of the gate.”

*ába pčrōbēga lafeátse*, “he salutes the father of the girl.”

*wu nā kámubčturō lčgasgányā*, “I having gone to the place of this fire.”

*kásugū bčla gadčbērō létsei*, “they went to the market of another town.”

*nā létč kábā tilōbērō sandígā kčsātō*, “they carried them to a place of the distance of one day’s walk,” *i q. nā létč kábā tilowāro sandígā kčsātō*.

*šči nđisō kálígī kánčarbčyč súktse*, “a thorn of the kangar-tree pricks both my legs.”

§. 139. When a noun is both defining and defined (the former in regard to one that precedes, and the latter in regard to one that follows) it *may* assume the genitive termination, but more generally it is without it—

*sártč kásugū bčlamášibē tsčte*, “it is the time for the market of a neighbouring town.”

*kām tšī tšínnábē*, “a porter.”

*tíge pčrbē kóabē kirúnyā*, “he having seen the skin of the man’s horse.”

*pátō bčlāma bčlāberō lčgonō*, “he went to the house of the magistrate of the town.”

§. 140. The genitive is *pleonastic*, when it is connected with a possessive pronoun, just as in the German provincialism—“meines Knaben sein Buch,” or “meines Freundes sein Name”—

*yíntčmā kitábubē ñgúbūntse nōgčda*, “on that day they knew the abundance of books.”

*mālamnībē tsūntsēte, kōa mālam Eīsamī*, "my priest's name was, priest Eīsamī."

*āba pērōbē tātābē lāfēāntšē tsēmāgē*, "the girl's father accepts the boy's salutation."

*belātībē tsūntšē Kalālāwa*, "that town's name was Kalalawa."

*meītībē abāntšē kūra*, "he was the king's great uncle."

*meībē karāmīntšē meīna bōbōtšē*, "the king's sister calls the prince."

*kandīra tīlōbē kīdāntšē ām wūrayē tsārui*, "the great man had seen the work of the one hunter."

§. 141. The genitive is sometimes *avoided* by the use of a possessive pronoun or an adjective in *wa*.

*māna hāmma pāntšīn bāgō*, "he did not hear the word of any body."

*nēm kānībē tšīnnāntšē pēremtša*, "they open the door of the goat-house," i. q. *tšīnna nēm kānībē pēremtša*.

*kāliātē tsūntšē Tšētšē*, "that slave's name is Tshetshe, i. q. *tsū kāliātībē* &c.

*būnītē tsūntšē dāgun bōbōtšēi*, "they call the name of that fish Dagu," i. q. *tsū būnītībē*, &c.

*wu mīnātē pāntēntšē wāngana*, "I dislike the hearing of this word," i. q. *wu pāntē mīnātībē wāngana*.

*mei kāmuntšē tāta pērō kēāmbō*, "a king's wife brought forth a girl."

*dīmi dābuntšē kīlaktšī Potēro*, "he directed the sheep's head to the west."

#### *Dative.*

§. 142. The proper import of the dative appears to be that of motion towards a place, and therefore it is used after the question "whither?" Then, by applying the idea of motion to time, it is also used of *temporal* duration after the question, "how long?" But although this is its general force, it is sometimes used to indicate quiet rest in a

place after the question "where?" just as languages, which use prepositions, frequently express motion towards and rest in a place by the same preposition. And, accordingly, it is also used in a temporal sense after the question "when?"

*Note.* The dative termination is sometimes omitted, probably through carelessness of the speaker—

*gédi gásgā kúrābē létse*, "he went under a large tree."

*létsa nem lemánbē*, "they go to the warehouse."

§. 143. The dative used of *motion* or *direction* in *space*—

*kúlorō tátoántse bóbōtse*, "he calls his children to the farm."

*tšigāntsurō tsáke*, "he puts it into his bag."

*tšē dábuntsārō tseregéře*, "he ties a rope to their neck."

*búltū káragāntsurō abgátényā*, "the hyena having started for its forest."

*búltū tšín nántsārō, sandtšyē nā búltubērō tsei*, "the hyena comes to them, and they to the hyena."

*dími dábuntse Potērō kalátš. yāyé, kóa Gédírō káluktsege dímiğa Gédírō debátsegi*, "whenever the sheep had turned its neck to the west, the man turned it to the east, and slaughtered the sheep towards the east."

The dative used of *rest* in *space*—

*kámū tátāntsúa káñemmō bōgeđányā*, "when the woman and her child lay asleep."

§. 144. The dative used of *continuation* in *time*.

*kántāge ndírō nabgasgányā*, "he having sat down two months."

*kábū mágerō lēgónō*, "he went on one week."

*kábū yásgurō tsúrō níkībēn degeiyā*, "it having remained three days in water."

*kábū máge ndí, yásgegeirō tūssa*, "they wait for about two or three weeks."

*wu búnyērō kádískō*, "I came in the night, or by night."

*kábū ganārō kargúnýā*, "they having lived a few days."

§. 145. There is a kind of *absolute* dative, indicating a general relation or reference, which must be expressed in English by "as to, with regard to, according to." This use of the dative, however, does not appear to be very frequent.

*kām nūnan, kām ʾgányinturō ndásō ngúbugō?* "with regard to the dead and the living, who are the more numerous?"

*dīnar tsurórę kátkuntsurō*, "he takes gold according to his load," *i. e.* "as much as he could carry."

*mína nūnārō nótseñí*, "he knew not of the dead lion," *i. e.* "that the lion was dead."

§. 146. The *remote object* of doubly transitive verbs is always in the dative case, and especially also the *price* at which any thing is sold.

*wu kedrigā kígōręškō mána tilórō*, "I asked the old man for a word."

*ndágurō ládęmín?* "at how much dost thou sell it?"

*wu péni wútsenārō ladęskī*, "I have sold my cow for twelve dollars."

*ngúrdegīrō wúgā sędęnā*, "it has made me a lame man."

*sándi sóbāni bęlamārō ganátsei*, "they made my friend magistrate."

*wu sígā sóbānīrō kęręnęskī*, "I have chosen him for my friend."

*ši wúgā logóši ágō kómbubērō*, "he begged food of me."

*kúlōni rétsei náýā dęgurō*, "they divided my farm into four parts."

*mártegené mánāni kāmúnęmmō gúllé*, "please, tell my word to thy wife."

*kómāndégā kégorō, ágō kárgentsábērō*, "they asked our Lord concerning something they had at heart."  
*níga dērō kóltseiendé*, "we cannot let thee (*sc.* go) empty."  
*állā kábuntšē kúrugurō tšedé!* "may God make his days long!"

§. 147. In close connexion with its preceding use, the dative also indicates the person or thing for whose *benefit* or *harm* anything is done (= *dativus commodi et incommodi*)—

*málam sandírō állā logótšē*, "the priest begs God for them."  
*abáni nā kárgunmábērō létši wúrō*, "my father went to the doctor for me."  
*Áli nēm tēmšši kámuntsurō*, "Ali built a house for his wife."  
*wúrō kām mánógō!* "seek somebody for me!"  
*málam kárgun tšédē Fulátāsorō*, "the priest makes a charm against all the Phula."

§. 148. In the following examples, where the dative expresses the *purpose* or *object* of an action, it is analogous to the supine (see §. 262); and the difference is merely, that in these cases it is joined with a noun, whereas in the supine it requires an infinitive—

*wu níkírō léngin*, "I will go for water."  
*ágō gadérō ganí nānēm̄mō kúšyē*, "we have come to thee for nothing else."  
*kúrguligā lebálārō tšétā*, "he seizes the lion for a fight."  
*kámū gégšārō létšena*, "the woman is gone for wood."  
*káliāwa kām'di légeda šúgurō*, "two slaves went for grass."

§. 149. And in full contrast with its use just mentioned, the dative also marks the *cause*, *motive*, *reason*, from which an action proceeds, in which case it has to be expressed in English by "on account of, because of, from, through, by," &c.

*mána nyúa meínāwa neménuwáturō kádiskō*, "I am come on



account of the word which thou and the prince have been speaking.”

*mána átēmārō ni yīrēmīn?* “wilt thou cry because of this word.”

*nā meibērō nēmtálagārō létse,* “he goes to the king on account of his poverty.”

*kalígimō nūnātē tīgīntse degēndin, mána kátsallā krīgibērō,* “the dead camel’s skin shook at the word of the war-chief.”

*tátoántse ngásō kánārō tsásīrin,* “all his children cry from hunger.”

*ńgō. wu íšeskī mánāndē bísgābētūrō,* “behold, I have come because of our word of yesterday.”

*kúrrūntse tsaráganī nēmdibintsírō,* “they do not like the sight of him, because of his badness.”

*šiga állan māgínaganátēmārō, wúga kolóšī,* “he left me on account of my entreating him for God’s sake.”

#### *Accusative.*

§. 150. The accusative termination which seems to be often short, is as frequently omitted as it is used, because this case can generally be easily known from the context, even without distinction of form. It is especially under the following circumstances that the accusative termination can be omitted, without producing the slightest ambiguity—

1. When the subject is distinguished by the nominative termination—

*ngampátū kériyē gótse tsúndī,* “the dog took and swallowed the cat.”

*ágō rōnēmīyē tserágenáté,* “something which thy soul likes.”

*táta nyúldōbē tilō káruwāyē tsédirō kológányā,* “the storm having thrown one young bird upon the ground.”

2. When the subject stands *before* the object and verb—  
*mei keigamā bóbōtse,* “the king calls the general.”

*sóbāni kitábū gótšī*, "my friend has taken the book."  
*mālam tsúgūtō yayāni*, "the priest fetched my brother."

3. When the objective inflection of the verb points out the accusative—

*ši nēngalī rum bágō*, "thou dost not see him in the rainy season."

*kū wu állayē bánāsege*, "to-day God helps me."

*wu komándē serágī*, "the Lord loves me."

For the accusative with a nominative termination, see §. 130.

*Locative or Instrumental.*

§. 151. This case, as is intimated by its name, expresses the idea of *place* and of *instrumentality*, thus corresponding to the Latin ablative.

As *locative* it generally conveys the idea of quiet rest or existence in a place, but sometimes also the idea of motion from or to a place, in the same way as the prepositions "in, ἐν, 在" do not always denote rest in a place, but sometimes also motion.

1. The locative indicating *rest* or *existence* in a place—

*ngō sándi tsúrō nēmbēn*, "behold, they are within the house."

*kóāni kū páton bágō*, "my husband is not at home to-day."

*fúgū kemándēbēn dátsa*, "they stand before our Lord."

*wásilī nígā nōngurō šímdēn ntsákinbá?* "should the white man put thee to shame before our eyes?"

*pántsen sabaráte*, "he prepares himself in his house"

*ši tsúrō ngérgentsíbēn ši tsúrui*, "it was within his bag: he saw it."

2. The locative indicating *motion* to a place—

*ndúyē pántsen létse*, "every one goes to his house."

*wu nandígā yáskē bəlányin*, "I carry you to my country."

*léné belándon, bália wólténé*, "go to your town, and return to-morrow."

3. The locative indicating *motion from* a place—

*nátēman pántsurō wóltē lēgónō*, "he returned from this place, and went to his house."

*bérnyin túta karáminibē yóktse*, "he comes and drives my brother's son out of the capital."

*yínā kasuánēmin tšimérem*, "having given it, thou shalt recover from thy sickness."

§. 152. This case is also used in a *temporal* sense, after the question "when?" "since when?" and thus becomes a *casus temporalis*.

In this transfer of *local* relations to *time*, we have again a phenomenon which is not only negrotic, but human—

*kərbújin katámbum?* "in what year wast thou born?"

*méndē nēngalín yāyāni pádgigunō*, "last rainy season my brother died."

*kábū yásgen máseña nyásō dátšin*, "in three days all the provisions will be done."

*wu bényēn kádiskō*, "I came by night."

*sándi ganántsan sōbāgata*, "they were friends from their youth up."

*lēnēgenátēman kéogutō?* "did he bring it when I had left?"

*tšeinjin pátorō*, "when they had come home."

But quite as often, if not oftener, the time when any thing happens is indicated by no case-termination whatever—

*méndē mei lúbgonō*, "last year the king died."

*kū búnyē sōbāni tšē*, "this night my friend came."

*šē nēngalī rum bāgō, bīnem rum bāgō*, "thou dost not see him in the rainy or the cold season."

*tšuirō kábū tīlō tšítse*, "the boy rises one day."

*mínwa kúlō dískin*, "next year I will make a farm."

*ńǵalı ndí ńemte dátšin*, "in two years this house will be done."

§. 153. As *instrumental* this case marks the instrument or means by which an object is effected—

*áte kámıye ǵulóndon pélēsni*, "let no one point at me with his finger."

*tsánna bárēmābēté tsánna ńǵásōga kótši kėtšin*, "the heaven of the agriculturist surpasses every heaven in pleasantness."

*ńǵā rátal 'dın bēńgin*, "I will pay thee with two dollars."  
*pépeton kálántse baktse*, "he knocks his head with the wing."  
*ndúyāye kámāntsegā dúnōn kótšenāté*, "every one who exceeds the other in strength."

*wu dımi rátal dēgen yıbuskı*, "I bought a sheep for four dollars."

*keıgama Áli Marēmınyın śıgā bóbótsei*, "they call him by (the name of) Ali Maremi.

*kádi málamnyın śıgā bóbótsei ńemǵalántsurō*, "they call him by (the title of) 'priest-serpent,' on account of its harmlessness."

*kōa mei sōbāntse tılōa, pērōntse tılōa, káliāntse tılōa, sándi dēge, káligimōntsa tılon úgu*, "there was a king who had one friend, one daughter, and one slave; they were four of them, and with one camel five."

§. 154. Besides the case mentioned in §. 138., there are some others in which the *case-termination is separated from the word to which it more immediately belongs*, and which may here be brought under one view—

1. The noun, which is an appositional explanation of another, takes the case-termination, properly belonging to the noun explained—

*bēla, tsántse Dámāturúten nábgēda*, "they settled in a town of the name of Dámāturū."

*bēla tīlō, tsúntse Tságalārītēn, keigamā létse náptši,* “the general went and settled in a certain town of the name of Tságalārī.”

*ši kōa, abántse núnārō, rítši,* “he fears the man whose father is dead.”

*lénógō, mei kómānīrō, gúllogō!* “go and tell my lord, the king.”

*pátō sōbántse meínābērō létse,* “he went to the house of his friend, the prince.”

*kónō kērdiyē sōbántse málamwō,* “said the heathen to his friend, the priest.”

*yítēmté kǎlā nándi málamwāben,* “this sin is on the head of you, the priests.”

2. The last only of two or more nouns which are connected by the terminational conjunctions *n, nyin, wa,* bears the case-termination which properly belongs to each of them; just as we say, by an opposite omission, *e.g.* “the view of the master and his whole school.”

*mána ába keárin meínānbē,* “conversation of an old man and a prince.”

*lénégē, yānyúa abányūarō gúlégē,* “I go and tell it to my mother and my father.”

*kónō kōayē ngampátūa kériwārō,* “said the man to the cat and the dog.”

3. In like manner the termination stands only after the last of two words which are repeated for the purpose of expressing distribution or emphasis—

*tīlō tīlōn dánógō!* “stand up one by one!”

*ilā ilān nántsurō léné,* “go very softly to its place.”

*ilā ilān wólti,* “he returned very gently.”

4. When a noun is qualified by an adjective or a more

enlarged adjectival complement, the last of the qualifying words has the termination belonging to the noun—

*ši málam kúrātēgā rítši*, “he fears the great priest.”

*kāmū bínū tátāntse ganiārō tši*, “the woman gave the fish to her little boy.”

*nā létē kábū tilowārō sandīga kesátō*, “they carried them to a place at the distance of one day’s walk.”

§. 155. The preceding rule forms a natural transition to that most peculiar phenomenon of the Kanuri by which *case-terminations* are *suffixed to finite verbs*. This peculiarity occurs when the adjectival qualification of a noun is couched in a subordinate (relative) proposition.

Thus the case-terminations can be suffixed to—

1. A verb in the *Indefinite I*.

*nā kōuga ganátšinga kámuntsurō pēlētsege*, “he shows his wife the place where he laid down the stone.”

*nā dā ganányenturō kōlōgonógō*, “put it in the place where we keep the flesh.”

*táta ganá tsúrō díbalbēn tšinyē sandiya kírū*, “a little boy who came in the way saw them.”

*pátō kómāntse létšinnō lēgēda*, “they went to a house whose master slept.”

*mēiyē kōa kánirō wóltšinga bóbōtse*, “the king calls the man that can turn himself into a goat.”

*nā kómbū dētseirō sātē*, “they carry me to a place where they cook food.”

*kámpū mána kōa lemán sadáktšimbē pántsei*, “the blind men hear the word of the man that gives away goods as alms.”

*nā dáqēlsō kǵlāindō tsádinbērō kúdiō*, “he came to the place where all the monkeys were playing.”

*nū dáqēl tširimbērō tšia*, “he having come to the place where the monkey was crying.”

*nā kīngal tsúlūginnō úbgāte*, “he starts for the place where the sun rises.”

*táta wurátse, lelétšinnō wóltsia*, “the child having grown and become able to walk about.”

2. Rarely an *Aorist* or *Indefinite II*.

*kámū, ši kóantsúu, nígā kédōman táta tīlō gényā, tsasámbūnī*,  
“a woman and her husband had only one child since they were married.”

*ši nā tserágurō dégan létšin*, “it walks without where it likes.”

3. A verb in the *negative*—

*táta ganá áfima nótsenūrō kérmei abántsiyē tšínáté*,  
“when his father gives the government to the little boy who knows nothing.”

*mána yā kintan, táta kintan nígdēma tabáksānībē*, “narration of a stepmother and step-children never agreeing.”

4. A verb in the *participial*—

*mána bísgā neményenáturō kádískō*, “I come on account of the word which we were speaking yesterday.”

*lénnyē nā pērō gúllemmābéturō*, “let us go where the girl is of whom thou hast spoken.”

*kátsallā krígebē sundígā tsáruí gerátanan*, “the officers see them in the place where they were hidden.”

*per šírō meiyē tsebátsenūrō tsébā*, “he mounts the horse which the king had sent him.”

*kām šyúa tságādenátéga tsúruiya*, “when he sees the man with whom he had been quarrelling.”

*labár yántsa meínayē tsétanābē pántsei*, “they heard the news of their mother, whom the prince had caught.”

*nā wígā sunótēmmáturō wu légasgányā*, “I having gone to the place where thou sentest me.”

*kóayē kóá šírō fóksaganārō*, “the man said to the man whom they had given him.”

CHAPTER XV.  
SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

I. *Personal Pronouns.*

§. 156. When, per ellipsin, they stand for a whole proposition, *i. e.* when they express an answer, they regularly assume the emphatic suffix *ma* in the singular, and generally in the plural also (comp. §. 24. I. 1. of the Vei Grammar).

*ndú ném̄mō gágō?* “who entered the house?” Answer, *wáma*, “I.”

*ši ndú tserágō?* “whom does he like?” Answer, *níma*, “thee;” *andíma* and *andíga*, “us.”

But should the pronoun be accompanied by a negative, or express a question, the negative and interrogative particles take the place of the emphatic suffix—

*ndú kánāwa?* “who is hungry?” Answer, *wu ganí, šíma*, “not I, he.”

*ndú šírō gúltse?* “who told it him?” *níba?* “thou?”

§. 157. In English, propositions like the following, “went to the Crystal Palace to-day,” appear rather irregular, whereas in Latin the pronoun is *regularly* omitted in such cases. The Kanuri, in this respect, stands between the English and Latin, but much more resembles the former than the latter. If the pronoun is dispensed with in Kanuri, it does not give the impression of an actual omission, number and person being so fully indicated by the form of the verb alone; nevertheless, the joint use of pronoun and verb greatly preponderates—

*wu nāném̄mō íseškō*, “I am come to thee.”

*wu ntserágesešana lintárō*, “I like thee exceedingly.”

*áfíma šímmí*, “thou hast not given me any thing.”



§. 158. The personal pronouns are employed in a twofold manner, for the purpose of expressing *emphasis*; viz. first, when the proper subject of a proposition is expressed, and its corresponding pronoun inserted before the predicate, a mode of speech equally admissible in English; secondly, when it precedes a possessive pronoun of the same person and number. In this case its force is rendered in English merely by a stronger intonation of the possessive pronoun, whilst, *e.g.*, the Hebrew language would admit of a literal translation (cf. *e.g.* אֲנִי יְדֵי נִטְוֹ שָׁמַיִם, “*my hands have stretched out the heavens*”)—

1. *táta búrgōa, ši tsúrui*, “the cunning boy, he saw it.”  
*meíte, ši táta ganá*, “the king, he was a little child.”  
*pérōndótę, ši kóā bágō*, “your daughter, she has no husband.”  
*táta gáljubē ši kámūa*, “the son of the rich man, he was married.”

2. *sánda meintsáwa ánda meíndē bágō*, “they have a king of their own, we have none.”  
*ni lemánnęm kágę gadí tsítōba?* “will thy goods be equal to mine?”  
*lénógō pāndórō! wúte lám̄bini bágō*, “go home! it is not my business.”  
*wu kídāni dátsi, kágęnęm badínę*, “my work is done, do thou begin thine.”

§. 159. But the personal pronoun, in this connexion, does not always express a contrast or emphasis, and the instances are even far more numerous where it is used *pleonastically*—

- wu neménitę, wu tálagā*, “my word,” *i. e.* “what I have to say is, I am a poor man.”  
*wu kámūni kómandébē tserám̄bi*, “my wife has paid our Lord,” *i. e.* “has died.”

*kóa ši pátō meibē kárgā*, “a (certain) man lived in the king’s house.”

*kóa tšerágenārō káfugurō bérémtšin*, *ába pērōbē ši nótšeni*,  
*kóa wátšenārō kárūgurō bérémtšin*; *kóa* (i. e. *ába pērōbē*)  
*ši nótšeni*; *pērō ši kóántšę kerétšena*; *abántšę nótšeni*,  
 “for the man whom she likes she twines short threads; the  
 father of the girl does not know it: for the man whom she  
 dislikes she twines long threads; the man does not know it:  
 the girl had chosen her husband; her father did not  
 know it.

*kábū túlur kitényā*, *táta ši pátōm bágō*, *kámū ši leirān*  
*tsúlūge*, “after seven days, when the boy was not at  
 home, the woman came forth from the grave.”

It can scarcely be expected, that an actual pleonasm should be regular in any language; and it may readily be observed that, in all the above instances, the pronoun can be considered as rendering some one word more conspicuous than another. If, therefore, a “pleonastic” use of the pronoun is spoken of, this term must be taken relatively.

§. 160. Neither is it absolutely necessary that the subject and predicate should be formally united by a distinct word, and yet many languages regularly do so. The Kanuri maintains great freedom, in this respect, and it not unfrequently uses a personal pronoun where it may be considered as a *copula*; just as in Hebrew, *e. g.*, Deut. xii. 23, *הַדָּם הוּא הַחַיִּים* “the blood is the life.” 1 Sam. xvii. 14, *דָּוִד הוּא הַיָּלֵד*, “David was the youngest.”

*keári fulátabē ši tálagā*, “an old Pulo was a poor man.”

*abáni ši mei*, “my father is a king.”

*kęnyéri ši búrgōa*, “the weasel is cunning.”

*kamáun ši bōgáta*, “the elephant was lying.”

§. 161. Sometimes the personal pronouns must be rendered in English by the *relative pronoun*—

*kóa ši lemántšę ngubū*, *kábū tilō tšítšę*, “a man whose goods were many arose on a certain day.”

*kóá ši málam tši tšinnāben dāgáta*, "the man who was a priest was standing under the gate."

*tse tatántsurō nā kúguibērō šīgā kinótō*, "said she to her child which she had sent to the fowl's place."

§. 162. In a few cases the pronoun is *omitted* where we would expect it—

*ni wúrō kǎnāwa nēm*, "thou toldst me that thou wast hungry," for *ni wúrō ni kǎnāwa nēm*, or *ni wúrō "wu kǎnāwa" nēm*.

*ni wúrō búrgōa nēm*, "thou toldst me that thou art cunning."

*Note.* It is scarcely necessary to observe that the Kanuri language, in addressing people, has not fallen into the practice of unnaturally substituting other persons and the plural number for the 2d per. sing.; but that its *ni* addresses the king as well as the slave.

## II. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

§. 163. They can be used *separately*, in the same way as substantives—

*kámāni kǎlántse tsebándi*; *átibēma labárte nírō kúskō*, "my wife has been delivered; of this I bring thee the tidings."

*áte nígā ntserágenáté áre, wúrō gúllé*, "the one who loves thee may come and tell me of it."

But generally they are employed to define other words, as adjectives do. Thus used, two things must be observed; one with regard to *agreement*, and the other to *position*.

§. 164. A noun in the singular can be defined by a demonstrative pronoun in either singular or plural. In the first case the whole is singular, and in the second the noun may be considered as collective, and the whole must be rendered in English by plurals—

*kām áte*, "this person;" *kām tū*, "that person;" *per áte*, "this horse;" *kou áte*, "this stone."

*kām áni*, “these persons;” *kām tóni*, “those persons;” *per-áni*, “these horses;” *kou áni*, “these stones.”

A noun in the plural, likewise, can be defined by a pronoun in the singular and plural; but in both cases the whole has to be rendered in English by plurals. The use of the singular form of the pronoun appears greatly to preponderate; for, strange to say; though the language often unhesitatingly repeats whole words, and even phrases, yet it shows a strong tendency to omit grammatical forms when they may be inferred from the context—

*ām átē* and *ām áni*, “these persons, these people;” *per-wátē* and *perwáni*, “these horses;” *kouwa átē* and *kouwa áni*, “these stones;” *tatoánēm átē* and *tatoánēm áni*, “these thy children;” *ām tū* and *ām tóni*, “these people.”

§. 165. With regard to *position* it may be observed, that the adjectival demonstrative always immediately follows the word which it defines, either in the character of a suffix, or as a distinct word. “Word,” however, must here be taken in a wide sense, not in a grammatical but a logical one, so that it includes all sorts of complements together with which a noun may form part of a proposition. Accordingly the demonstrative may be appended to a genitive, or a possessive pronoun, or an adjective and participle. Thus it also happens, that the demonstrative sometimes *stands at a considerable distance from the word to which it more immediately belongs*, and before which it is usually placed in English. This, however, can only be found surprising at first sight; for all the complements of a word form with it one whole, one idea, one name; and the difference between Bornu and English is only this, that the former places the demonstrative behind and the latter before the name. For it is self-evident that, *e.g.* in the word, “this house, designed for the produce of all the nations on the face of the earth,” the demonstrative refers as well to the remote “earth” as to the close “house,” they being only last and first part of one and the

same name. The German language approaches the Bornu still more closely in form, being capable of expressing the above name in the following manner: diess für die Erzeugnisse aller Nationen auf der Oberfläche der Erde bestimmte Haus.

The following instances will illustrate the position of the demonstrative in Kanuri—

<i>kām áte</i> , "this person."	<i>kusótō lárde kuíyinten ísenáté</i>
<i>kām áni</i> , "these people."	"this stranger, come from
<i>kérite</i> , "this dog."	a far country," Ger.
<i>múskō gésqábē áte</i> , "this	"dieser aus fernem Lande
bough."	gekommene Fremde."
<i>kítábu kómānbē áte</i> , "this book	<i>béla krígíyē tártsenáté</i> , "this
of my Lord."	town destroyed by war."
<i>táta málabēté</i> , "this child of	<i>sóbā wígā tsoúrō tserágenáté</i> ,
the priest."	"this friend ardently loving
<i>péróníte</i> , "this my daughter."	me," Ger. "dieser mich
<i>sóbāníte</i> , "this my friend."	warm liebende Freund."
<i>kóá yásgeté</i> , "these three men."	<i>mána kámpūa kām dégibē átéma</i> ,
<i>sóbā ndíte</i> , "these two friends."	"this narration of four
<i>táta íggaláté</i> , "this good child."	blind men."
<i>nem kúráté</i> , "this large house."	

§. 166. On inquiring now more particularly into the use of the demonstrative pronoun, it will show itself: 1. as a common demonstrative; 2. as a definite article; 3. as a means of generally distinguishing or marking one word above another; and 4. as a relative.

The instances given in §. 165. will be a sufficient illustration of its use as a common *demonstrative pronoun*.

§. 167. It can be easily traced, in most languages which possess a *definite article*, that it has developed itself from a demonstrative pronoun; and therefore we need not be surprised to find that, in the Kanuri also, the demonstrative pronoun is often used with so weak a demonstrative force as to correspond exactly with a *definite article*—

*kéndertéma kómbüntsúgō*, "the cotton plant is his food."

*kámūte ši tširē nemētšīn bágō*, "no woman speaks the truth."

*dīniātēbkū bántenjéwa*, "the weather is foggy to-day."

*ndā kúguite? Kúguì ñyampátuyē tsúndī. 'Ndā ñyampátūtē? Ñyampátū kériye tsúndī. 'Ndā kériṭe? Tógō kéri létšīn*, "where is the fowl? The cat has swallowed the fowl. Where is the cat? The dog has swallowed the cat. Where is the dog? There goes the dog."

*kámbēte dége; dégetēga mei Bórnumāma kótšīn bágō; dégetē ganānēmīa, kámbēte dātšī; kirté rágeṃma ganānēmīn*, "the free ones (*viz.* wives) are four; this number the Bornu king himself does not exceed; when thou hast taken these four, the free ones are completed; if (then) thou wishest, thou mayest take a (*i. e.* any) female slave."

§. 168. Sometimes the demonstrative is suffixed where its force cannot be rendered even by the article, but merely by the *intonation* or the *position*. So used, its force seems to be weakened down to that of the emphatic affix *ma*, with which it is then often *joined*. Its combination with personal and possessive pronouns, and with proper names, may here also be mentioned. This last case has its analogy in the Greek language, and in those modern languages which employ the definite article before proper names of rivers, mountains, countries, &c., or, like the German, even before proper names of persons, when indicating affinity or notoriety; *e. g.* "the Rhine, the Thames," "die Mine, der Strauss." The combination of *ate* and a possessive pronoun has its analogy in Old German and Gothic, where the definite article frequently precedes a substantive with a possessive pronoun, and also in Italian, where this is regularly the case. The following examples will illustrate these various statements—

*ágō yásgetē ndásō ñgúbugō?* "which three things are the greatest?"

*kámū t̄lōtē ándirō kútū*, "one wife will be bad for us."  
*nd̄h̄yāye kóáingátē kū nótseiyē*, "we shall know to-day who  
 is a man."

*áingaltē šimlan ganí káryā*, "intelligence has not its seat  
 in the eye."

*š̄tēgā tsítā*, "him they catch."

*n̄tē abānlē*, "thou art our father."

*abāni, w̄tē p̄rōtē t̄š̄remárō kirágeskō*, "my father, I truly  
 love this girl."

*n̄tē táta kóáingábē; kárgen̄mtē álla n̄šō, kām ganí*, "thou  
 art the son of a man; God has given thee thine heart, and  
 not man."

*p̄rōn̄tē kámurō n̄rō n̄š̄eskō*, "I give thee my daughter  
 for a wife."

*s̄andi b̄l̄ánd̄éturō ts̄áš̄w̄i*, "they shall not come into our  
 town."

*allátēma nótse, kām nótseña b̄ágō*, "God knows it, and not  
 any man."

*kóá meí Delāma Lájiátē n̄n̄emba?* "dost thou know a  
 certain Laphia, king of Deia?"

*b̄l̄ā Kurnawáten š̄i nápt̄š̄i*, "he sat down in the town of  
 Kurnawa.

*áfiyāye dímtuma*. "whatever thou wilt do."

*b̄l̄ā Tsebákten ts̄éptsā*, "they dismount in the town  
 Tsebag."

*Fuláta ts̄úntse D̄āikoūaturō létse gulgónō*, "he went and  
 told it to a Pulo whose name was Dankoua."

*Born̄áten málam t̄š̄reb̄tē kún̄ganāma ts̄úgōrin b̄ágō*, "in  
 Bornu no real priest inquires of a soothsayer."

§. 169. The Kanuri has no distinct relative pronoun, and it may be said of it, as of many other languages, that it employs the demonstrative pronoun to discharge the function of a relative.—

*kām t̄š̄rewátē t̄š̄ruiyē*, "we shall see the one who is right."

*wu širō tširē yásge, wúrō gulúšenāté neméneskī*, "I have told him those three truths which he has told me."

*ām šigā tsarágenāté ngásō bólōtse*, "he calls all those people who like him."

*ágō rōnémyē tserágenāté wu nírō kúskī*, "I have brought thee the thing which thy soul likes."

*mánānem bírgō wúrō gulúšemmaté kú tširétšī*, "thy word which thou toldest me at first has to-day been verified."

*nī "wu málam" neminté kérédi nōnēmba?* "thou who sayest, 'I am a priest,' dost thou know a heathen?"

§. 170. The relative pronoun being expressed by the demonstrative, there cannot, of course, be forms in Kanuri which unite a demonstrative and a relative; *e.g.* our "what" has to be rendered by *ago* and *ate* following; and propositions without *ago* must be considered as elliptical; *e.g.*

*ágō mandānemmaté ngō dískī*, "what thou hast told me, behold I have done."

*ngō ágō wu bískinté*, "behold what I eat."

*gúptšenāté tsúrō belágāniben geráneskē*, "that which remains I hide in my hole."

§. 171. Such *relative propositions*, as express a *mere complement* in the form of a proposition, are treated altogether like adjectives, and consequently their last word assumes the formative appendages properly belonging to the complemented noun, agreeably to §. 154; *e.g.*

*béla Fuláta bírgō tartandúrō létsa*, "they go to that town which the Phula had first destroyed."

*mána bísga neményenáturō kádískō*, "I am come on account of what we were saying yesterday."

§. 172. But in these subordinate adjectival propositions *the demonstrative pronoun is frequently wanting*, so that the force of our relative is conveyed simply by the grammatical form of the



*verb*, i. e. the participial, or the very similar indefinite I, or it remains altogether unexpressed, as after a verb in the negative mood and a negative particle. This throws a fresh light on what has been stated above. It would seem that the demonstrative is in *no* case actually *converted* into a relative, but always retains its demonstrative force. Neither is this at all surprising, for the force of the demonstrative and relative is alike in all languages: both transform a general term into a special one. The Kanuri therefore most naturally expresses this double specification by one and the same word. It is true, then, that in cases where the demonstrative is suffixed to a relative proposition a word is doubly specified, viz. first by the relative proposition, and then by the demonstrative. But neither is this exactly a pleonasm, provided such doubly specified words are thereby rendered more conspicuous than those only singly specified. And this seems to be actually the case; so that we may say in general, adjectival relative propositions with the demonstrative suffix correspond to English propositions as, "the man who can commit such a crime," &c.; and those without it to, "a man who can commit such a crime." It must be observed, and the examples already produced have shown it, that our "the—who" would often be too strong an expression for the Kanuri participle with the demonstrative; but so much seems certain, that the relative proposition with the pronoun always renders the qualified word somewhat more conspicuous, than without the pronoun; and, at any rate, the proposition in the latter case, is not to be considered as elliptical.

Instances of relative propositions without a pronoun—

*ši mána nótsgní neméigana*, "he does not know the word I was saying."

*ágō tégirō tšésákēna bágō*, "there is nothing which they might put on (their) body."

*wu mánāni tīlō kāmuniyē gulúšēna nírō guluntséškē*, "I will tell thee something which my wife has told me."

*kām dā gádubē tsegérena kérédi ganí, kām dā dáǵelbē tsegé-  
rena kérédi ganí, kām lífā tséǵbūna kérédi ganí, kām kímél  
tsána kérédi ganí; kām kámántse kárgen tséteite šima  
kérédigō, “a man who eats the meat of swine, or of  
monkeys, or what has died of itself, or drinks fermented  
liquor, is not a heathen; but the man who keeps ano-  
ther in his heart (i.e. who cannot forgive), he is a  
heathen.”*

*nā péro gerágata mátsin, “he seeks the place where the  
girl is hidden.”*

*nū kéngal tsúlūgin tsúrū, “he will see the place where the  
sun rises.”*

*ágō ngáǵlēma rúsganí, mandtsei pángsganí, kū wu kíruskō,  
“what I have never seen at any time, nor heard them  
tell, I have seen to-day.”*

*kóá kándelí ganí ši náptši pántsen, “the man who was not  
jealous remained at home.”*

*kóá tserágenirō gótsa tsádi, “they took her and gave her to a  
man whom she did not like.”*

*kām kitábū nótseǵní, ágō díbī nótseǵní, ngalā nótseǵní lemán gótse,  
nāndórō íšia, nandiga tsúgōre, “one who knows no book,  
who knows not what is bad, and who knows not what is  
good, takes goods, and having come to you asks you.”*

§. 173. The demonstrative is not unfrequently used to indi-  
cate relations which we express otherwise, viz. by conjunctions  
or adverbs, e. g., by—

if: *ní ngaláté, áte léñem kām díbī sōbáñemmi, “if thou art  
good, do not go and befriend a bad man.”*

*nāndi kāmū ndí mánuwité, ngalā ganí, “if ye seek two  
wives it is not good.”*

as, or because: *kū állayē bēlāndērō ntsugútenáté, ándi níró  
per ntsáyē, “as God has brought thee to-day to our  
town, we will give thee a horse.”*

*kām ríñemma báǵō ñeminté, lényē wúró páñem pfléseǵení,*

“as thou sayest thou art afraid of none, let us go, show me thy home.”

*kélegeni kóllem tsúlugenáté wu níyā wántseškī*, “because thou hast let the wild dog come out, I do not want thee.”

*nī ášir kókobē tsánnemmáté, wáyē kágenem tsaktsóskō*, “because thou hast covered the frog’s secret, therefore will I cover thine.”

that, so that: *nī áfi rínem “dínā búnyē lúskín báyo” neminté?* “what fearest thou that thou sayest: ‘I will never go out by night?’”

*ágō tséde, kúlumte tsebándenáté, ši kámmō gúltšimba?* “will he tell anybody what he did to get this ring?”

that (the article of propositions): *tátōa kirínyā nótši péróntsę tsámbōte*, “when he had seen the children, he knew that his daughter had borne them.”

*gálifū bárū pāntsúrō íseite ši nótšena*, “the rich man was aware that thieves had come to his house.”

*tátu šiga mbélátsinté ši nótšeni*, “she knew not that the boy watched her.”

*mei Amáde ši rōntsúa tátāntsurō kémei tšinté nyelá kwōyá, kitábū wúné*, “examine the book, whether it is right that king Muhammad should give the kingdom to his son in his lifetime.”

why: *ágō Fulátayē búrgō lásgeŋ kríge Deían badítsenáté mei Tšigā nauigá*, “the reason why the Phula have begun a war in Deia for the first time, is because of king Tshiga.”

*ágō yīreškinté, meíye kām nānirō tsúnōte*, “the reason I weep is, because the king has sent somebody to me.”

when, as: *ši tširinté, kánā tšítse, nā koábērō kádiō*, “when he wept, Famine rose and came to the man.”

*wu léneškinté, wúa búltāa kálā jónnyē*, “as I went, I and an hyena met.”

*kábū dínā wátšinté, ši íse, bérnirō gúgī*, “when the day dawned he came and entered the capital.”

*kādīga mātšinté tsúrō kúlben tsúruí*, “when he sought the serpent, he found it in a hole.”

where: *átēma nā kēngal tsúlūginté*, “this is the place where the sun rises.”

*nā tšē dātšenátēn péroáye dātsei*, “where the rope ended, there the girls stopped.”

§. 174. The syllable *tē*, thus used, often even assumes a case-termination, a circumstance which may be considered as a proof that we have rightly understood its nature in the examples given in §. 173., viz. that it is really the demonstrative pronoun, and not, *e.g.*, an adverbial particle. Instances of this kind I first got from Mal Lafia, but Ali Eisami is likewise familiar with them, though he usually omits the case-termination—

*sándi létseitēn, seigā ngúduyē kitā*, “when they went, thirst took hold of them.”

Or the case-termination may be affixed to the verb and be followed by the pronoun—

*gésgā tsáltseinyinté*, “when they cut the tree.”

*tsábunyinté*, “when they eat.”

*karátseinyinté*, “when they read.”

Thus can be formed, *wu lénginyinté, ni lēnēminyinté, ši létšinyinté, ándi lēnyenyinté, nandi lēnūwinyinté, sandi letseinyinté*, which does not appear to differ at all in meaning from *lénginté*, &c.

§. 175. With regard to the demonstrative pronoun, the Kanuri again manifests its great economy in the use of forms; for, whenever it belongs to two or more words which occupy a parallel position in a proposition, it is joined only to the *last*—

*kām šírō gúltsa, pāntse, tsátserānátē, ši wágē šímtsen tšírū*,  
“the man to whom they tell it, who hears, but does not believe it, will see it with his eyes in the next world.”

*tsábā bēlābē tsétā létšinté*, “when he took the way to the town and went.”

§. 176. The reduplicated form of the demonstrative pronoun *átęę* appears to be emphatic, like the English "this here," the German "diess da," and the French "celui-ci."

*béla átęę wáa kóanyáa lúgēn bágō*, "I and my husband will not come out of this town."

*ni ndáran kām dēg' átęę kibándęm?* "whence hast thou obtained these four persons?"

*táta átęę yántę bágō*, "this child here has no mother."

*ndáran ši amánitę kibándō?* "whence has he obtained these people?"

The pronoun *áteęei* fully answers to our "such," e. g. *kídā átęęei ráęęęani*, "I do not like such a work;" and it is also employed, when a proper name is purposely withheld, e. g. *béla átęęényin kiluguskō, nęm gúllęmā*, "when thou hast said, I come from such-and-such a town."

Just as our "here, there, then, so," are derived from demonstrative pronouns, so in Bornu, adverbs are formed by means of the demonstrative pronoun, for which see §. 115, 3.

### III. Interrogative Pronouns.

§. 177. All interrogative pronouns can be used substantively—

*ndú abáni tsúrū?* "who saw my father?"

*áfi rínęmin?* "what fearest thou?"

*ndágū létęęda?* "how many will go?"

*ndásō gágō?* "which one entered?"

But *áfi*, *ndágū*, and *ndásō* more frequently follow substantives in the capacity of adjectives. *áfisō* and *ndágū* are always plural, whether they are joined to a noun in the singular or plural; e. g. *kām 'dágū? am 'dágū* "how many people?" *tatáfisō* and *tatoáfisō?* "which children?"

*áfi* and *ndásō*, “which?” can be connected with nouns in the singular and plural; and the former seems to inquire after the kind or quality, and the latter after individuality.

*ndú* is never used adjectively, neither can it govern a genitive; and, e.g., the question, “who of his friends has helped him?” must be rendered by *ndú sōbāntsiyē širō bānātsēgī?* or *sōbāntsetē, ndú širō bānātsēgī?* or *sōbāntse ndásō širō bānātsēgī?*

When *áfi* and *ndú* are used substantively, the former always refers to things, and the latter to persons. Of this rule the only exception is made by the word *tsū*, after which only *ndu* inquires, but never *áfi*; e.g. *ndú tsúnem?* “what is thy name? *ndú tsū bēlānembē?* “what is the name of thy town.”

#### IV. Possessive Pronouns.

§. 178. Their import is identical with that of the genitive of the personal pronouns, which therefore, though rarely, may take its place. This is the case only, when the possessive suffix is not sufficiently explicit; as, e.g., the plural suffixes, or, when the more circumstantial genitive construction is intended to convey a greater emphasis—

*ngālēma mánāndē, wúa šyúabē, tsábān tsúlūgeni,* “never our, i. e. mine and thine word disagreed.”

*kóá átē sōbā ndúbē? sōbā wúbē,* “whose friend is this man? Mine.” The answer may also be, *sōbāni, wúbē,* “my friend, mine; merely, to lay more stress on the person.”

§. 179. The possessive genitive being identical, in force, with the possessive pronoun, it is not to be wondered at that the Kanuri sometimes uses the simple genitive of the pronoun, where the English and other languages have a possessive pronoun without a substantive. Both modes of expression coincide in their being properly elliptical; e.g. *wúbē dātši,* viz. *kídā,* or *rō,* or *kábū,* or *mána,* &c., “mine,” i. e. “my work, or life, or time, or speech, &c. is done.”

The Kanuri, however, has another way of using the possessive pronouns substantively, without admitting an elipsis, and of which it makes a more general use. This is by the unmeaning, or, as might be said, all-meaning substantive *káge*, to which the possessive suffixes are added, just as in Arabic the suffixes of the personal pronoun are added to the corresponding and equally unmeaning word  $\text{أنا}$ —

*ní lemánnem kágē gadi tšítōba?* “will thy goods be equal to mine?”

*wásili kálugū meibē kirúnyā, kágentšę tsúrō kángālibēn tšetúlūge,* “the white man having seen the king’s shirt, took his own out of the horn.”

*kómbū pélēsęgemmáté wu pándęski: ŋgō ší, áre; gérte, kágenem góné, kágē šē,* “I have obtained the food which thou hast shown me: here it is; come, divide it: take thine and give me mine.”

*núndi tátōa anāndtemārō kútuğō; andíte, kágendē dātši,* “you, little children, will have woful times; as for us, ours (*i. e.* our time, life) is done.”

*Note.* *Káge* is sometimes used redundantly where a mere possessive pronoun would be quite sufficient;

*e. g.*

*wásili kágendē = wásilindé,* “our white man.”

§. 180. After nouns which are indicative of *time*, the possessive pronoun shows that so much time was spent. It has then to be rendered into English by the corresponding *personal* pronoun and the understood copula by a verb—

*kántāgení yásę nántšen,* “I remained three months with him.”

*ŋgáliní píugun táta wúsgen,* “I am fifty-eight years old.”

*ší kábántšę yásę nā abániben,* “he spent three days at my father’s.”

*wu kū kábūni tútur wu núski,* “I have been dead these seven days, or I have died seven days ago.”

And when the noun with the possessive suffix is the predicate of a proposition, the suffix is sometimes rendered by the verb "to have;" as,

*níyē šínem`dí, wúyē šíní ndí,* "thou hast two legs, and I have two legs."

§. 181. After a transitive infinitive the possessive suffixes have to be rendered by *personal* pronouns, and the infinitive by a finite verb—

*kámpū kām`dí logótēnirō`isanāté,* "as two blind men came to beg of me."

*šigā`dútsei ntséotsōntsurō,* "they pursue it to kill it."

*sāndi nótšānū, búltū kómbuntsārō`kádīōté,* "they did not know that the hyena had come to eat them."

The possessive plural suffixes of the interrogative *ndú* must be rendered by the *genitive* of the corresponding *personal* pronouns. Comp. §. 141.

*wúá nyúá ndúndē lemánwāgō`? lit.* "as for me and thee, our who is wealthy?" *i. e.* "which of us is the wealthiest, I or thee?"

§. 182. The Kanuri language often anticipates an event; *e.g.* it calls a thing one's own which is merely intended or expected to become so; and, in this case, we have to render the possessive suffix by the preposition *for* with the corresponding *personal* pronoun—

*kárgūntse kām nótšēna`bágō,* "nobody knows a medicine for it."

*dúlīma kāmāntse`mátšín,* "he seeks a fellow-leper for himself."

*ndúyē kāmāntse`mátse, nígā`tséde,* "every one seeks a wife for himself and marries."

§. 183. When the possessive pronouns have a *reflective* force, the Kanuri neither discards them altogether, as the Latin, or



uses them, where they are superfluous, so frequently as the English; but, just as the German, it maintains, in this respect, an intermediate position between the Latin and English—

*dínia búnyē kárgentsē tsérgéřē, gáge*, “by night he ties his heart together and enters.”

*ām wúra nǵásō sǔmǒntsa péréntsána*, “all the great men are opening their ears.”

*nándi kítábu állabē nǵásō múskōndon*, “ye have all the books of God in your hand.”

*dágełntse múskōnwa tsúlūge*, “he comes out with his monkey in his hand.”

*ši dēlā tsētā, tsérgéřē kálārō gótsē*, “he catches the jackal, ties it, and takes it on his head.”

*wúrō múskōn úlān pélēsegeńiá*, “thou having shewn it me with thy hand.”

*ši kámāntsega kárgen tsétei*, “he holds his fellow in his heart.”

*kúguí dēgága kāmáunbē kúšyētšin šin*, “the fowl turned the dung of the elephant with its feet.”

§. 184. When *aba* and *ya* are used in addressing persons (see §. 128.), without any further title, they always take the suffix of the 1st person singular (as *abáni, yáni*), with the exception, however, that, when husband and wife address each other, these words generally assume the suffix of the 3d person plural, which, in this case, refers to the children, and honouringly designates the other conjugal half as an actual parent. Nay, these words are even used with the suffix of the 1st person plural, by which the speaking party modestly ranks himself with the children, just as, with us, parents sometimes use the words “father and mother” of one another—

*kámuyē kóantsúrō: abántsa, ni wúrō búrgōa ńem*, “the woman said to her husband, (their) father, thou toldst me that thou art cunning.”

*šyē kāmuntsurō : yántsa, ni tširēwa*, “he said to his wife, (their) mother, thou art right.”

*yā mána pērōntsíbē pántse, ábā pērobērō : abándē, ni mána pērōnémbē pánemiba?* “the mother hears the word of her daughter, and says to the girl’s father, (our) father, hast thou heard the word of thy daughter?”

The word *komándē* is analogous to the Hebrew יְהוָה. Both are applied to God, and the suffix has become so entirely one with the noun, that the people no longer separate them, but use them as one name for God.

§. 185. Having already seen that, *e.g.*, a case termination (§. 154.) or a demonstrative pronoun (§. 165.) is not always attached to the word to which it more immediately belongs, but to the last of its complements, if there be any, we would naturally expect the same to be the case with the possessive pronoun, whose force is likewise not confined to the mere substantive, but equally extends to the remotest of its complements. This, however, is not the case; and the possessive pronoun always takes precedence of all other complements and attaches itself regularly to the chief noun—

*málam kálugūntse kúra gótse*, “the priest takes his great garment.”

*kírintse tīlō bóbōtse*, “she calls one of her slaves.”

*dántse gádubē árgata gótse*, “he takes his dried pork.”

§. 186. Sometimes a possessive pronoun is connected with a genitive, by which it is rendered *pleonastic*—

*ni kóa sóbānémtibē kéndiōntse rágemmi*, “thou dost not like the coming of this thy friend.”

More examples of a *pleonastic* use of the possessive pronouns, or, at least, of their use, where in English they are omitted, will be found among those adduced to §. 199.

V. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

§. 187. The difference in the use of the suffixes *ye*, *yaye*, and *so*, appears to be this, that *ye* is numeric, *i.e.* referring to each individual separately; *so* qualitative, *i.e.* referring to each individual equally, and not more to one than the other; and *yaye* either identical with *so* or indicating any one individual, but not the whole number. When *so* and *yaye* are joined in one word, they correspond in force to our “soever.”

The indefinite pronouns, when used substantively, can be construed with the verb either in singular or plural—

*ndúyē pántsurō légonō*, “every one went to his home.”

*ndúyē símōntšę péřemtšę*, “let every one open his ears.”

*ndúyē tšítsa, pántsārō létša*, “they, every one, arise and go to their home.”

*mána meínabē yillé, ndúyē pántša*, “proclaim the word of the prince, that they, every one, may hear it.”

*ndúyāye sáberātēnogō*, “get ready every one of you.”

*nā tšireberō ndúyāye létsonō*, “every one will go to the place of retribution.”

*kām tsátēiya, lágā múškō kámťšin, lágā ši kámťšin*, “when they have caught anybody, one cuts an arm, another cuts a leg.”

*lágā ísei, lágā létsei*, “some come, some go.”

*ndúsō kā gótsa, šigā ntšéotsorō máťsei*, “they each take a stick and seek to kill it.”

*kām agóťęęei bēlānden tsédin bágō*, “one does not do such a thing in our country.”

*kām áširntsa nótšana bágō, sai álla*, “no one knows their secret but God.”

*ndúyē bēláturō ísei*, “every one came to this town.”

§. 188. The indefinite pronouns, used attributively, either follow the noun in the capacity of adjectives or precede them in apposition.

*ni tsánei ndásosō wánęmmí*, “thou dost not like any clothes.”

*kárgun`dásosō sōbānēmyē nírō mātse*, “any medicine that thy friend seeks for thee.”

*kām lága mána kitábubē pántšīa kárgentsíyē tsoúrō tserágena*;  
*kām lága mána kitábubē pántšīa, kárgentsíyē tsoúrō wátsgna*,  
 “one person having heard the word of the book, his heart likes it ardently; another person having heard the word of the book, his heart hates it violently.”

*ágō áfīsō tserágenátē yē*, “whatever thing he likes, give him.”

*kām`dúsō ísgna tšibándō*, “whoso comes shall obtain it.”

*ndúyāye kām létse*, “whatever person goes.”

*áfíyāye ágō tserágenátē yē*, “whatever thing he likes, give him.”

*ndúsō kām ísgna tšibándō*, “whoso comes shall obtain it.”

§. 189. The appendage *yāye*, which renders a pronoun indefinite, is not always attached to the pronoun, but may be separated from it by other words; e. g.

*táta gēsgáfībē yāyē tsúruiya, kámťse tsébuí*, “whatever tree-fruit he saw, he plucked and ate.”

*áfí nēmktšindōyāyē*, “whatever may be your fondness.”

*ndú nígā nťserágōyāyē*, “whoever may love thee.”

*kóanǵáfi ísō yāye*, “whatever man comes.”

*áfí kámýē tšédin yāyē*, “whatever one may do.”

But *ma*, which has the same force as *yāye*, seems to be never detached from interrogative pronouns—

*ši tsáneí ilfīma wátši*, “she dislikes any kind of cloth.”

*kómāndéťe ši ndúma aláktši*, “our Lord has created everybody.”

§. 190. The indefinite use of *kām* is not so common, as in German that of “man,” or in French that of “on” (= homo), but about as common as in English that of “one;” and to express a mere grammatical subject, the language more frequently employs one of the different persons, viz. either the 2d person singular, or the 2d or 3d of the plural.

## 1. The 2d per. sing. used indefinitely—

*kámurō mērsānēmīa, kárgenēm šīrō yīmīa, níga ntšétsō*, “if one trusts a woman and gives her his heart, she will kill him.”

*ágō rummátema nemčnēmīn, rúumwíte, nemčnēm bágō, kátugūtē ŋgalā gaul*, “what one has seen, one may speak; what one has not seen, one must not speak, a lie is not good.”

*Bornútēn kanásīn pānēmīn našīnnēmīa, nā kínganamá-bērō lēnēmīa, kanásīn našīnnēmīmātē šīrō gúlǵem*, “in Bornu, when one has had a dream in his house, he goes to a soothsayer and tells her the dream which he has had.”

## 2. The 2d per. pl. used indefinitely—

*kēnyēri bēlágāntsurō gágīa, nándi bēlágātē lánū*, “*šiya teiyen*” *nū, badínúwīama, ši ŋgáǵondóben tsúlǵe, tsegúšīn*, “when a weasel has gone into its hole and you begin to dig the hole up, thinking to catch it, it comes out behind you and runs away.”

*bámba` pátō tīlōberō gágīa, tsúrō pátōbētēn, nándi kām pándi degáwiyāyē, tīlōma kolótsīm bágō*, “the cholera having entered into a house, does not leave one in it, though there may have been twenty of you.”

## 3. The 3d per. pl. used indefinitely—

*kerrágō ášīrberō skírágēm kwōyá, áte ášīrndē dēgan pántsāní*, “if thou lovest me with a secret love, let them not hear our secret in public.

*ándi bēlānden agótegei tsúdin bágō*, “in our country they cannot act thus.”

§. 191. Hence it may happen that sometimes these persons alternate with each other. Such is the case with—

## 1. the 2d per. sing. and the 2d per. pl.—

*kínū kalínyā, kálū gēsǵábē kírayan lēnem, mángem, kútē-*

*mīa, yā tatoánēmbēyē kálātē dētse, tatoánēm tsábui Dínā wátšia, kúrū tšmūwī, lēnū, káragan táta gēsgābē mánū, tsuwīa, yā tatoándōbē sándi náudōn tšémāgē dētse, tatoándō tsábui,* “when a famine has come, thou goest and seekest tree-leaves in the wood, and having brought them, the mother of thy children cooks these leaves, that thy children may eat them. The next morning ye rise again, and go and seek tree-fruits, and when ye have come, the mother of your children takes them from you and cooks them, that your children may eat.

2. The 2d per. sing. and the 3d per. pl.—

*táta nyēni Bórñāten rímīa, kárgentse bibítsei bágō; kárgentse bibíngmīa, ši náptse tšírīn,* lit. “when thou seest an orphan in Bornu, they do not molest him; when thou molested him, he sits down and weeps,” *i. e.* “when one sees, one does not molest him,” &c.

§. 192. The second person being so extensively used in indefinite propositions, in which all importance is attached to the predicate, and the subject considered indifferent, it is not regarded as irregular, to use the verb in the 2d per. sing., even if the grammatical subject is *kām*.

*kām kúra tátānem yambúmma kágenēmtē ni nōtsam,* “when a grown up person begets a child, he will know that it is his own.”

*kām kámuntse nígābē tām, gērēm, kógōtātē ši nā kómāndēben pántsení,* “(if) one catches and ties his married wife, that flogging he has not heard of with our Lord.”

*kámte agó nígala dímiā,* “a man having done any thing good.”

193. There are no distinct forms for the *reflective pronouns*, which want is supplied partly by the reflective form of the verb, (see §. 56.), and partly by the use of the substantives *rō* and *kílā* with the possessive pronouns—

by *rō—yim rōndōyē kāmūdō tserāgenātē wu nandīrō ntsūlēskō*,  
 “the day on which ye yourselves will like your wife, I  
 will give her to you.”

*pānēm pāndēm nāmņemmātē wu rōn’yē tserāgī*, “I myself  
 wish that thou mayest get a home for thyself and sit  
 down in it.”

by *kūlā—nāten jūgun ājindēma nīrō ntsīyen bāgō; léné*,  
*kālāngm nūma āmpānē*, “henceforth we shall no longer  
 give thee any thing of our own; go and provide for  
 thyself.”

*nī kīlānēmma kālīa nēm*, “thou sayest that thou thyself  
 art a slave.”

*šīgā nātēn bāgō, šīma kīlāntsēn tsūlūgin*, “we do not  
 plant it; it comes up of itself.”

The want of *reciprocal pronouns* is supplied chiefly by the  
 plural of the *reflective form* of verbs; *e.g.*

*sūndī móltei*, “they wrestle with each other.”

*sūndī tārūna*, “they are looking at each other.”

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

---

§. 194. Adjectives, used attributively, always *follow* the noun  
 to which they belong; *e.g.*

*kām kīra*, “a great man.”

*ām wīra* “great men.”

*‘Alī Gāzirma*, “Ali of Gazir.”

*Alī Eīsāmi*, “Ali, the son of Eisa.”

They also receive the *case-termination* (see §. 154. 4.), the  
 suffixes of the *inseparable conjunctions* (§. 309. &c.) and the  
*demonstrative pronouns* (§. 165.), instead of the noun which they  
 qualify; *e.g.*

*nem bēlinnō gāge*, "he enters into a new house."

*alla kām tsēlamnyin būllinsō aláktse*, "God made both the white and black man."

*ši per n̄gālāte ts̄j̄i*, "he has bought this fine horse."

*sō n̄gubándō áte*, "this your much crying."

§. 195. The plural termination, however, is never added to the adjective, but only to the noun which it qualifies; so that it can only be seen from the *noun* whether an adjective is plural or not. Only the two adjectives, *kúra* and *ganá*,\* which have a peculiar plural form, and the derived adjectives in *ma*, which likewise do not form their plural in *wa*, make an exception to this rule; for they regularly appear in the plural form when they qualify a noun which has either the plural-termination or a collective force. But if twice repeated, the singular of *kúra* and *ganá* may follow a noun in the plural—

*wu kōganawá n̄gubū rúskī*, "I have seen many soldiers."

*sóbāni p̄rwa káríte ts̄j̄i*, "my friend has bought beautiful horses."

*Kárdē sándi ām kúrūgu*, "the Karde are a tall people."

*ši p̄rwa bútu ts̄gūtō*, "he bought cheap cows."

*kōganawā wúra n̄gubū mb̄t̄ši*, "there are many great warriors."

*mālamwā wúra n̄antsen*, "there are great priests with him."

*tátōa s̄bānibē ānāna n̄gāsō s̄nui*, "my friend's little children all died."

*tatoátē abábū ganí*, "these children have no father."

*ām B̄ornúbū K̄ánūrin lóbōgata*, "the Bornuese are called Kanuri."

*ām K̄ánembū n̄gubū t̄sa n̄antsúrō*, "many Kanumese came to him."

*tatoántse ganá ganá n̄gubū mb̄t̄ši*, he has many little children."

---

\* When *ganá* is opposed to *n̄gubu* and not to *kúra*, it falls under the rule of the common adjectives.



*fūgū málamwa kúra kúrabēn námneşgana*, "I was sitting before these great priests."

*índi ganá ganá bátagūntsan námnyēna*, "we little ones were sitting at their side."

That the possessive pronoun takes its place before the attributive adjective is illustrated in §. 185.

§. 196. Though the *substantival use of adjectives* is very limited in English, it is still more so in Kanuri. Expressions like "the beautiful," "the lovely," when referring to *substances*, must be rendered in Kanuri by *ágō* and an adjective; or, when used *abstractedly*, by abstract nouns, which the language can form from adjectives without limitation (see §. 21.). Even when we say, "the good and the evil," instead of "the good and the evil men," the Kanuri makes use of *kām*, *kóá*, *ába*, &c., far more frequently than of mere adjectives. Sometimes, however, adjectives are thus employed, and the following are instances of this kind—

*kúra dágelbē pántşen náptşí*, "the great one," *i. e.* "the chief of the monkeys sat in his house."

*kū nima kúra bēlabē tşínem*, "to-day risest thou a grandee of the town."

*tşélamtēn, kamētēn, káfūgūtēn kúrūgūtēn nigásō állāma aláktşē*, "it was God who created all, the black and the red, the short and the tall."

*ganánden kuránden nigásō námnyēogō*, "let us all sit down, both the small and great among us."

*kóayē kúra kríyibē bóbōtşē*, "the man calls a military grandee."

§. 197. There being no distinguishing forms to indicate *gradation* of adjectives, the language endeavours to make up for that deficiency in several ways—

1. By the mere *positive* with *go*—

a. For the *comparative*—

*wáa nyáa ndúndē lemánwagō?* "which of us is the wealthier, I or thou?"

*ndúndē kúragō yāye kū ruíyē*, “we shall see to-day  
which of us is the greater.”

*kām wúrō kúragō tsúrō káragā átibēn bágō*, “there is  
none greater than I in this forest.”

*Note.* This is doubtless the origin of the word *nígálgō*,  
which is now used as a regular comparative of *nígala*.

*b.* For the superlative—

*dínā nígáson Allāma kúragō*, “God is the greatest in  
the whole world.”

*úgō yásgete ndásō nígúbugō?* “which three things are  
the greatest?”

*tsúrō tatoántisiben níma kúrāntsúgō*, “thou art the  
greatest of his children.”

*ndú búrgōagō tsúrō kām úgubétēn*, “who is the most  
cunning among these five?”

2. By the verb *kónigin*, “I surpass.”

*a.* For the comparative—

*wu nígā kóntsęskī kúran*, “I am greater than thou.”

*ši wúgā nęmgalan kóši*, “he is better than I.”

*tátátę búrgōn gúltegemántsegā kótsęna*, “this boy is more  
cunning than his teacher.”

*b.* For the superlative—

*álla kām `dúsōgā kótsęna*, “God is the greatest of all.”

*šétan nęmdibin tságen `gásōgā kótsęna*, “Satan is the  
worst of all creatures.”

3. By the adverb *līnta*, which expresses an absolute super-  
lative, like the corresponding “most,” “höchst,”  
“maxime,” in other languages—

*wu nígā tsóurō ntseráęęsgana līntá*, “I love thee most  
ardently.”

*yayáni kárìtẹ lǐntá*, "my elder sister is most beautiful."  
*péròtẹ ùì nòngūa lǐntá*, "this girl is most bashful."

§. 198. Here also mention may be made of the emphatic *repetition* of adjectives, the force of which we have sometimes to render by a comparative and sometimes by adverbs like "much, very."

*lemán ùyǎla ùyǎla ñgásò kérétsa*, "they pick out all the finer goods."

*tatoántse kógana wúra wúragù ñgáfon tságá*, "his children follow the very great warriors."

§. 199. Some *peculiar uses* of the adjective termination *wa* deserve a further illustration by examples."

1. After words expressive of a *time-measure*, it indicates that so much time is *spent*—

*kau tsátanābē ságā ndiwātẹ, káfí kádiō*, "two years after the eclipse of the sun had happened, the locusts came."

*kábū gánawāma šim hámtšì*, "in a few days the eye had healed."

*tátāni kérébuntse ārásgūa púdǵigunō*, "my child died six years old."

*kábū yásgūa tšeskē ntsúrúskin*, "in two days I will come and see thee."

*sáulāga abántšibē túlurwa sadáktse*, "he brings the sacrifice for his father, which is brought seven (*viz.* days) after one's death."

*námtsenābē kábū ndíwa, kóliram tšítse*, "having sat down two days, the wood-demon arose."

It is thus that the *time of pregnancy* is especially indicated, which word must often be used, in order to convey in English the force of the *wa*—

*kámū kántāgẹ legár, kábū legárwa kálántse tšebándìn*, "a

woman is delivered after a pregnancy of nine months and nine days.”

*kámuntse kántāge dégūa tsúrōntse bibíyonō*, “his wife miscarried in the fourth month.”

2. After a *substantive* with a *possessive pronoun*, its force has to be translated into English either by a mere adjective or by a verb; and after nouns, which have no corresponding adjective in English, by a substantive with “having, possessing,” &c.—

*wú tsā kúnānyūa kwōyá*, “if I had been hungry.”

*nì tsírēnēmwa*, “thou art right.”

*ši yimpisō kidāntsūa*, “he is always busy.”

*ši kāmū déguārō wolyányā*, “he having become one who has four wives,” *i. e.* “he having become possessed of four wives.”

*kāmuārō wóllū*, “ye became possessed of wives.”

*wu nemēnyūa*, “I have something to say.”

*sāndi ngāsō nāntsāwa*. “they all have their places.”

*kāliāwa kām mēogu mūskon bégōa dāgāta*, “ten slaves were standing there with axes in their hands.”

*wu kásu kāmbeŵa*, “I am having somebody’s trust,” *i. e.* “I owe him, am his debtor.”

*sōbāni kásu abānibēwa*, “my friend is my father’s debtor.”

*yayūnitē ši kóantsūa*, “my elder sister had a husband.”

3. After a phrase or proposition, it renders it adverbial or participial, and the finite verb to which it is affixed corresponds to the Latin gerund in “do,” comp. §. 39.—

*kunótinwa kēlfūntse gótse*, “he took his natron rejoicingly.”

*sāndi kābin fūgunwa nābgata*, “they were sitting with the corpse before them.”

*mālam fūgurō kótse, mei šiyā ngáfon tségeiwa*, “the priest goes before, with the king following him behind.”

*ógana níǵsō šigā níǵáfon tságeiwa, nā Fulátaberō légeda,*  
 “he, and all the soldiers following him, went to the  
 Phula.”

*súni Fulátabē pǐntse tšenǵíwa, kúdiō gǐdi gǐsgāberō,* “the  
 Pulo swain, tending his cows, came under a large tree.”

*Note.* Sometimes, however, *wa* is omitted—

*kām kórōntse bāgótīē ǐšia,* “if one comes who has no  
 ass.”

4. When a noun, expressive of time-measure, is qualified by an adjectival proposition, the *wa* at the end of the participle seems to be merely intended to show more clearly the adjectival nature of such a proposition—

*yim kéndēge tsétēnawāté, bérnirō nátsagei,* “when the  
 fourth day had come, they reached the capital.”

*sága kríge Fulátabē tšǐtsenāwa dínia nǐngalī,* “the season,  
 when the Pulo war arose, was the rainy-season.”

*yim ǐšyennawāmá ǐAjunō andígā skeládō,* “at the time  
 we came, the Hausas bought us.”

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### SYNTAX OF NUMERALS.

---

§. 200. When connected with nouns, the numerals occupy the same *position* as the adjectives, *i.e.* they stand after the noun; and when the noun is at the same time qualified by an adjective, the numeral follows both; as, *per pǐndi, per ǐgala pǐndi, táta dúnōa yásgē.*

§. 201. 1. When *persons* are counted, the numerals, instead of following the substantive immediately, are connected with *kām*, which must be considered in apposition to the substantive, and takes its place between the substantive and the numerals.

In English, this peculiar construction is rendered as if *kām* were not used at all—

*bárbū kām 'di ísa*, “two thieves came.”

*tatoántse kām yásge sabaráta*, “his three sons prepared themselves.”

*ām kátsalla kām yásg'atę andígā kolóšedāní*, “these three chiefs will not leave us.”

2. This convenient *kām* is, of course, regularly employed, where we use a numeral substantively—

*tátāni kām 'di támin*, “thou catchest two of my children.”

*kámdē tīlōma kolóšedāní*, “they will not leave one of our men.”

*kámtse tīlōma nā meiberō létseña bágō*, “not one of his people was going to the king.”

*kámdō kúra tīlō tsúnū*, “one of your great men will die.”

3. It is very rarely the case, that a numeral is used substantively without *kām*—

*túlōntsátuma wátsei, dúgō wurágonō*, “they saw this their only one, till it was grown up.”

§. 202. 1. The want of distinct forms for *distributive* numerals is supplied by *repeating* a cardinal number. If a case-termination or suffix is required, the last numeral only assumes it—

*gútšigányē nigásō tīlō tīlōn tsúndū*, “the pelican swallowed all, one by one.”

*ndúyē tīlō tīlō kágentsę gótse*, “each takes but one as his own.”

*pépetōntsa tīlō tīlō múktsa*, “they pluck their wings one by one.”

*sándi nigásō tīlō tīlōn komándēga kégorō*, “all of them asked the Lord, one after another.”

*kógana nigásō tīlō tīlōn ísa*, “all the soldiers came, one by one.”

2. This repetition, in order to indicate distribution, is not confined to numerals, but is also extended to other words—

*árgemwa tšírāwa gadé gadlērō rúntsan ganáné*, “lay down the millet and the sand by themselves, each in a different place.”

*dántse nā nārō túlūgeskē*, “I take out his flesh from different places successively.

*andirō rētā rētā skédō*, “she gave half to each of us.”

§. 203. It is a token of childlike simplicity, arguing perhaps for the age and primitiveness of the language, that it frequently counts up to the number intended, for the purpose, as it would seem, of thus exemplifying the idea of a long, uninterrupted continuation—

*kántāge lásge, ndí, yásge, dége, úgurō nabgedányā, pérō pálti*, “when they had remained five months, the girl became with child.”

*kábū lásge, ndí, yásge, dége, úgu, árasge, túlurrō lēgedányā, bēla Górgōtēn tsēbgēda*, “having walked for seven days, they dismounted at the town of Gorgo.”

§. 204. It seems to be for this same purpose, that, with untiring patience, the language repeats the predicate of a number of subjects, or even a whole proposition, on account of a change in the adverb. The same circumstantiality of enumeration is observed in the primitive Hebrew language, comp. Ewald's *Kritische Gram.* §. 303.

*nyalārō tšǐǐ, kánī tšǐǐ, kúguí ngúburō tšǐǐ*, “he bought a ram, a goat, and many fowls.

*létsa, bēla Tsēbákētēn tséptsā; wāgányā, tšítsa, bēla Kátsoulētēn tsēbgēda; wāgányā, tšítsa, bēla Kaduwátēn ísa tsēbgēda; dínā wāgányā, sēba tšítsa, létsa, bēla Gafeyētēn tsēbgēda; dínā wāgányā, sēba tšítsa, létsa, bēla Tsatsáramtēn tsēbgēda; wāgányā sēba tšítsa, létsa, bēla Adíjiátēn tsēbgēda;*

*wāgányā, ts̄tsa, l̄tsa, b̄la Murrūrten ts̄bgēda*; *wāgányā, ts̄tsa, l̄tsa b̄la Ts̄āguātten ts̄bgēda*; *wāgányā, ts̄tsa, l̄tseitē k̄arbīna tsūrō k̄aragāntsībēn sandīgā k̄irū*, "they regularly arose at day-break, and, having marched all day, dismounted in the evening in the following towns successively, *Ts̄bag, K̄atsoulē, K̄ādūwa, Ḡafeiyē, Ts̄ātšāram, Ad̄ifā, M̄urmur, Ts̄āgūa*, and, in the morning, when they had arisen in the latter town and resumed their march, a hunter saw them in his forest."

*k̄ermātē karagātten dzādzirma dibi, k̄urgul̄ dibi, nigāran dibi, k̄ērī š̄uti dibi, b̄ultu dibi, s̄andi átē sandīma dibi*gō, "at present the following animals are the most dangerous in the forest: the leopard, lion, wild cows, wild dogs, and hyenas."

*dāntšē ganá ganán ts̄egerin*: *k̄uyē ts̄egerin, b̄l̄iye ts̄egerin*, "he eats his meat little by little: every day something."

*l̄tsē, nā yáyāntsūsōben logótšin*: *k̄uyē l̄tsin, logótšin, š̄irō ts̄adin*; *b̄l̄iye l̄tsin, logótšin, š̄irō ts̄adin*, "he goes and begs of his brothers every day and they give him."

§. 205. It now remains to notice the *peculiar usages of some cardinal numbers*.

1. The Numeral *t̄lō* is used for our "one and the same," like the Hebrew  $\text{אֶחָד}$ .

*n̄gāsō nā t̄lon nāmnyēogō*, "let us all sit in one and the same place."

*b̄la nd̄tē k̄ulugū t̄lōn 'k̄i ḡótsei*, "both these towns fetch water from one and the same brook."

2. *t̄lō* is often used without numeric force, merely to indicate the indefiniteness of its substantive, so that it assumes the character of an *indefinite pronoun*, and corresponds with the *indefinite article* of other languages, most of which, as is well known, have developed it from a numeral; e.g. English "a," German "ein," French "un."



*kūrū kōa tīlō, kanīamōntse mēgūa, nāntsūrō kádiō,* “again there came a man to him who had ten bullocks.”

*bēlamāšitēn kōā tīlō tátōa ngúbūa,* “in the neighbouring town there was a certain man who had many children.”

*tāta tīlō tšítse, nā péroberō kádiō,* “a certain boy rose and went to the girl.”

*tsairō kábū tīlō tšítse, sōbāntse bóbōtse,* “one day the boy rose up and called his friend.”

3. When repeated, it has to be rendered by our “one—another”—

*átēma kárgun dágelbē tīlōtē. Tīlō : lēnem, &c.,* “this is one remedy against the monkeys. Another is, thou goest,” &c.

4. Frequently *tīlō* assumes one of the singular suffixes of the possessive pronouns which renders it adverbial, so that *loñ* or *kurai* might always be substituted, without any change of meaning—

*kúlō pándęskī wu tūlōnī,* “I alone have got the farm.”

*nī tīlōñembē máskōba kámntsa?* “have they cut thy hand only?”

*ši tīlōntsé kúlōlan bārē badígonō,* “he had begun to work alone on the farm.”

*wu tsūrō káragāben tīlōnī nēmni tēmgē,* “I build my house alone in the midst of the forest.”

5. Between the words *tīlō*, *túlō*, *pal*, and *lúsgē*, there is no difference of meaning, and they are used indiscriminately.

§. 206. The word *máge* is identical, according to Ali Eisami, with *tútur* and *wúsgē*, but it would seem that this statement is correct only as regards the latter. Its use, however, is restricted to *time*; and *kábū máge*, or merely *máge*, is the usual expression for our “week,” just as in German, “vor acht Tagen” = “a week ago.” *Kábū máge* stands in

a similar relation to *kábū wúsge*, as in English "a fortnight" does to "fourteen days." The uncertainty as to whether *máge* means seven or eight days, doubtless arises from the possibility, in any language, of taking the last or first of a given number of days either inclusively or exclusively. To remove it, the Bornuese can say, *kábū máge túlur*, "a space of time consisting of six full days and odd;" and *kábū máge wúsge*, "seven full natural days and odd." When *máge* is joined with *lókte*, it means the same as when joined with *kábū*, viz. "a week." But it may also be connected with *sága*, *ńgalì*, and *kérbā*, and then indicates a unit consisting of seven or eight years.

If it could be joined with *kántāge*, it would fully answer to our "six month;" but *kántāge* is always followed by the common numerals.

To express our "fortnight," the common numeral for fifteen is used, viz. *wári* or *kábu úri*. The peculiarity which proves this term to be collective is the omission of *méogu*; for, let it be observed, when the numerals from eleven to nineteen are connected with substantives, they regularly appear in their full form, *i. e.* with *méogu* before them; *e. g.* *per méogu úri*, "fifteen horses;" *kām méogu túlurri*, "seventeen men."

The term answering to our "three weeks" also includes one day more, being *kábū píndi ndúri*, or merely *píndi ndúri*, instead of the common numeral, *píndi táta ndín*.

In lieu of our "four weeks," they either use *kántāgē*, "a month," or *lēmā dēge*, "four Sundays."

§. 207. The numeral *méogu*, with or without *kām* or *ām* before it, is used indefinitely for any large number of men—not of *irrational* beings—even if they be in reality many hundreds or thousands, thus representing them as an unbroken company, a united congregation. In a similar manner, we also use a definite number for an indefinite one; *e. g.* in the expressions, "a hundred times, a thousand times."

*kónō málamyē kām méogurō*, "said the priest to the assembly."

*áfí wūagátse, ām méogu? kónō métyē ām méogurō*, "what is the matter, ye men? said the king to the men."

*ši dábū kām méogubēn náptšín bágō*, "he never sits among other people."

*ásirntsa kām méoguyē pāngéda*, "the people at large have heard their secret."

*kām méogu šérecābē pántso*, "the men of the court shall hear it."

*ām méoguyē tsáruíya*, "when the people saw it."

§. 208. With regard to the use of *ordinal numbers*, it must be observed that either themselves or their verb regularly assume the suffix *te*, and that, in conformity with §. 203., they are preceded either by the highest or by all cardinal numbers which are less in value than themselves. The *te* which they assume may be considered as identical with the one corresponding to the adverb "when," §. 173., or with that usually appended to the absolute case, §. 334.; so that, the phrase "he came on the fourth day," would literally read in Kanuri, "three days, when the fourth (viz. was), he came;" or, "three days, as to the fourth, he came." Some examples from Ali will further illustrate this—

*kábunsa yásge tsábālan bótsa, yim kéndēge tsétēnawāté bérnirō nátsagei*, "they were (*lit.* slept) three days on the way, and on the fourth day they arrived at the city."

*kábū yásge kītényā, kéndéguāté, bérni Katagúmben tsígéda*, *lit.* "when it had reached three days, as to the fourth, they arose in the city of Katagum," *i. e.* "on the fourth day they arose in the city of Katagum."

*kábū yásgurō nabgēdányā, kéndéguāté tsítsa*, "after they had been sitting three days, they arose on the fourth."

*kábū lásge, ndí, yásge, dége, kénúguāté, béla Yákubābē tsabāndí*, *i. e.* "on the fifth day they reached the town of Yakuba."

*kábũntsa ndí kɛnyásguáté sabaráta*, *i.e.* "they prepared themselves on the third day."

*ši kábũ déyɛ kɛnúguáté bɛlántsurō íši*, *i.e.* "he came to his town on the fifth day."

*kérbũ, lásɛ, ndí, kɛnyásguáté kãm kúra tĩlō bɛlándon pátsɛɛ*,  
"in the third year, *i.e.* in three years a great man will die in your town."

§. 209. The *indefinite numerals* *ngásō* or *sō* require some remarks. The first can be used either as a substantive or as an adjective, and the second, which enclitically joins itself to a preceding noun, only as an adjective. When connected with *ndí*, *sō* corresponds with the German "alle" in "alle beide." But, in English, it would not be idiomatic always to translate it "all two"; so that *sandi ndísō* has generally to be rendered by "both of them," *i.e.* *sō* remains untranslated; *e.g.* *sĩndi ndísō lemántsa gótsa*, "both of them took their goods." Even in some other cases, *sō* cannot always be rendered in English, except, perhaps, by "together;" *e.g.*

*kónō búltuyē dágɛlsorō. Dágɛlsō mána búltubē pántsa;*  
*dágɛlsoyē búlturō, &c.*, "said the hyena to the monkeys.  
The monkeys heard the word of the hyena; the monkeys said to the hyena."

*wúa nyúasō gériyē*, "we, I and thou, eat it."

*andyúa nyúasō másɛna állayē sáde tšibuiyē*, "we and thou together will eat the food God gives us."

*nĩ kátunóma ngúdō ngásobesō*, "thou art the messenger of all the birds together."

*ándi bɛlándété kagándēsō gártsa, abándēsorō kolóɛɛda*, "our grandfathers built these our towns, and left them to our fathers."

In connexion with a negative, *ngásō* or *sō* answers to our "any;" *e.g.*

*dā ngásō wu rúsganí*, "I did not see any meat."

*ši kátunómasō tsúnōtɛní*, "he did not send any messenger."

§. 210. A surprising and apparently ungrammatical use is made of *sō*, when it is employed so as to correspond with the Greek *οἱ περὶ τινα*, and must be rendered in English, either by the Saxon genitive or by the insertion of words like "parents, friends, relatives, people." For in this case *sō* is annexed to a word in the same manner as when it is a mere adjective; but the context always shows that it is not intended adjectivally to qualify that word, but rather to occupy an imperial relation to it, and to render it subservient, in the same way as a nominative does its genitive. The following instances will illustrate these remarks—

*tāta pātō pērosóberō légonō*, "the boy went to the girl's family."

*bēla kāmusbē kibāndényā*, "he having reached the town of the people of the woman."

*nā meisoberō kadínyā, meisorō, tšibīte wu yáskē Fulátāsorō gébgeskē*, "having come to the place of the king's people, he said to the king's people, I have carried the calabash and thrown it at the Phula."

§. 211. There being no distinct forms for the *fractional numbers*, their want is supplied by the use of the nouns *rēta*, "a half" (like Heb. חצי), and *naia*, "a part;" e.g.

*mālam rētāntse dēgan, rētāntse bēlāgan*, "half of the priest was without and half within the hole."

*naiañtse dēge, ni wūrō yásge šē*, "give me three-fourths of it."

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## SYNTAX OF VERBS.

§. 212. The Kanuri has *not* developed a *passive voice*, and must therefore employ the active in a variety of ways, in order to express what other languages can convey by a distinct passive. The following cases will here be noticed—

1. The *past participle* deserves a first mention. By this the Kanuri approaches closely to a real passive; and, with a knowledge of the English only, the temptation would be great, to mistake it for an actual passive. But languages like the German lead us to make a distinction which will enable us to comprehend the right nature of the past participle in question. The German language is capable \* of distinguishing an actual suffering, a passiveness, as such, from a condition which is considered as a mere adjectival qualification, a mere attribute of the subject. Thus there is a difference between “*er wird geliebt*” and “*er ist geliebt*” both of which must be rendered into English by “*he is loved*;” but the first only is passive, the second is adjectival, and altogether similar to “*er ist gut*,” or “*he is good*.” Now the Kanuri participle corresponds to the second only, † although in English it is frequently rendered by a passive construction, *viz.* always when it is the participle of a transitive verb. And that the above is a correct characteristic of this participle, appears especially from the circumstance that it can be formed even of intransitive verbs, when it answers to our present participle active—

*wásìlì kúguì tìlō wárgáta múskōn tsetána*, “the white man was holding a roasted fowl in his hand.”

*tígì kóábē wulgáta*, “the man’s skin was peeled.”

\* cf. Becker’s Grammar. I. p. 212.

† Hence it is also constanly called adjective in the Vocabulary.

*ši gerágata dágel nótšaní,* "the monkeys knew not that he was hidden."

*ágō bul tsáneinyin tsakkáta,* "something white covered with clothes."

*dántse úrgata gótse.* "he takes his dried meat."

*keári dāgatarō tšō,* "he gave it to the old man who was standing."

*sóbāni nábgata, dūgō mánānítē nemēņeskin,* "my friend must be sitting. before I shall tell my story."

*kādī bōgáta kírū,* "he saw a serpent lying."

2. The *present participial* is likewise employed—

*kaligimōntse mégu, ngásō lemán láptsena,* "he had ten camels, all of which he had been lading with goods,"  
*i. e.* "all laden with goods."

*táta mána kámāntsiyē nemētšenagā ši pāntši,* "the boy heard the word which his companion was speaking,"  
*i. e.* "the word spoken by his companion."

*per širō meiyē tšebátsenārō tšéba,* "he mounts the horse sent him by the king."

3. *Kām*, "sombody," or the 3d. person plural of an active verb are often used as substitutes for the passive—

*kām šīgā tsúrui,* "he has been seen."

*kām šīgā tšerágení,* "he is not loved."

*bárbū tīlō rōtsagei,* "a robber has been hung."

*béla tártsei,* "the town has been destroyed."

4. The *reflective* form may be likewise employed instead of a passive, which is quite natural, as both the reflective and passive qualifications of a verb render it intransitive, and hence the substitution of a reflective for a passive occurs also in other languages, see Becker's Grammar, II. 40.

*wōkíta tsúruiá, karáturō teǵéri,* "having seen the letter it was tied," *i. e.* "it was too hard for him to read."

*ñgalārō sabarátena gurétšín*, "having himself well prepared, he awaited it," *i. e.* "he awaited it well prepared."

*šiteman ānpátin tárgunāte*, "by the same does the rabbit guard itself," *i. e.* "is the rabbit guarded."

*kērī mēogu, dábūntsa tšē sūben tergērena, ñgampátugā tsáruí*, "many dogs, having their necks tied with iron chains, saw the cat."

*kárgeni kámti*, "my heart is cut," *i. e.* "my courage is lost."

5. The *infinitive active* also may be used instead of a passive—

*kām tsélamte ágō rítibē*, "a black man is something of fearing," *i. e.* "something to be feared."

*bēla ñgásō tártē badítsei*, "all the towns have begun to scatter," *i. e.* "to be scattered."

*mánāte pánturō ñglā ganí*, "this word is not good to hear," *i. e.* "to be heard."

*káliāgō mērsātibē ganí*, "a slave is not a thing to be trusted."

§. 213. The *government* of verbs is simple: by far the greater majority govern an accusative, a small number a dative, or both an accusative and a dative. The prevailing notion of the two latter classes of verbs is that of priority, superiority, esteem, or its contrary.

1. List of verbs which govern both an accusative and dative—

*amárñgin*, "I consent."

*añgárñgin*, "I deny."

*badñgin*, "I begin."

*bertsémgin*, "I honour."

*godéñgin*, "I bless."

*kasñgin*, "I consent."

*mērsñgin*, "I trust."

*ñāgeskin*, "I overtake."

*ñóñgñgin*, "I am ashamed of."

*rñgin*, "I fear."

*rāmbúskin*, "I pay," (cf. Lat. honor = "reward.")

*tāngin*, "I ascend."

*wātsémgin*, "I judge."



Besides these, there are two other verbs, *nónigin* and *yénigin*, which assume a different meaning, according as they are construed with the dative or accusative: with the dative *nónigin* means, "I obey;" *yénigin*, "I answer;" with the accusative, the former, "I know;" the latter (with *keíga*), "I sing."

## 2. Verbs governing a dative—

*adúnigin*, "I bless."  
*báskin*, "I mount."  
*digérrigin*, "I praise."  
*gāgéskin*, "I enter."

*túmgín*, "I reverence."  
*yésēngín*, "I go out of the way  
 for any one."

Of these verbs, *nāgéskin* and *gāgéskin* are probably the relative forms of the now obsolete roots, *nánigin*, *gánigin*, and consequently their dative construction is quite regular; but they are inserted in the above lists because they now only occur in this form. Other words might be looked for in these lists, whose proper place, however, is not here; so, *e.g.*, *kértegeskin* is synonymous with our "to hold, to hold fast," and construed with a dative; but the reason of this construction is, that it is a regular relative, derived from the reflective of the verb *kérigin*, which is still in common use (see §. 61.). In like manner, *yakkáraskin*, "I teach reading," and *yekkéliskin*, "I teach," both of which are construed with a dative of the person taught, might be erroneously taken for original verbs, answering to our "teach;" but they also are relative forms of *karánigin* (obsolete = *karáskin*) and *liskin*; and the phrases *kámmō yakkáraskin*. "I teach one to read," and *kámmō yekkéliskin*, "I teach one," are elliptical, their full form being *kitábugā kámmō yakkáraskin*, *kitábugā kámmō yekkéliskin*.

§. 214. It is agreeable to the rules in §. 146. and 147, that the remoter object to which the *relative conjugation* refers the action of the radical verb should uniformly be in the dative case, whereas the nearer object remains the same as in the

radical conjugation ; *e. g.* *sóbāni wúrō tátāntse pēlēsegī*, “ my friend has shown me his son.”

But sometimes it may happen that in cases where, by means of an ellipsis, the relative form is usually followed by a dative, the elliptical nature of such a construction is in time lost sight of, the relative form treated as radical, and consequently construed with a mere accusative ; *e. g.* *belágātegā kégenógō*, “ fill up this hole,” the full form of which is, *belágāturō kátigā kégenógō* ; then elliptically, *belágāturō kégenógō* ; and then changed, *belágātegā kégenógō*. Again, *lámgin*, or *pésga lámgin*, “ I wash the face ;” *wu šírō pésga lámgeskin*, and *šigā lámgeskin*, “ I wash his face.”

§. 215. In the government of verbs in the *causative conjugation* two cases must be chiefly observed : one, when the verb subordinates merely an accusative ; the other, when it subordinates both an accusative and a dative.

1. The first case, or that of a proper and actual causative, takes place when this conjugation is formed—

*a.* From any of the intransitive verbs in *ngin*, enumerated in §. 58., with the exception of *yíngin* and *yíngin* (not of *kóngin*).

*b.* From the following transitive verbs in *ngin*—  
*túngin*, “ I honour, submit to,” *c. dat.* ; *caus.*  
*yitetúngeskin*, *c. ac.* “ I persuade.”

*c.* From some intransitive verbs in *skin*—  
*bāfúskin*, “ to cook, boil,” *intr.*  
*gelágeskin*, “ to remain for next year.”  
*pádgeskin*, “ I am lost.”  
*wáręskin*, “ I am ill.”

2. The second case, or that of a causative in form, but mostly a mere relative in force, takes place when it is derived—

- a. From any of the transitive verbs in *ngin*, enumerated in §. 59., with the exception of *párnigin* and *wárnigin*.
- b. From the following transitive verbs in *skin*—
- búskin*, "I eat," caus., "I help some one" (dat.) "to eat something" (ac.).
- dískin*, "I do," caus., "I help some one" (dat.) "to do something" (ac.).
- dóřeskin*, "I pick," caus., "I help some one" (dat.) "to pick something" (ac.).
- dúřeskin*, "I sew," caus., "I help some one" (dat.) "to sew something" (ac.).
- gámbúskin*, "I scratch," caus., "I help some one" (dat.) "to scratch something" (ac.).
- kéřeskin*, "I distribute," caus., "I distribute something" (dat.) "to others" (ac.).
- rářeskin*, "I like," caus., "I like or help some one" (dat.) "to get something" (ac.).
- rámbúskin*, "I pay," caus., "I pay something" (ac.) "to somebody" (dat.).
- róřeskin*, "I hang," caus., *i. q.* rel., "I hang some one" (ac.), "upon something" (dat.).
- róřeskin*, "I collect," caus., "I collect something" (ac.) "into something" (dat.).
- sářeskin*, "I put down," caus., "I put down something" (ac.) "upon something" (dat.).
- báskin*, "I beat," caus., "I help one" (dat.) "to beat something" (ac.).
- laděskin*, "I sell," caus., "I sell something" (ac.) "to somebody" (dat.).

It must be observed that in all the instances under No. 2, the force of the causative and of the relative entirely coincide in every verb which admits of both forms, so that we have here an instance of redundancy of forms in the language. The mutual force of both forms is rendered in English by any of the follow-

ing prepositions, “to, toward, against, for, at, on, upon, in, into,” &c.; in one case by the adverb “again,” viz. *yiteṣāmgéskīn*, “I distribute again,” the original idea being, “I distribute upon or in addition to,” viz. “the former distribution.”

§. 216. A few other cases remain to be mentioned, which, in some respects, differ from what has been stated above concerning the causative conjugation—

1. The verb *lámgin* means “to wash oneself, to wash the face;” but in the causative, in which it governs an accusative, it does not mean “to cause one to wash himself,” but “to wash somebody’s face,” viz. that of an infant, or of a dead body. The Verb *wárgin* means “to burn,” trans.; and in the causative, where it likewise governs an accusative, it also means “to burn,” but with the idea, “like a potter,” i.e. to make earthen-pots fit for use by burning them in an oven.
2. The verbs, *báskīn*, c. dat., “I mount,” *párgin*, c. ac. “I separate,” *sáigéskīn*, c. ac. “I awaken,” trans., in the causative, govern the same cases, and have to be rendered in English in the same way; but the reason why they severally admit of a causative, or, in this case, rather a relative conjugation, is, that one may wish to direct attention especially to the object on which one mounts, or the contact from which one separates, or the state from which one awakens. In the following propositions the causative form would therefore seem to be more correct than the radical form, although the latter is quite admissible and frequently employed—

*wu kalígimōnīrō yigebáskī*, “I have mounted my camel.”

*sandīgā leḅálāntsálan yitepárgéskī*, “I have separated them,”

*līt*. “from being in their quarrel,” i.e. “when they had a quarrel.”

*šīgā káñemlan yiteśáigéskī*, “I have awakened him out of sleep.”

3. The verbs *yǎngin*, "I holloa," and *yǎngin*, "I breathe," though both intransitive, use the causative and relative forms indiscriminately, and govern a dative in either case; the first with the meaning, "to holloa over or towards somebody;" the second with the meaning, "I help one to breathe or to live, I assist, support one."
4. The verb *nōngin* likewise uses the relative and causative conjugations indiscriminately, but both with a causative meaning, "to cause one" (dat.) "to know something" (ac.).
5. The intransitive verbs, *kásęskin*, "I run," *yǎrúskin*, "I fall," and *yúwǎręskin*, "I laugh," become transitive in the causative conjugation, but have their object in the dative case; e.g.

*kǎrgulǐ sǒbǎnǐrō tsukkúrǐ*, "a lion has fallen upon or seized my friend."

*ǎm ʹgǎsō kǎrgulǐrō tsagagǎšǐ*, "all people ran after or pursued the lion."

*ǎtę keǎrǐrō yukkǎręmmǐ*, "do not laugh at, or do not deride, an old man."

6. Several verbs can, in the causative conjugation, govern indiscriminately an accusative and dative—

*ǎskin*, "I learn," caus. c. ac. and dat. of person, "I teach."

*nǎęęskin*, "I overtake," caus. c. ac. and dat., i.q. radical conj.

*tsǎgęngǎnǎn*, "I dress," caus. c. ac. and dat., i.q. radical conj.

§. 217. The *aorist* is employed either to indicate past time in general, without any adjunct idea, as the Greek aorists: or, as the Greek and our imperfect, to represent a past act in its commencement and duration, or in its progress. As in Latin the perfect, and in English the imperfect, so in Kanuri, *this* is the proper *historical tense*; but with regard to its use it must be remarked, that for the most part it occurs only at the end of a sentence or period; and when several verbs follow each other,

denoting a series of consecutive acts, the last of them only is found in the aorist, as will be seen from the following instances—

*meiyē : āba mālam, wu bērnien katambúskō wurāgósō,* “the king said, father priest, I was born and grew up in the capital.”

*kámpūa kām dēge tšítsa, kásugurō ntsúnturō lēgēla ; lēgedányā, dábū kásugubēn dāgēla,* “four blind men arose and went to market to beg ; when they had gone, they stood up in the midst of the market.”

*Dāgányā, krēge Fulátabē tšigónō : āņem wāgeiēndeā, mei Delāma yalntsúa Fulātā yóktse, bēlāndērō kášyō,* “it being over, the Pulo war commenced : when we looked to the south, the king of Deia, with his people—the Phula having driven them—were coming to our town.”

*sagándē tilórō nabgeiēndeā, mei tšē, Fulāta bērnien tsetúlūge, gāge, náptsena, dūgō ságā pal kilugō,* “when we had sat down for one year, the king came, the Phula left the capital, he entered and remained till one year had elapsed.”

*āteman múskō Wāsilibērō gāgeskē, komándē áširndégā tsáktse, 'Engglīši, kēntši állabē, andígā sámāge, ságūtē, andígā ulla tilórō pšgeda,* “thence we came into the hands of white people, our Lord helped us ; the English, servants of God, captured us and brought us here, and gave us freedom for God's sake.”

*táta túlagābē tštse, létse, meína sōbágonō,* “the son of a poor man rose, went and made friendship with a prince.”

§. 218. The *perfect tense* indicates past time fully completed. It may be said that the aorist indicates the inceptive, and the perfect the completed end of past duration. If, e.g., you say, *kádískō*, you convey the idea of your having once started, and then of having been performing the act of coming ; if *tšeskī*, you convey the idea of your having fully completed and actually terminated your act of coming.

Although the aorist is the proper *tempus historicum*, yet the perfect frequently alternates with it in one and the same narration. The beginning of a story which was told me may serve to illustrate this—

*Mālam tsúrō bēlāben kāmūntse tīlōa. Kāmūntse tīlōtē širō tāta tīlō kēngali tsāmbō. Kōambūnyā, tātā šyūa kāmūnt-sūa tsasargāle. Tāta ganā wurāgānyā, yā tātabē pātsejī. Kāmū pātsegenābē kábū yāsge kītēnyā, sālāga yāsquānt-sībē sadāktšī. Sadakkānyā, kábū tūlur tsētī. Kābū tūlur kītēnyā, sādagāntse tūlurwa sadāktšī. Tūlurwa sadāktse dāgānyā, kábū pīdēge tsētī. Kītēnyā, sālāga pīdēguabē sadāktse dāgānyā, mālam karāmīntse bōbōtse, karāmīntsurō:* “*karāmīni, bēlā ātē yā tātānībē wūrō tātā kolōsege, komāndē šīgā mātšī, wu bēlā ātē wīgā sērāgenī, wu bēlā gadērō tātāni tāskē lēneskin,*” *tse karāmīntsurō, kāreīntse tsergēre, gōtse, tātāntse mūskōn tsētā, bēlā gadērō lēgonō. Lēgānyā, bēlā ātēn pāntse mātse, šyūa tātāntsūa nābgēda. Nabgedānyā, karāmīntse tātāntse tīlō kēngali tīlō mbētšī, tātāntse tsētā, nā yayāntse mālamberō kīgūtō, &c.,* “A priest in a town had one wife. This his only wife brought him one male child. When she had given birth to the child, he and his wife took care of it. When the little child had grown up, the child’s mother died. When the woman had been lost three days, he brought the three-days’ sacrifice for her. After he had brought it, the time came to seven days. When it had come to seven days, he brought the seven-days’ sacrifice for her. When he had brought the seven-days’ sacrifice, the time came to forty days. Then, when he had brought the forty-days’ sacrifice, the priest called his younger sister, and said to his younger sister, ‘younger sister, as for this town—the mother of my child having left me the child at her death—this town does not like me, I will take my child and go to another town.’ He bound up his things, and took them, and caught his child by the hand, and went to another town. Having

gone, he sought a home for himself in that town and remained, he and his child. Having remained, his younger sister, who had also one male child, took her child, and brought it to her elder brother, the priest," &c.

§. 219. As certain perfect forms of the Greek and Latin, *e.g.* *εἶδα*, *μémνημαι*, *novi*, *memini*, have to be rendered in English by the present, so also must the Perfect or even Aorist forms of certain Bornu verbs. Most of them, however, may in another context be equally rendered in English by the perfect—

<i>bóngi</i> , "I lie," prop. "I have lain down." <i>dángi</i> , "I stand," prop. "I have stood up." <i>kúskī</i> and <i>kíguskō</i> , "I bring," and "I brought." <i>námgi</i> , "I sit," prop. "I sat down."	<i>nóngi</i> , <i>nóngō</i> , <i>nógoskō</i> , "I know." <i>pándęskī</i> , "I possess," prop. "I have got." <i>rágęskī</i> and <i>rágęskō</i> , "I like." <i>ríngi</i> , <i>ríngō</i> , <i>rígoskō</i> , "I fear." <i>tískī</i> , "I am enough, suffice." <i>wángi</i> , "I dislike." <i>yętsęráskī</i> , "I believe."
---	--

It is evident that the Bornu forms are more correctly chosen, because all these acts must have been performed before they can be announced.

§. 220. The *indefinite tenses* can stand for any of the three capital tenses, the context always indicating which of them. But as the first indefinite expresses frequency, and the second indefinite singleness of action, besides the time-relation, they might as well be considered as two *moods*.

The *indefinite I.* expresses continuation, repetition, frequency of action, and may be used—

1. For our *present*, viz. when this expresses—

- a.* Capability or habit of doing a thing, as in all universal propositions or general statements; *e.g.* *nigálō pártsin*, *búnī mbátsin*, *kām létšin*, "a bird flies,



a fish swims, man walks." This is the same as,  
*ngúdō pártēma, bānī mbátēma, kām létēma.*

*kúyē létšin logótšin, šrō tsálin, bálīe létšin, logótšin,  
 šrō tsálin,* "to-day he goes and begs and they  
 give him, to-morrow he goes and begs and they  
 give him."

- b. Certainty or firm resolution to begin an act at once,  
 so that, as far as the will is concerned, it is  
 already entered upon; *e. g.*

*lénigin,* "I go," *i. e.* I have fully resolved to begin  
 going instantly. Sometimes we express this  
 force of the indefinite by an auxiliary verb; *e. g.*  
*wu kídāni dískin,* "I will do my work."

2. For our *future*, when no stress is laid on the cir-  
 cumstance that an act is not yet commenced, but  
 when it may soon begin and have its progress in  
 futurity—

*wu nánīen kāmū bágō : ulú sandígā n'galārō wátšin ?*  
 "I have no wife about me : who will look well after  
 them ?"

*ām wúra, nemé gúluntsaskinté, ndúyē sūmōntšē pérémtšē,*  
 "ye great men, as to the word which I shall tell  
 you, let every one open his ears."

*kúnganamáté, ši ágō bálī íšinté nírō gúltšin,* "as to a  
 soothsayer, she tells thee what will come to pass  
 to-morrow."

*áfíyāye állayē āgēmesaganáté šitemā ruíyen,* "whatever  
 God has decreed for us, that we shall see."

*ngō abānīlō kábin bōgáta, wáyē abānūlogā gáskin,* "behold  
 your father is lying a corpse; I shall follow your  
 father."

- 3 For our *past*, when it indicates that a thing was done

continuously, repeatedly, that it has been a practice, a habit, or custom—

*súndi badigēdányā, wu tšínęskē, sandigā ngáfon gáskin, tílō náęeskia, góngē yundúskin, ndí náęeskia, góngē yundúskin; ngásō kábū pántsa tsabándinté wu yundúski,* “when they had sat down, I rose and followed after them; having overtaken one, I took and swallowed it, and having overtaken another, I took and swallowed it; by the time they would have reached their home, I had swallowed all.”

*kóá sóbántę kęrdi tsúmtšin bágō, sálitšin bágō, sadáktšin bágō, lífā pēbē tsébuí, dā gádubē tsébuí, dā dálbē tsébuí, kímíltę tsei, dágata tętęrtšin,* “his friend, the heathen, fasted not, prayed not, offered not, ate the carrion of cattle, ate hog’s flesh, ate monkeys’ flesh, drank his beer, made water whilst standing.”

*wátšisō bárū, dínia bunétsia, ngérgęntę gótę, ndútturō létšin,* “every day, when it had become night, the thief took his bag and went to steal.”

*dzádzirma, dínia bunétsia, tšítę; tsúrō beláberō tšin, tšia, kánū tsúruiya, tšętę, gótę, létšin, tsátę, tšęgéria, kúrū kátširítšia wóltin,* “a leopard used to rise at night, and came into the midst of a town; when he had come and seen a sheep, he killed it, took it and went off. Having carried it away and eaten it, he returned, after it had become evening.”

§. 221. It is natural that, in all languages which possess verbal forms expressive of continuity or frequency, there should be a near approach in the use of these forms to participles, perhaps sometimes a mutual interchange (cf. for the Semitic Ewald’s Hebrew Grammar, §. 136. c.); for any action which serves as an adjective to distinguish and mark an agent must have been continuous or repeated. Accordingly we cannot be greatly surprised if we find the *first indefinite* employed in Kanuri where other languages employ a *participle*, or, in its stead, an

*infinitive*, and if we find it *alternating with the participle*, and also, in other respects, treated like it. Hence we may be reconciled to what appears at first so strange and startling, viz. that in Kanuri a regularly inflected finite verb assumes *case-terminations*. In addition to the examples produced in §. 155. others may be added to illustrate the above statements—

*bārēšīn tsúrui*, “he saw him hoe.”

*kóānēmgā kóā kandira átēṭē tšētšīn rumba?* “didst thou see this hunter kill thy husband?”

*kēngal Pótēn tšékúrīn kirínyā*, “he having seen the sun set in the west.”

*nántšē létšīnnō létšē*, “let him go to the place to which he is going.”

*ši málam, kitábu nótšēna, tsúmtšīn, sálītšīn, sadáktšīn*, “he is a priest, and knows the book, fasts, prays, and sacrifices.”

*keigamā nigáfō meibē tségei Fulátasoyē kerúnyā*, “the Phula having seen the general following after the king.”

*ágō tšerágena tsédinnō wólgonō*, “she became one who could do what she liked.”

*bisga búnyē wu nēmyīn bóngēgana lénnēskin wu našingoskō*, “yesterday night, lying sleeping (*prop.* that I might sleep) in my house, I dreamt.”

§. 222. In the participial use of the indefinite the mere abstract notion of the verb seems to preponderate over the accident of continuation and repetition; hence it is natural that the adverb *bago*, which expresses absolute negation should uniformly be coupled with the first indefinite when it refers to what is never to be, either now, nor at any future time; cf. also §§. 292., 293., 225.

*wu nígā rāmbúskin bágō, sai 'Alla*, “I can by no means pay thee, but God only.”

*mána ām wúrayē nemētsa pánganāté wu sébgeskin bágō*, “the word which the great men have spoken and I heard, I shall never forget.”

*yim abānem wúa šúa degeienāté, mána nemšúgīa, kótšin bágō*, “at the time when I and thy father were alive, and I had spoken a word, he never transgressed it.”

*kámū ndí dibī kwōyá, kománde nāndérō tšenāté, andlīrō “kámū ndí áte dīwí” gúltšin bágōba?* “if two wives were improper, would not our Lord, when he came to us, have told us, ‘Do not take two wives.’”

Whereas the first indefinite with *bago* negatives a future action for any period whatever, it does so only for a limited period when followed by *gani*; e.g.

*wu nīrō pérnī ntségladéskīa, kémendē wúgā bešemin gani*, “if I sell my horse to thee, thou wilt not pay me this year.”

In practice, however, this rule is not so rigorously observed, although it originally seems to have been the ground for this difference of forms, and we meet *bago* where *gani* would have been more proper.

§. 223. It may be considered as a consequence of the future import of the indefinite, that it is sometimes used with the force of an *imperative*, just as the future in Greek, but weakening, in a measure, the strictly imperative power, and placing the mere *expectation* that a thing will be done in a stronger light—

“*kām kérmei dúnōn tsebándin bágō*” *tse kitábuyē wu kíruskō*,  
“I have seen that the book says, ‘let a man never get a kingdom by force.’”

§. 224. The *second indefinite* expresses single action and is used—

1. as a *present*—

a. when indicating a firm resolution to do something instantly; e.g.

*līgē*, “I go,” i.e. “I am fully determined at once to

perform the act of going." It differs from the corresponding indefinite I. by representing the act as single.

*pīndin tāta dēgan wārō šē, ŋgalārō nīrō ntš'iskē*, "give me twenty-four, and I will give thee the ram."

b. When followed by an indefinite I. with a present force ; e.g.

*wu lēngē karāngin*, "I go and read."

*wu bōngē lēngin*, "I lie down and sleep."

2. As a future, when followed by the future tense or the indefinite I. with a future force ; e.g.

*kērbū lāsge, ndī, kēnyāsquātē kām kūra tīlō bēlāndon pātsege, nāndi bēlabētē ŋgāsō šīterāntsurō nā tūlon nāptso*, "after two years, in the third, there shall a great man die in your town, and all ye of this town shall sit down in one place for his funeral."

*kārgē tsundīa, kantēgālībī ndīsō pātse tšindō*, "having swallowed the heart, he will draw out both the kidneys and swallow them."

*nāptšīa, kōganawāntse ŋgāsō īsa, dātē kōmburō badītšēda*, "he having sat down, all his soldiers will come and will begin to eat the flesh."

*bālīe wu sēba īsēskē, šīgā yētšēskīn*, "to-morrow I will come early and will kill him."

3. As a preterite, when it is followed by an indefinite I. with a past meaning, or by a perfect, or an aorist"—

*būnyēgānyā, sūndi īsa, tsēptsā, ārgēm 'gāsō tsūbui*, "night having set in, they came, alighted, and ate all the millet."

*īšēskē, pānīen nāngē, ālla logōngin*, "I came, sat down in my home, and prayed to God."

*ŋgampātū lētse, gōtse, kūguīgā tsūndī*, "the cat went, seized the fowl, and swallowed it."

*abándē tsítse, létse, béla Bíbilátēn kámū yándé ganá  
Lígiramté níyā tséde, kígutō pāndérō, "our father  
arose, went and married our step-mother Lígiram  
in the town Bilbila and brought her home."*

§. 225. Joined by *bago*, the second indefinite negatives a single action which was to happen at any future period (cf. Indefinite I. with *bago*, §. 222.). The accident of time standing much in the back ground, compared with the idea of singleness of action, the indefinite II. with *bágō* may often be best rendered by our *present*; cf. also §. 234.

*ní mánāni pānēm bágō kwōyá, degá ní tsúrurum, "if thou wilt  
not hear my word, stop and thou shalt see it."*

*ágō fúgubē rámin, níáfobē, tsinté ní rum bágō, "thou seest  
what is before thee, but thou canst not see when that  
is to come which is behind thee."*

*kóayē sí tsánnā nāiga lemántse kámmō tsím bágō, "the man  
said he would not give his goods to any one on  
heaven's account;" understand, "on the occasion  
when he was requested so to do."*

*kárgenēm tsélam kwōyá, ní tsánnā pándēm bágō, "if thy  
heart is black, thou shalt not obtain heaven," viz. "on  
the one occasion after death."*

*pátorō lénēmā, ísem bágō, "if thou go home, thou wilt not  
return," viz. "on the present occasion, whilst on  
others thou mayest do so."*

When it is said to a blind man, *níte símñem rum bágō*, "thou dost not see with thine eyes," *rum* seems to stand from a phonetic reason, because in its stead *rámim bágō* might be used, whereas one could not say *rúskē bágō* or *tsúrū bágō*, but only *rúskim bágō*, and *tsúrui bágō*.

§. 226. It has been said in §. 217., that the aorist is the proper historical tense, but that it generally appears only in the last of a number of verbs which are grouped closely together; now the tense of these preceding verbs is uniformly the *second*

*indefinite*, and it can likewise claim to itself the character of being an *historical tense*. But it is more descriptive or graphic than drily historical, it paints history as it were. With the second indefinite narration proceeds, with the aorist or perfect it concludes. The second indefinite joins fact to fact, observation to observation, so objectively and abstractedly that it seems quite to lose sight of the accident of time, and, with surprising unconcern, leaves it to a following perfect, or aorist, or future, to determine in what time an action is to be conceived, so that it actually ceases to be a tense in the common sense. At any rate, the second indefinite has much less of the character of a real tense than the first; for whilst the latter generally stands at the end of a sentence, and so leaves no doubt as to time, the former is not thus situated, and depends on the time of the tense immediately following.

Some more examples may here be given to illustrate the use of the second indefinite as a graphic historical tense—

*kourúnyā tšítšę tsegásę, nā kurgūliberō légonō*, “after having fallen, he rose up, ran, and went to the lion.”

*kirúnyā, dzádzirma íšę, búltegā tsétā, tšętsę, búltegā tsébū, bārē badítši*, “having seen it, the leopard came, seized the hyena, killed it, ate it, and began to work.”

*ši wólte, íšę, nígúló gótšę, tsébā gęsgārō, pátō nígúlobēlan nígúló ganátšę, tsédirō tsębgónō*, “he returned, came, took the birds, climbed up the tree, put the birds into the bird’s nest, and came down on the ground.”

*mei kátunō keíyamābē pántšę, sabarátę, ámtšę nígásō tšítša, tšī gęlibēn tsálágu, tsába Kúrnoābē gógonō*, “the king heard the General’s message, and got ready; all his people rose up, went out through the east gate, and took the way to Kúrnoā.”

§. 227. The cases are comparatively rare where a second indefinite is historical without a past tense following. When the second indefinite is thus employed, its forms in *o* are preferred. A few instances may here follow to illustrate this—

*nāteṃan kōāyē kāliārō : wu nīgā mērsāntseṣkē, kāsḡimārō ntsúnōṣkē, ni lēnem, kāsḡimayē nīrō tšīrē ḡultse, ni wóllem, tsem, wūrō kátugū kámneṃ, léngē, tátāni táskē, yétsēskē, kūn kásen nīrō kām ḡultsāsganī,* “ then said the man to the slave, ‘ I trusted thee, and sent thee to the diviner ; thou wentest, the diviner told thee the truth ; thou returnedst, camest, fabricatedst a lie to me, so that I went, took my boy and killed him, henceforth I shall no longer call thee a man.’ ”

*mālam tsūrō bēlābēn kāmūntse tīlōa ; kāmūntse tīlōṭe šīrō táta tīlō kēngalī tsāmbō,* “ a priest in a town had (only) one wife ; and this his only wife brought him one male child.”

*tátayē abāntsurō : abāni, woínā andírō lēnem, kāsugun yibum yásge kútummāté, kāmūnēmtē tátāntsurō woínā ndítē ḡótse tšō, andírō woínā tīlōṭe rētsē, rētā rētā skédō,* “ the boy said to his father, ‘ my father, of the three pancakes which thou hast bought at the market and brought to us, this thy wife took two and gave them to her child, and one she rent in two and gave us each a half.’ ”

*áfi nīgā ntsebandō ?* “ what has happened to thee ?”

*ām bēlabeyē,* “ *koānēmtē ndú tšétsō ?*” *kedányā, šīyē,* “ *kandira, kamášindē áte, šimā tšétsō,*” *kónō ām bēlaberō kāmuyē,* “ when the people of the town had asked her, ‘ who killed thy husband ?’ she, the woman, said to the people of the town, ‘ this hunter, our neighbour, he killed him.’ ”

§. 228. We have seen that narration moves on in the second indefinite, and that this is usually the tense of a number of parallel verbs which are followed by an aorist or perfect, thus with these concluding verbs uniting into one group, and forming a kind of sentence or period in which a whole speech is, by degrees, brought under a convenient survey. But now these periods themselves need a connecting band, to show that they are merely



parts of a whole. And the second indefinite proves such a band of union. But its force and use here is peculiar. The same verb which, in the aorist or perfect, has concluded one sentence, is *repeated* in the second indefinite, and thus begins another sentence, or forms the first link of another group of verbs. This repeated verb accordingly does not add to the substance or quantity of narration, but serves merely a formal purpose, is a mere connective: and as a connective, it does not outwardly link together, like our conjunctions, but unites the various sentences of a speech into one graphic description, one picture. The historical aorist or perfect, by bringing the time-idea of preteriteness, so to speak, into prominence, destroys the picture-like character of speech, and it seems to be the sole object of repeating a verb in the second indefinite to restore this character. The aorist or perfect, recurrent at short intervals in Kanuri relations, maintains the *historical* character, and the more frequent use of the second indefinite preserves the vivacity of *picture-like representation*.

The following are instances of the repetition of verbs in the indefinite II.; and to render the translation into English as little awkward as possible, the second indefinite will be translated by a present, of which it perfectly well admits—

*légányā, meī gergátši; gergátse, kéigamā yóktse, kásagar tsémāge*, “he having gone, the king became wrath; he is wrath, drives away the General, and takes the sword.”

*Fuláta tšútsa, nā meiberō kásšō, tsa, bérnī kārāngedányā, meirō wókíta tšebátsa*, “the Phula rose up and came to the king; they come, and having approached the capital, send the king a letter.”

*kóyanā úgásō pérlan Fulátā dútsei tšéššín; dútsa, nā létę kábū tilowárō sandigā kesátō*, “all the soldiers pursued the Phula to kill them; they pursue and carried them to a place of the distance of one day’s march.”

*nā kóaberō káulō; tše, kóagā, lafiátse*, “he came to the man; he comes, salutes the man.”

*nā bēlamāberō kégutō ; tságūtē, dāgányā*, “they brought it to the magistrate; they bring it, it being done,” &c.

*sāndi móltei ; mólta, kóayē šígā gótse, wóptsege*, “they wrestled ; they wrestle, the man took him and threw him down.”

*tšítsa, létsei ; létša, nā gadé, kebāndényā, bōgēda*, “they rose up and went ; they go, having reached another place, they lay down.”

§. 229. The *future tense* is used to indicate absolute futurity : it represents an act as not yet commenced at the time of speaking. It is rather surprising, that whilst in form it corresponds to the second aorist, yet in force it is parallel to the perfect.

*bēlamāwa šciya, sandiyē nigāwāntša badītsēda*, “when the magistrates have come, they will begin their wrestling.”

*kām kāmū ndí ganātšia, kerētsonō*, “if a man takes in two wives, he will be partial.”

*tātātibē bū rúskā, kásuātē wīgā kolósonō, wu tšitsóskō ; buntsētē šimniyē tsúrūnī kwōya, kásuātē wīgā kolóšim bāgō, wu tsánuskō*, “when I shall have seen the boy’s blood, the sickness will leave me and I shall get up ; if my eyes do not see the blood, the sickness will never (*i.e.* neither now, nor at any future time) leave me, and I shall die.”

*nī tīlōnem dígallan bōnēmā, bíndiyē nigā góntsonō*, “if thou sleep alone in the bed, wild beasts will take thee.”

*lētšeni kwōya, tsū bēlābē bibítsonō*, “if he does not go, he will defame the name of the town.”

*káliāntse burgóbē šctánturō tšía, tšimčrō, kónō kásgimayē*, “if he gives his first slave to Satan, he will recover, said the diviner.”

§. 230. The Kanuri, not possessing *relative tenses*, has to express these by various other forms, as will be seen from the following instances—

1. The *imperfect* by an aorist, perfect, or participle—

*kigūtényā, nigampáturō kēinō*. “when she had brought it, she gave it to the cat.”

*gōgányā, murtāga pēremgonō*, “when she had taken it, she opened the smelling-bottle.”

*kūlō tsalgányā, argem tšenātī, ngālō tšenātī, mūsarmū tšenātī*, “when he had cleared the farm, he planted millet, beans, and maize.”

*ši bínyē dígalntsēlan bótsēna, rúntse nemžtsin* “when by night she was lying on her bed, she spoke to herself.”

2. The *pluperfect* by the conjunctival, or a participial, or a perfect—

*lēgedányā, dúnyā wāgányā, tátōa tšúsa*, “when they had gone, and when it had dawned, the boys arose.”

*kōa kāmuntse páltigō nótši*, “the man knew that his wife had conceived.”

*pérō kīngmyē gótsēna, ši nótšeni*, “he did not know that sleep had seized the girl.”

*nā ngalārōberō lēgányā, ngalārō dzádzirma tšétsēna*, “when he went to the ram, the ram had killed the leopard.”

3. The *paulopost future* by the conjunctival, the perfect, or the future—

*nānēm̄mō tšeskīa, ni tīgini ngāsō rum, bírti kábē rímīa, mánānem tširétsi, ni wīgū kósemi*, “when I shall have come to thee, thou mayest see my whole body; and if thou wilt see the wale of a stick, thy word will have become true, thou wilt have surpassed me.”

*tīmīni, kām tsāngā, tšétsin, nōņęganá kwōya, kóātégā tīmīn tsátsęganí*, “if I had known that, if I should bite any one, my teeth would kill, I would not have bitten the man with my teeth.”

*tšā wu bágō kwōya, nígā kólīram átīyē góntse, ntsátę, ntsétsō*, “if I had not gone, the wood-demon would have taken, carried off, and killed thee.”

§. 231. The Kanuri has not developed *auxiliary verbs* to express tenses, with the only exception of *dátši*, an impersonal

form of *dāngī*, "I stand," or *dātsɛ* of *dāngē*, id., by which the completion of an action is still more emphatically indicated than by the mere perfect. It has a parallel in the Spanish language, where the auxiliary *estar* also means "to stand" (L. *stare*). As to its use, it must be remarked, that it always follows the verb to which it belongs, and that this verb itself is uniformly in the second indefinite, whereas it can itself be either in the indefinite or in the perfect tense, the latter most frequently. It is only used in the 3d person singular, whatever may be the person and number of the other verb—

*gésǵā kámnū dātsī, sū lánū dātsī, bátsam tándū dātsī: dtɛ-  
mārō nandígā bóbōngédáskō*, "ye have now cut the wood,  
dug the iron, built the furnace, therefore I have called  
you."

*wu nemé komándē súnōtɛ tsɛsganāté wu nandírō neméngskē,  
dātsī: kōa mánātégā pāntsenāté pāntɛ ngǵlārō*, "I have  
now told you the word, on account of which our Lord has  
sent me: let every man who has been hearing this word,  
hear it well."

*nátɛman kántégā dārō kámtsā dātsin, kálemtɛ kámuásō,  
péroásō tsógōntsārō pātsagei*, "then they cut the man  
entirely into meat, and the women, with the girls, fill  
their baskets with the intestines."

*bámbātɛ bánnā tsédō Bórnun ngúburō: ām wúra ngásō šima  
tsɛbátke dātsɛ*, "the pestilence caused much devastation in  
Bornu: it entirely carried off all the great people."

*róntɛma tsúlūgɛ dātseni, dúgō dārō kámtsɛi*, "he had not  
yet quite expired when they cut him up for meat."

§. 232. A few other verbs are sometimes used so that they appear much like time-auxiliaries, but perhaps give up less of their proper verbal notion in Kanuri than in other languages where they are similarly used; cf. Becker, I. §. 90. The verbs *lǛngē*, *bǛngē*, *tšǛngē*, with other verbs following, may be taken as indicative of mere inchoation; as,

*lǛngē bǛngin* "I am going to sleep."

*lěngē búskīn*, "I am going to eat," comp. in German, "schlafen gehen, essen gehen."

*lěngē bóngī*, "I went to sleep."

*tšíné, námme, šígā rui*, "sit down now and behold him."

Similar to this is the use of *kóngin*, in certain connexions; as, *dělāge tsudíre kótšī*, "the rains are over."

In all these cases, when two verbs belong so closely together, the negative character, if required, is added to the last only, comp. §. 257.—

*lěngē búsganí*, "I am not going to eat."

*dělāge tsudíre kótšeni*, "the rains are not over."

§. 233. In the *syntax of moods* it will be convenient to term what is usually called the *indicative mood* the *affirmative*, because, in Kanuri an *affirmative* and a *negative*, as one single *indicative*, must be distinguished from the *subjunctive*, *imperative*, &c.

The *affirmative indicative mood* expresses reality and certainty; e. g.

*nónǵī*, "I know."

*létšī*, "he has gone."

*rufútseyē*, "we shall write."

§. 234. The *negative indicative mood*, a verbal form which the Kanuri has in common with the Finnic \* and other languages, expresses negation of existence or action; e. g.

*nónǵaní*, "I do not know it."

*létšeni*, "he did not go."

*rufútsšsganí*, "I shall not write."

As there is a *formal connexion* between the negative mood and the second indefinite tense, so also in *power* the negative joins itself to the indefinite II., by always referring to a single action, to an energy which is considered as occupying only one moment of time. Hereby it differs from the first indefinite with *bágō* (see §. 222.); e. g. *lěnganí* means, "I did not go;"

\* cf. Becker II. §. 215.

*létsasganí*, "I shall not go," viz. "on a certain understood occasion;" but *léngin bágō*, "I never went," or "I shall never go," viz. "on any occasion."

The future tense of the negative mood and the second indefinite with *bágō* almost coincide in use, yet there is some difference between them. They agree in rendering negative an action still future at the time of speaking; but they appear to differ in this, that the future of the negative mood urges the idea of *futurity*, and perhaps refers especially to what is still distant in future; whereas the second indefinite with *bágō* urges the *singleness* of the action, but leaves ample room as to the proper moment of time, to happen either immediately after the time of speaking or at any future period (cf. §. 225.). The first indefinite with *ganí* is different from both these forms; for it neither urges the idea of futurity, nor negatives an act which might have occurred at any future period, but refers to a defined and limited *period* of the future, and allows the possibility of an action taking place at any moment within that limited period only. So, when I say, *wu léngia źseskin ganí*, I convey the idea that I shall be absent for a certain period, as, a few days or a few years, but it leaves me at full liberty to return after such a period: whereas if I say, *wu léngia, źseskin bágō*, I state that I shall not return at all, but remain absent for ever.

§. 235. The negative mood has a peculiar emphasis when it is connected with certain pronouns, numerals, or adverbs, which we have often to render by "even not," or "not any," &c. And the particular word to which the negative logically refers has generally the suffix *ma*, cf. §. 283. 2. In this way also the language makes up for the lack of compound words like "n'one (none), n'either, k'ain, n'ullus," &c.

*ndúmā gémnyendé pátōtēn, kóatē ši tīlōntšē gémnyē*, "we did not meet any body in the house, but the man alone."

*wu ngádlēma rúsganí*, "I never saw it."

*kómāndētē, ši ndúmā, átē kērdī, átē mēsēlam tšē aláktšēnī, ndúsō*

*kállō alákkonō*, "our Lord has not created any one, saying, This is a heathen, and this a moslim: he has created all alike."

*kām tīlōma rúsganí*, "I did not see any body."

*ndúmārō gúllendé*, "we did not tell it to any body."

*kāmā širō ájīma gúltšení*, "the woman did not tell him any thing."

*ndúma íšení*, "none has come."

§. 236. When *átē* is joined to the negative mood, we have a double negation, which, however, does not, as in English, amount to an affirmation, but, as in Greek and Hebrew, is more intensely negative. Besides this it must be remarked that this combination is always prohibitive or hortatory; it is in fact a negative optative. This prohibitive character appears very natural, when we rightly understand the nature of *átē*. For although it is indubitable that it has actually passed into an adverb, and even into a conjunction, yet it is evident that it originally was the imperative of a verb now obsolete. The clearest proof of the latter circumstance is its occurrence in the plural form. There are also different forms of *átē*, identical with it in every respect except the sound, and probably more or less peculiar to different localities, viz. *wóte*, *ńte*, *ńde*, *ńde*, *wóndē*; plural, *átogō*, *wótogō*, *ńtógō*, *ńdógō*, *wóndogō*. But these forms are never followed by any mood except by the negative.

1. Instances of the negative with *átē*, when the latter is an adverb or conjunction—

*šigā ńgalārō teí, átē péréšení*, "hold it well, lest it should escape."

*kām dā gádubē gíbū kwōya, wágē wóte wúa šyúa túrvuiyendé*, "if one has eaten hog's meat, I and he may not see each other in the next world."

*wu agóte átē rúsganí* "I will not (wish not, may not) see this thing."

*átē šimnemin šimālō rúsganí*, "may I not see tears in thine eyes."

2. Instances of the negative with *áte*, when the latter may be a verb as well as an adverb (sing.), and when it is merely a verb (pl.)—

*áte ndímārō gullēm̄mí*, “do not tell it to any body.”

*áfí nēm̄két̄sindō yāyē, wóte kárgen̄em̄gā kámurō yím̄mí*,  
“whatever your intimacy may be, do not give thy heart to a woman.”

*ndé ndárāma lúgēm̄mí*, “do not go out anywhere.”

*ntógō gálūwí*, “do not (you) quarrel.”

*wótogō lebála díwí*, “do not (ye) make a palaver.”

*ndé lólōnēm̄mí*, “do not (thou) tremble.”

*wónde ágō átegā gérēm̄mí*, “do not eat this thing.”

*áte nāndérō t̄sem, ntsúruiyendé*, “do not come to us, we will not see thee.”

§. 237. The *imperative mood* expresses command, exhortation, request, as the following examples will show—

*lénógō, máleiga n̄gásō bóbōnógō*, “go and call all the angels.”

*dégá, gúlīgē, páné*, “stop, I will tell it to thee, listen.”

*súmōn̄em, p̄érēm̄mí, n̄i páné*, “open thy ears and hear thou.”

*t̄síné, léné, dígallan bóné*, “arise, go and sleep in the bed.”

*áre, gérte, kágen̄em góné, kágē šē*, “come, divide it, take thy part and give me mine.”

The 1st person plural of the imperative has usually to be rendered in English by “let us”—

*árovō, šígā kár̄ain̄éogō*, “come ye, and let us go near him.”

*t̄sínógō, lén̄yogō*, “arise, and let us go.”

*árovō, lén̄yogō, pát̄on nām̄nyogō*, “come, let us go and sit down in the house.”

*meít̄e belánden yón̄n̄éogō*, “let us drive the king out of our town.”

*n̄gásō nā túlon nām̄nyēogō, kálándō āmpán̄yogō, nyē*, “we said, Let us all sit down in one place, and mind ourselves.”

The imperative is always affirmative, and whenever it ought



to be negative or prohibitive, the negative mood with *atē* is used, cf. §. 236.

§. 238. It is strange, but not without parallel in Hebrew (see Ewald, §. 235. *a*), that the *imperative* is used in *indirect speech* which contains a resolution, determination, or wish, where we may use a *subjunctive*—

*lénēm, Wádairō wōkíta tsebánēm, Wádai tse, wúgā šéšē, ni náwné nēm*, “thou goest, sendest a letter to the Wadaiese, that the Wadaiese should come and should kill me, and thinkest that thou wouldest remain” (viz. “quietly, unmolested”).

*wúgā róšegané, atēmārō kádiskō*, “that thou shouldst hang me, therefore am I come.”

§. 239. The *imperative* of the *verba declarandi* is followed by the second indefinite, which must be rendered in the English by an infinitive—

*ām wúra ngásō bóbōné tsa*, “call all the great men to come.”  
*širō gúllé kídāntse tséde*, “tell him to do his work.”

§. 240. The *imperative* sometimes, though rarely, assumes the suffix *bē*, for the purpose, as it would seem, of rendering it more solicitous, or emphatic—

“*álla andirō kásām pínébē!*” *nyē logónyen*, “O God, breathe wind upon us! we prayed.”

*wúrō kómbū šébē*, “O give me food.”

§. 241. It is very peculiar that the *imperative* assumes a *dative termination* when it corresponds to our infinitive in negative questions. The dative suffix is owing to a negative verb, as *dámgin, wáŋgin*, which are usually followed by a supine (see §. 262.). An infinitive could always be substituted for this imperative without altering the meaning, so that we might say *the imperative stands here for an infinitive*. But the real origin of this construction seems to have been, that the imperative was considered a literal quotation, so that, *e.g.*,

*ši áreŕō wátšī*, "he dislikes to come," has to be explained thus, "he dislikes (*wátšī*) the request: 'come'" (*áre*). When the phrase stops with the imperative, which is often the case, it must be considered elliptical, a negative verb being omitted—

*ni wúrō ágō šérō?* or *ni wúrō ágō šérō dámñemī?* or *ni wúrō ágō kentsóro?* or *ni wúrō ágō kentsóro dámñemī?*  
 "dost thou refuse to give me something?"

*wúrō gullérō?* or *wúrō gullérō wánemī?* or *wúrō gúlturō?*  
 or *wúrō gúlturō wánemī?* "wilt thou not tell it to me?"

§. 242. The *conjunctive mood* presents an action as having occurred previous to another, or places it in the relation of antecedence. This mood answers in force to the absolute genitive of Greek participles, and forms the great connective between propositions, thus making up for the lack of certain adverbs, conjunctions, and, in part, of relative tenses (cf. §. 230.). The *past conjunctive* indicates antecedence to a past act, and the *future conjunctive* antecedence to a future one; hence, the former is followed by a verb in the preterite, and the latter by an indefinite, a future, or an imperative.

*kñem sandigā gōgányā, kōa tšítšē*, "when sleep had seized them, the man arose."

*kašínyā, mei létšē, pántsēn tséptšī*, "when they had come, the king went and dismounted at his house."

*kargāgényā, málināma nigásō nā málināntsáberō kásšō*, "when he had entered, all the dyers came to their dyeing-places."

*kolōgigényā, wásilī gerátei*, "having thrown it away, the white men hid themselves."

*kū wu lénigā, tšeskin bágō*, "when I have gone to-day, I shall return no more."

*námgiā, kámūni kōóngā úmānísōyē tšérágō*, "if I would remain, all the men of my relations would love my wife."

*nóneskiā, núrō gulntséskē: sabarátené*, "when I know it, I will tell thee: get ready."

*nígā yáškīa, wóte kámūnémmō mērsānēmmí* "if I shall have carried thee, do not trust thy wife."

*nìyē yímpiyāyē lókte tsétīa, wōgérma yákké,* "give notice when it will be time."

§. 243. As condition is always something which must take place at a future period, the Kanuri, not altogether without reason, considers it a time-relation, and supplies the want of a *conditional mood* by its conjunctival. Thus employed, the conjunctival can be followed either by a future or a perfect tense, the latter appearing to convey greater emphasis or certainty.

*wúrō kálgū šīmīa, wágā setí,* "if thou give me a shirt, I shall be satisfied."

*kéntsāmbū kéntsānēmin tsúgīa, kámte tsétšin bágō,* "if blood drops from his nose, it will not kill that man."

*ši lárđerō gágīa, lárđeṭe ši pátsēgī,* "if it comes into a country, that country will be lost."

*kōángā mána tsúrōntsībē péřemtse, kámurō gúltšīa, áširntse állayē péřemtsonō,* "if a man discloses to a woman his inward thought, God will disclose his own secrets."

§. 244. Sometimes the future conjunctival stands for the past conjunctival, viz. in narrating what frequently or usually happened, and in this case the future conjunctival is likewise followed by a past tense.

*pátorō gónyē tsyēya, gébam máfundī gónyē,* "when we had taken them and come home, we took a large pot."

*kaúyē tsúruiya, káfī ártši,* "when the sun had seen them, the locusts were dry."

*pépetōntsé pértē dátšīa, rórē, nígērō támnyē, ganányēya, ganá ganán káyēnyen* *Káyēnyē dátšīa, lókte kájībē kótšī,* "when we had fully plucked out their wings, we took them and put them into pots; and having kept these, we fried them little by little. When we had fried them altogether, the time of locusts was over."

*ši lētšin, rúntse souargáte* : “*búltū ši páton náptsena, wu íšeskē, dā yátseskē, góúgē, nāntsúrō yáskia, ši tšítse, nányin tsémāge, wúrō ganá štá, ši ngúbū gótšin*” *tse málam dēla rúntse nemētšin*, “priest jackal went, reflected, and said by himself, The hyena is sitting at home, I come, kill game, take it, and when I have brought it to him, he rises, takes it from me, and having given me a little, he takes much.”

§. 245. In further illustration of the above statement, that the conjunctive is the great connective means between propositions, the following examples may be adduced—

*kadínyā, tátagā k'gorō: áfirō yúremín? tse kigōrényā, tátayē kóarō* : *wúa abányūa, kélege látārō kasséndēa, kélege lán-yent' abániē wúrō: kélegete tsúlugā, šigā ŋgalārō tei, áte péřessēni!* *tse, wu námšana tši belágāben, abáni belágā tilō látse, nānīgā kārāngányā, kélege tsúlūginté kirusgányā, kélegegā kítasgényā, kélege múskōnyin péřesse, kārāgārō kargágō. Kārgāgényā, abáni kélege kirínyā, kélege kārāgārō gágī. Kārgāgényā, āba kélegegā tsúrui. Kirínyā, abáni gergátse, wūgā lāterámnyin bāgesgonō. Bāgesgányā, šimnīgā tsētúlugū. Kītúlugényā, wúrō: léné karagānēmō!* *tse wūgā yágusgonō, kónō tátayē kóaturō*, “when he had come, he asked the boy, ‘Why dost thou weep?’ Having asked him thus, the boy said to the man, ‘I and my father went to dig up a wild dog, and when we were digging for the wild dog my father told me, ‘When the wild dog comes out, hold it fast, lest it escape.’ Whilst I was sitting at the opening of the hole, and my father had dug up one hole, till he came near to me, I saw the wild dog as it came out, and having seized the wild dog, it escaped from my hand and entered into the forest. Having entered, and my father having seen it, the wild dog was gone into the forest. Having gone in, my father saw the wild dog. Having seen it, my father was vexed, and knocked me with

the spade. When he knocked me, he struck out mine eye; and having struck it out, he said to me, Go into thy forest. Thus he drove me away, said the boy to the man."

*meiyē šīrō, ŋgō pērōni áte wurátse, kāmū tsétia, lēnem, nā kényal tsúlūgin rúmīa, wóltēm, nānīrō tsem, wūrō gulúsemīa, pērōnīte kāmūrō nīrō ntšéskō, kónō meiyē šīrō,* "the king said to him, Behold, when this my daughter shall have grown up and become a woman, and if thou wilt go and see the place where the sun rises, I will give thee my daughter for a wife, when thou shalt have returned to me and told me of it."

§. 246. The frequent repetition of the conjunctive being monotonous, it is often made to alternate with *te*, which has a similar force, cf. §. 173.

*nā per ŋgéréntibéturō kašinyā, pērgā ŋgéréntseitē, per tátātibétie per ŋgásōga kótsi nēmdónyin,* "when they had come to the race-course, and galloped the horses, that boy's horse exceeded all the others in swiftness."

*tsábārō katamúnyā, tseitē, mínātēga káranǵedányā, mínātēga tsáruí,* "when they had entered on the way and were coming, they, having come near the lion, saw the lion."

*kitányā, gátšintse ganátīyē, tsédīga wútsintē, nífū tilōga gótsi,* "when it had caught them, and her younger sister looked upon the ground, she took a ground-nut."

*abgatényā, ši létšintē šyáa kúguíwa kǵlā jóktsi,* "he having left, met a fowl as he went."

This alternation of *te* with the conjunctive seems to be owing merely to a rhetorical reason; and, not unfrequently, several forms with *te*, or several conjunctives, follow in immediate succession—

*kadinyā, sóbāntsega bóbōtšintē, sóbāntse, nem tsáktsegenātē, wu nemnīga péréngin hágō,* "when he had come and

called his friend, his friend having shut his house said, I shall by no means open my house."

*šitṛátse dāgányā, kábū yásge kitényā, sádāga yásguābē sadakkányā, kábū túlur kitényā, sádāga túlurwābē sadakányā, létse, kámu gadé tséde, pátorō kígutō, "when he had buried her, and when after three days he had brought the three-day's sacrifice, and after seven days the seven-day's sacrifice, he went, took another wife, and brought her home."*

§. 247. The conjunctive mood of other verbs is frequently avoided by *dāgányā*, the conjunctive of *dāngin*, in which case this verb sinks down into a mere auxiliary verb; comp. also §. 231.

As *dāgányā* is usually preceded by a verb in the second indefinite, together with which its force is identical with the mere conjunctive of that verb (e.g. *kasáta, dāgányā = kasagatányā*), it would appear natural, to consider *dāgányā*, together with the preceding indefinite, as a mere *circumscription* of the conjunctive; and although virtually it comes to this, yet formally they must be kept asunder, as we may learn from the examples adduced in §. 228., and *dāgāngā* must be considered by itself as an auxiliary verb.

*dāgel sándi nótāni; kasáta, dāgányā, pántsārō létsei*, lit. "the monkeys, they knew it not; they wash themselves, it being done, they went to their home," i.e. "when the monkeys which did not know of it, had washed themselves, they went to their home."

*īsa, nēmtsa tēmtsei, nēmtsa tēmtsā, dāgányā, táta, šyūa kāmuntśūa nēmtsan náptsei*, "they came and kept silence; when they had kept silence, the boy, with his wife, sat down in their house."

*mālam Lāmīnu sandīrō ulla tsugōre, dāgányā, Fulāta, tsārō bērniben, meiga tsārui*, "when priest Laminu had begged God for them, the Phula within the capital saw the king."  
*ši tšite, létse, bánō tšībī, bēogō tšībī, kásunī mātši, nigāsō, mātse.*

*dāgányā, tštsə, kóa bóbötsə*, "he arose, went, bought a hoe, bought an axe, sought seed, and having sought all, arose and called a man."

§. 248. Generally the conjunctive mood is merely a repetition of the last preceding verb; but it very often repeats not only the verb, but the whole phrase connected with it—

*mína tšigányā, pērōga báktsin gonō. Pērōga báktsin gányā, tātāye kátsagāntséga gótse*, "the lion having risen, intended to strike the girl. He having intended to strike the girl, the boy took his javelin."

*kigōrénnyā, "wu kárgūni tsóútsin" gonō. "Wu káruḡūni tsóútsin" gányā, abáyē*, "he having asked her, she said, My tooth aches. She having said, My tooth aches, the father replied."

*tātāyē, "galé wu léiḡin" gonō. "Wu léiḡin" gányā, déḡārō kílugō*, "the boy said, Then I go. Having said, I go, he went out."

§. 249. After subordinate conditional propositions, the English language is far more sparing in the use of the conjunctions "so, then," than the German with its "so, dann, alsdann;" but the Kanuri is still more sparing in this respect, and *scarcely ever makes use of conjunctions after the conjunctive*. Yet there are some few instances where conjunctions are used; *e. g.*

*lēgányā, wóntē andiyē tšinyē, Bósorō lényē*, "when he had gone, then we arose and went to Boso."

§. 250. When the conjunctive is connected with a word terminating in *yāye* or *sō*, the Kanuri is so expressive that we cannot imitate it in English, but have to leave the force of either the conjunctive or *yāye* unexpressed—

*kréjuro lénemā, ndúyāye kréḡen tsátseiya, kām 'dāḡuyāye tšēššia, kóuneméga gónemā, ántē nigāsō tštsēda*, "when thou shalt have gone to war, whomsoever they will pierce, how many people soever they may kill, if thou wilt take thy stone, all these people shall rise up."

*yímpisō dā yétšēya*, "whenever (and if) we had killed game."  
*yímpiyāye kām šyúa tságādeñātégā tsúruiya*, "whenever he  
 sees the man with whom he has been quarrelling."  
*ndárasō látseiya, kóúwa*, "wherever they dig, it is stony."  
*ndáranýāye andígā sáruiya, šesšēsō*, "wherever (and when-  
 ever) they see us, they kill us."

§. 251. Whereas the indicative mood of a verb expresses the mere exercise of an energy as either momentary or lasting, and in such a manner that the idea of activity, the peculiarly *verbal* quality, predominates, the *participial present*, similarly to a participle or adjective, exhibits the same as a distinguishing *characteristic of the agent*, as something attached to his person, or a lasting state or condition. Thus it may be used as the simple predicate of a proposition, as also the participle in Hebrew; *e.g.* Judg. xvii, 9, *וְאֵלֶּיךָ הֵלֵךְ*, *wúyē léngana*, "I am going." Isa. xxxvi, 11, *וְשָׁמְעִים אֶנְחֵנוּ*, *ándi pányēna*, "we hear;" or, in connexion with other propositions, to indicate a state or condition during which an action takes place; or, just as a participle or adjective, in order to qualify a noun.

1. Examples where the participial is the predicate of detached propositions—

*ándi nígā nǒntšēna*, "we know thee."

*tsúrō kitábubèn tsábā úgalā mbétsi, nándi rúwa*, "ye see that within the book there is a good way."

*áfisō nǒnemma*, "thou knowest every thing."

*ndú kénígē nǒtsenāgō ?* "who understands (the use of) arrows?"

*pérō pérō ganí, kāmútsena*, "the girl was no longer a girl, she had become a woman."

2. Examples where the participial is used similarly to the conjunctive mood.

The use of these two forms does not altogether coincide, the former standing for the time-relation of *contemporariness*, and the latter for that of *antecedence* or *succession*.



In this respect the Kanuri participial agrees with the use of the Latin, Greek, and English participle.

*sāndi bōtsana, Nyamnyām dīnā būnyē tšītsa, nā šóguberō lebālarō kášyō*, “when they were sleeping, or, they being asleep, the cannibals arose at night, and came to the sheikh for war.”

*sága kráye Fulátābē tšītsenāwa dīnā nēngālī*, “the time when the Pulo-war began, was the rainy season.”

*sāndi ngāsō sūmōntsa pérémtsa, mána kāmubē pántsei*, “they all, when they opened their ears, heard the woman’s word.”

With the temporal case-termination, however, and sometimes also with that of the genitive, the participial has exactly the same force as the past conjunctival mood; e.g.

*sáji kéogutō? Lēnemmatēn kéogutō, tse kāmūyē kóantsūrō gulgónō. Kóayē: lēnesganāteman kéogutō? tse kāmūntsegā k’gorō. Kāmūyē: lēnemmatēman kéogutō*, “at what time did they bring it? The woman said to her husband, ‘when thou hadst gone, they brought it.’ ‘When I had gone they brought it?’ asked the man of his wife. The wife said, ‘when thou hadst gone they brought it.’”

*náptsenābē kábū ndīwa, kóltram tšītsē*, “having sat down for two days, the wood-demon arose.”

3. Examples where the participial is an adjectival qualification of a noun”—

*wu tsānei rágesgana máné*, “seek for the clothes which I like,” lit. in German, “suche die ich sie liebenden,” i.e. “die von mir geliebten, Kleider.”

*mána rōntsiyē wátsēna šīrō gúltsei*, “they tell her a word which her soul does not like,” lit. in German, “sie sagen ihr ein ihre Seele nicht liebendes,” i.e. “von ihrer Seele nicht geliebtes, Wort.”

*ši ngúdorō agó ngalā tsédēna, ngúdō šírō kárgun tšína mei nótšeni,* “the king did not know that he had been doing good to the bird, and that the bird had given him a charm.”

*dágel tšétsēna gótšē, pántsurō létši,* “he took the monkey which he had killed and went home,” *lit.* in German, “er nimmt den er getödtet habenden (*i.e.* den von ihm getödteten) Affen,” &c.

*kōa ngalārōntšē dzādzirmágā tšétsēnágā kāmū kanášinlan tsúru,* “the woman saw in her dream the man whose ram had killed the leopard.”

*ši mánāndō nemēnūwa ngāsō pántšē,* “he heard all the words which you were speaking.”

*pāntsurō kašínyā, kāmū állabē tšerám̄būna sándi tsúru,* “when they had come to her house, they saw that the woman was dead.”

§. 252. The *past participial* does not appear to be of very common use, and its force coincides with the participial present, when this refers to past time.

*sóbāntšē málambē tšīgánna, kábūntšē píndi ndúri lēgánna ši tšīgányā, kábū mágūa létšē, málammō nátsēgī tsábālan,* “when his friend, the priest, had risen, and had been walking for three months, he arose, and, walking for one week, overtook the priest on the way.”

§. 253. The *future participial* corresponds to the Latin gerundive, and conveys the idea of necessity or possibility.

1. Examples of this description—

*mei mána nemētsanna nótšeni,* “the king did not know what to say, or what he should say,” or more properly, in German, “das zu sagende Ding,” or in Latin, “verbum dicendum.”

*kómbū tsábālan tšībūná tšō,* “he gave him food which he might eat on the way.”

*wu rúskīa, mána nírō guluntsásgana mbétši,* *lit.* “when I

have seen it, there will be a word which I may tell thee," i.e. "I may have something to tell thee."

*pántsán náptsána, ágō tšédeṇa nōtsāní*, "they were sitting at home, and did not know what to do."

*mána nemétšedāna nōtsāní*, "they did not know what to say."

*labár kalinjā, ndúyē nā kylā tšesákeṇa nōtsāní*, "when the news came, none knew where to lay their head."

2. The future participial of the verb *ngin* or *neṣkin* is, however, used differently, being met with where the present participial is expected—

"*pérōni nírō kámurō ntštskin*" *tsámmāté, wu léneškē, tšeski*, "as thou hast been saying, I will give thee my daughter for a wife, I went and came back again."

*átēma mána wúrō gúluse, nírō guluntséskē, ni rúfūné tsánnāté wúrō*, "this is a word which he has told me, that I should tell it to thee; write it as he has been telling it to me."

"*ágō yásge ndásō ngúbugō?*" *tsámmāté, mánāté wu gédintse nōneṣganí*, "as thou sayest, Which three things are most numerous? I do not know the meaning of this word."

§. 254. The above are the moods for which the Kanuri has distinct forms; and as many other languages have also separate forms for some other moods, it now remains to be shown by what means the Kanuri makes up for its lack of these. The probability that, in the earliest stages of language, all moods have been expressed by time-forms, and the present practice in many languages of employing tenses instead moods (e.g. thou *shalt* not kill, *non occides*, μή *φορεύσης*), leads us to look for the wanting forms of moods among the tenses.

We have already seen, in §. 243., that the Kanuri frequently employs the *conjunctival* instead of a *conditional mood*. The absence of this latter mood is further supplied by the *indicative*

mood in its different tenses, as may be seen from the following instances—

*tšā mālamtę tšę, ádimmō mána nemčtšęgení kwōya, ádim kúlāntšę tšétšin*, “if the priest had not come and spoken a word to the eunuch, the eunuch would have killed himself.”

*tšā búrgon kāmū pándęsgenāté, táta kōángā wírō tsámbo kwōyá, kóa bánōni tšémāgi máskōnyin*, “if the wife whom I first had, had borne a male-child for me, then would he have taken the hoe out of my hand.”

*tšā wu tsábálan wúa nyúa kúlā fólktseyē nōņęsganá kwōya, páton tšítšaganí*, “if I had known that I and thou should meet on the way, I would not have started from home.”

*nígā ntsurúsgenāté, dánęskē, nígā ntšigóręskōbá?* “would I stop and ask thee, if I saw thee?”

*kāmū ndí díbī kwōyá, komándē andírō gúltsin bágóba?* “if it were bad to have two wives, would not our Lord have told us so?”

§. 255. A *subjunctive* is quite foreign to the Kanuri, and it employs in its place the following forms—

1. The first indefinite—

*kóayē: áfi dískē, dúgō kóa átegā túskin*, “the man said, What must I do that I may take this man?”

*fári gęsgāben kómbū mátsę, andírō sádę, búyen*, “he sought food on a tree, and gave it to us, that we should eat it.”

2. The second indefinite—

*márteęgenógō, yim kásugurō lénuwía, wúgā bóbōsgenógō, ntsagáskē, lényē*, “please call me on the day when you are going to market, that I may follow you, and we may go.”

*wúgā sęráęemín nęmín*, “thou sayest that thou lovest me.”  
*némđē tępnné, gágē*, “build thou our house, that we may enter it.”

## 3. The future—

*ni kánānémwā kwōyá, wúgā dánem šigórēmbá,* “if thou wert hungry, wouldest thou stop and ask me?”

*pānirō íšemīa, tátātē bóbōņskē, ni šígā tšírur,* “when thou hast come to my home, I will call the boy that thou mayest see him.”

*wu nígā ntserágeskīa, komāndē tšírágení,* “if I were to love thee, our Lord would not like it.”

*tsatánde dátšīa, kolótsa ártsonō,* “when they have built it, they leave it that it may dry.”

## 4. The future participial, see also §. 253.—

*mána nemétsouwa nōnūwí kwōya,* “if ye did not know what word ye should say.”

*sóbāni áte ágō wúrō tsédenátē kām tšídēna mbétsi kwōya,* “whether there is any body who would do what this my friend has done for me.”

## 5. For examples where the imperative occupies the place of a subjunctive, see §. 235.

§. 256. The lack of a *voluntative* or *optative mood* is commonly supplied by the *indefinite II.*; as,

*kóá mánátégā pántsenátē, pántse ŋgalārō. Kām mánátégā pántsenítē, šímā nótse, wāgēya létšīa, nā tšírēben ndúyāye pāntsónō,* “let every man who hears this word hear it well. And any one who does not hear this word, may he know that, having gone to the next world, every one shall hear it in the place of truth.”

*kóá tšítse, nā meíberō lēgónō, meírō : álla barga tsaké, álla kábūņem kúrūgurō tšédé, álla nasárntse, álla níga ŋgúburō ganátse !* “the man arose, went to the king, and said to the king, God bless thee, God make thy days long, God prosper thee, God give thee long life !”

*málam Fulátabē kúrayē : ndúyē belántsen létse náptse : kríge dátšī; táloga ŋgásō, ndúyē létse, bárētse ! tse málam Fulátabē.*

*andirō gulgónō*, “ a great priest of the Phula said to us, Let every one go and settle in his town: the war is over: as to the poor, let all go and do farm-work.”

§. 257. We have already seen (§. 224.) that the proper time of the second indefinite is usually to be derived from the tense immediately following, so that the indefinite II. might be considered in itself as tenseless; we have also observed that a case-termination (§. 154.) or a demonstrative pronoun (§. 175.) is frequently added only to the last of a number of words to which it logically belongs. Now this same tendency of the language, to express certain grammatical relations of a whole group of words only in the last of them, shows itself also in several other instances, which may here, after the tenses and moods, be conveniently brought under one view. At first this peculiarity of the Kanuri is calculated to excite surprise; but in reality it is nothing but what is often met with in the English and other languages, with this only difference, that in the latter the grammatical relation of such a group of words is indicated at the beginning, and in Kanuri at the end. The form converted in Kanuri is always the second indefinite, but the form converting can be various, viz.—

### 1. Aorist—

*wu šigā yardūgēskē, tsābālan kolōgōskō*, “ I accompanied her and left her on the way.”

*wólte, tšē, ngúdō gótse, tsēbā gēsgārō, pātō ngúdōbēlan ngúdō ganátse, tsēdirō tsēbgonō*, “ he came back, took the birds, climbed up the tree, put the birds into the birds’ nest, and came down to the ground.”

*tšítse, dántse gótse, tsāba pātō búltubē kolótse, tsāba pāntsībē gōgonō*, “ he arose, took his meat, left the way to the hyena’s house, and took the way to his own home.”

### 2. Perfect—

*sāndi tšitseiya, šigā bóbōtsa, ntsāturō wátsei*, “ when they

had risen, they did not call him, and did not like to carry him."

*tátoā nígúdō kolótsa, tsagáse, pántsārō létsei*, "the children left the birds, ran, and went home."

*mána búltubē pántse, tsítse, rántsen geráti*, "he heard the voice of the hyena, arose, and hid himself alone."

### 3. Indefinite I.—

*yímpī wóltē, íšyē, bárvēnyen?* "at what time shall we come again and work?"

*dzádzirma, dínā bunētšia, tsítse, tsurō bēlāberō íšin; íšia, kánī tsúruíya, tsítse, gótse, létšin*, "a leopard used to rise at night, and to come into the midst of the town; having come and seen a goat, he killed it, took it, and went off."

### 4. Future—

*ígali ndí kótsē, kenyásguāté, kámdō kúra tīlō nū, nándi nígásō tsáptū, šiterántsurō lénū, nā tīlon náptsou*, "after two years, in the third, one of your great men will die, and ye all shall assemble, go and bury him, and sit down in one place."

*ndáranyāyé, wu lēṅskē, mátsoskō*, "wherever it may be, I will go and seek it."

*logóni komāndē pántšia, wu nandírō íšeskē gúluntšédáskō*, "when our Lord has heard my prayer, I will come to you and tell you of it."

### 5. The negative mood, or a negative particle—

*a. nōnganā kwōya, wu pányin tšínḡē, krégurō létšasganí*, "if I knew it, I would not get up in my house and go to war."

*ši kábā tīlōma bóbōtsē, sándī ndí nemētšāni*, "he did not call her on any day, nor did either of them speak."

*kéngal tsukkúria, kāmúfima súntoy gótse, pátō péruštšin*

*bāgō*, "when the sun has set, no woman takes a broom to sweep the house."

- b. It may even happen that, from this practice, the negation is attached to a word to which it does not logically belong—

*ši lemántiyē kolótse nōntsēni*, "the goods do not let him know thee."

*ši tīlōntse keiwāte rāktse gōtšin bāgō*, "he was not able to take the bag alone."

*Fulāta ām bēlabē kolōtsa kīda kūlobē tsādin bāgō*, "the Phula did not let the people of the town do farm-work."

*nā lēngem, kōmbū māngem, kūtēm tšibumma bāgō*, "there was no place where thou couldst go and seek food and bring it to eat."

*āgō rūsganāte nīrō gulntsēske argalāmnēmīn rufātsammī*, "what I have not seen, I do not tell thee to write with the pen."

*wūrō āgō ganā sādē tatoānīrō yīskīn bāgō*, "they did not give me any little thing, to give to my children."

*wu tšilwāte kolōngeskē lētsannī*, "I shall not suffer this rat to go."

6. The imperative mood. This is of very rare occurrence—

*tīlō kāgngem, bām, lēnē, tīlō tšēngem yātē*, "one is thine own, mount it and go, and draw and carry the other."

*šīmngem tsāngngem bōnē*, "shut thine eyes and lie down."

7. The conjunctive mood—

a. *kāmmō āgō gōngē yīskīa*, "when I take something and give it to somebody."

*nī ulla logōngem, āllayē bānāntsege; pāndēm tāmiā, nānīrō kūtēm*, "do thou beg of God, that God may help



thee; and if thou hast received and taken it, bring it to me."

*āntsāni ladéskē wólṭeskīa, nandīgā beāntšedáskō*, "when I shall have sold my things and returned, I will pay you."

- b. It must be remembered, however, that it is far more frequently the case that a second indefinite is *not* converted before a conjunctive—

*wúrō nā ganá šē, námneškē! kanáyē setána, dallítē dēbáneškē, wárneškē! géreškīa, dēlāge kótšīa, wu lēneškin*, "give me a little place that I may sit down. I am hungry, and will slaughter my buck and roast it. When I have eaten it, and the rain has passed, I shall go."

*Bornútēn kām létse, kúlōntse dábū káragābēn tsáltse, árgemtse tšenátē, bārētse; kombútšīa, kamáun tsúruiya, íšín kúlótúrō*, "in Bornu one goes and cuts his farm in the midst of the forest, plants his guinea-corn, and weeds it; but when it has become food, and the elephants have seen it, they come to the farm."

8. The participle—

*wu kū lóktení, állayē tamisse šinnátē kū dátšī*, "to-day my time which God has counted and given me is over."

*ši ndáran kām dēge tšebánde, pántsēn tsúgūte ganátšena?*  
"whence did he obtain the four persons whom he brought and located in his house?"

*nā létsa kómbū mátsēdāna nótšāní*, "they did not know where to go and seek food."

9. The sign of interrogation—

*ní tšingm, dánemmi dúgō, sálū tšítse, nírō dántšigunóbá?*  
"if thou dost not first rise up and stand, will prayer rise up and meet thee?"

*tīgīnēm kalāfīa ganī dūgō tšīnēm, salūtsambá?* “if thy body be not first well, wilt thou rise up and pray?”

*nī yīrēmīa, abānēmma yānēmma kū tšītsa, náptsa, sandígā tšūrumbá?* “if thou criest, will thy father and thy mother rise to-day and sit down, so that thou mayest see them?”

§. 258. The infinitive, including the noun of action or abstract verbal noun, (see §. 26.), is often used *objectively*, the possessive pronoun, with which it is connected, containing the object—

*wu nānēm̄mō kádīskō logótēnēm̄mō*, lit. “I am come to thy begging;” *i.e.* “to beg thee.”

*kwīgórōntšę tsarāgenī*, lit. “they do not like her asking,” *i.e.* “to ask her.”

§. 259. When used *subjectively*, the possessive pronoun, being likewise changed into a personal one, becomes the subject, and the infinitive its finite verb—

*nāndī āfī kēndēondō?* “why have you come?” *lit.* “what or why is your coming?”

*āfī kūrundō?* *tšīrē nemēnógō*, “speak the truth, what did you see?” *lit.* “what was your seeing?”

§. 260. Sometimes the infinitive is used *absolutely*, when its force answers to the well-known “*infinitivus absolutus*” in Hebrew—

*karāte, karānēm kitābū dīniābē nigāsō dātšiyāyē*, lit. “as for reading, thou mayest have finished reading,” *i.e.* “thou mayest have finished the mere reading of all the books of the world.”

§. 261. The infinitive is also frequently *avoided* where we might expect it, and the forms occupying its place are—

1. Indefinite II.—

*lukrán ágō tšīrē bāgorō tsēbū šī tsúrui*, “he saw him swear on the Coran to an untruth.”

*níkíma dátse tsāní*, "he does not stop even to drink water."  
*kólle, rántsema létse*, "let her go alone."  
*kérbūni méogu lagaríwa, dúgō karángē tsebǵóskō*, "I was  
 eleven years old when I left off reading."

## 2. Indefinite I.—

*rágemī yífūmin kwōyá*, "If thou like to buy it."

## 3. Perfect—

*pāngányā, ngampátuga kolótsē létši*, "when he had heard  
 it, he let the cat go."

## 4. Aorist—

*atēmārō kolótsa kárgā*, "therefore they let it live."  
*kolósem lēgóskō*, "thou lettest me go."

## 5. Conjunctive mood—

*sandígā rúskā rágeskī*, "I like to see them."

## 6. The Future Participial—

*nemé nemétsanna nótšení*, "he did not know a word to  
 say."

7. The verb *ngin* or *neskin*—

*béláfirō létšiyāyé "kámū mángin" tse, pērō tsádin bágō*,  
 "to whatever town he went, in order to seek a wife,  
 they did not give him a girl."

*kámū némmō gáge, pērōntsúrō bánātsegin tse*, "the woman  
 enters the house to help her girl."

*léneshkē, kómbū mángin 'gē*, "I went to seek food."

§. 262. With the dative termination the infinitive answers to a *supine*, just as we know from the old German that the English and German *supine* were originally the dative of an infinitive; see Latham's English Grammar, §. 454., and Becker's Deutsche Gram., §. 248.

The *supine* I met with after the following words most of which are verbs—

*ápteshkī: úgō kóatē áptī léturō*, "behold this man has left to  
 go."

*badīngin*: *lemán bēlabē ngāsō tamōturō badīgonō*, "he began to put an end to all the goods of the town."

*dāntṣe ngāsō dīrtṣe wārturō badīgonō*, "he cut up all his meat, and began to roast it."

*kīdāntsa badītsei, ndērō*, "they began to do their work."

*badīngin*, however, is also very frequently construed with the simple infinitive, without case-termination—

*šūa kōāwa lētṣe badītsei*, "he and the man began to walk."

*mārba lātṣe badīgēda*, "they began to dig a hole."

*dāmgin*: *ši sandīrō dāptši lādorō*, "he refused to sell it to them."

*dūngin*: *šīgā dūtsei ntšēotsōntsurō*, "they pursued it to kill it."

*ganá* (an adj.): *sāndi lēturō dūnōntsa ganá*, "their strength to walk is small."

*īṣṣkin*: *kasālturō īsei*, "they came to bathe."

*lēngin*: *nā mālamberō lēgēda, nīgā ndērō*, "they went to the priest to marry."

*kāsugurō ntsūnturō lēgēda*, "they went to market to beg."

*māngin*: *ndūsō kā gōtsa, wīgā ntšēotsorō mātsei*, "they every one took a stick and sought to kill me."

*mbēlāngin*: *Šōgṣe šīgā mbēlātšin ntšēotsorō*, "the sheikh watched him to kill him."

*nōtṣkin*: *kūmō gōtārō kām tsónōtṣe*, "they sent somebody to take the calabash."

*rāgṣkin*: *ndúyē šīgā wūturō tṣerāgena*, "every one liked to see him."

*rīngin*: *sāndi lēturō rītsei*, "they fear to go."

*rītši kēndērō*, "he feared to come."

*tamāngin*: *pērō kāgēlmābēga ntšēotsorō tamātši*, "he wished to kill the blacksmith's girl."

*tūskin*: *ngō, ngampātū tsātānu ntšētsorō*, "behold, they had caught a cat to kill it."

*teḡḡeri* : *kámmu sandirō nščtsorō teḡḡeri*, "it was impossible for them to quench the fire."

*wāngin* : *mána abántsibē pánturō wátši*, "he would not listen to his father's word."

*kḡsaintsḡgā kolóturō wátši*, "he did not want to let his mother-in-law go."

*yáskin* : *kām 'di kḡri tščtsana nščtsorō tsásātín*, "two men were drawing a dog and carrying it to kill it."

§. 263. The difference in use between the *present* or *active participle* and the *participial*, appears to be that the latter always refers to one particular action, occupying a definite space of time, as a real historical fact, whereas the former is more ideal or abstract than historical, and expresses the general fitness and ability or readiness for an action, as well as a practice in, or constant occupation with, any work.

1. This participle is frequently used as a *substantive* or *name of the agent*; as,

*dḡtḡma*, "cook."

*logótḡma*, "beggar."

*kḡntsḡfōma*, "buyer."

*kḡllúdōma*, "seller."

*bibítḡma*, "spoiler."

*kombúma*, "eater."

*kḡntsáma*, "drinker."

*sālítḡma*, "worshipper."

*ndlōma*, "workman."

*kúrrūma*, "seer."

*mbátḡma*, "swimmer."

*kasáltḡma*, "washer."

*ntsákkarcéma*, "teacher."

2. It does not seem to be very frequently used as a common *participle*; yet we have met with the following instance—

*kḡrmā ndúyāye kām 'galā ndḡoma ṅgalāntḡ tsḡḡín*, *kām díbi ndḡoma díbintḡ tsḡḡín*, "at present every one who is doing good, does his good; and whoever is doing evil, does his evil."

3. This participle is especially used in negative propositions.

which do not refer to one historical action, but to a general and lasting state or condition—

*ásirndō állayē tsáktšena kām p̄r̄em̄t̄ema bágō*, “God is covering your secret, and none may uncover it.”

*n̄emsóbāndēt̄ē d̄iniā d̄ten kām p̄art̄ema bágō, sai álla*, “there is no one that can dissolve our friendship in this world, except God.”

*kām kāmāntsibē ágō bib̄it̄ema bágō*, “there was no one that destroyed any thing of the other.”

*kām kāmāntsurō ágō d̄ibi nd̄éoma bágō*, “there was none that did any evil to the other.”

*kerúnyā, kām t̄ilōma f̄úgurō kót̄ema bágō*, “when they had seen it, there was not one man that went farther.”

§. 264. The *past* or *passive participle* is properly *passive*, when formed of transitive verbs, but when formed of intransitive verbs it is merely *past*, and generally coincides in force with our participle present—

*ngalārō nā dzádzirmāben dāgáta b̄l̄āma l̄t̄s̄ē tsúrui*, “the magistrate went and saw the ram standing with the leopard.”

*āndi tsúrō b̄r̄nib̄ēn nābgata, d̄úgō wásili b̄l̄ānt̄šen tsúlūgē*, “we were sitting in the city, when the white man left his town.”

*keári dāgátarō t̄šō*, “he gave it to the old man who was standing there.”

*t̄igi kōabē kirúnyā, wulgáta*, “when he saw the man’s skin, it was peeled.”

*dānt̄s̄ē árgata gót̄s̄ē*, “he takes his dried meat.”

*kadinyā, t̄šinna ngásō tsakkátāga*, “when he came, all the gates were shut against him.”

*kúgui wárgata m̄áskōn ts̄étāna*, “he was holding a roasted fowl in his hand.”

§. 265. In its *objective inflection* the Kanuri possesses a means for frequently avoiding the use of pronouns, viz. always when the latter are indicated by the verbal form. The language, how-

ever, does not always avail itself of this advantage, but indiscriminately uses or omits the pronoun in such cases.

1. Examples of the objective inflection *with a pronoun*—

*ni wúrō tšírē yásge gulúsemīa*, “when thou shalt have told me three truths.”

*abá kōa, wúgā nōsemibá?* “man and father, knowest thou me?”

*wu nígā ntsúgōreshē, wúgā nōsemibá?* “I ask thee, Dost thou know me?”

“*andīgā šēsššin*” *tša*, “they expected to kill us.”

*tátāni, tīlōngem komándē andírō sádō; wúyē nígā kolōntséskē*, “my child, thee only has our Lord given us; I left thee.”

*ām tša, wúgā kógōsa*, “people came and flogged me.”

2. Examples of the objective inflection *without a pronoun*—

*dāné, mánāni tīlō mbétsi, gulentséskē, pāné!* “stop, I have one word, I will tell it to thee; listen!”

*pérōni kámurō ntšískē*, “I will give thee my daughter for a wife.”

*abá kōa, nōntšesganí*, “man and father, I know thee not.”

*ši tšírē pántse gúluigéda*, “he heard and told you the truth.”

*ni nígáfōn ségām*, “thou followest me behind.”

*tságāte, šō, wólte, pāntsúrō lēgónō*, “he brought it, gave it me, returned, and went home.”

3. The objective form is not always employed where it might be, but in its stead we sometimes meet with the common subjective form; *e.g.*

*ni andīgā kirúmīa*, for *skerúmīa*, “when thou shalt have seen us.”

*pāndēn andīgā ganāngem*, for *ganásām*, “thou putttest us down in our house.”

*tátāte wúgā tsúruiya*, for *súruiya*, “when the child shall have seen me.”

*nì tšínem, ísem, wúgā logónem, for logósem, "thou arisest, comest, and beggest of me."*

§. 266. Like other very ancient languages, the Kanuri knows of *no copula*, in the usual sense of the word, as will be seen from the following numerous instances ; comp., however, §. 280.

*abánem bágō naniga, "on account of thy father's being no more."*

*kántāgeni yásge nántsen, "I was three months with him."*

*ši kōa pérōbē ganí, "he is not the girl's husband."*

*ndā dugulgúlemī? "where is the muck-worm?"*

*átē tsóba? "is this hard?"*

*nì méi, "thou art a king."*

*kergége ši nigáfon, "the ostrich was behind."*

*rō bágō, "there was no life."*

*andírō kútū, "it is bad for us."*

*nándi ndisō dānī, "both of you shall be meat for me."*

*dímīwa ísanáté biā ganí, "it is not for nothing that the sheep have come."*

*kelūgényā, búltibē kánī, tárgunābē pē, "when they had come out, the hyena's was the goat, and the rabbit's the cow."*

*nì ndú? "who art thou?"*

§. 267. It may here be remarked, that when our verb "to be" is not a mere copula, but an actual *predicate*, the Kanuri expresses it by various words ; viz.

1. by *mbétsi*, "there is, exists," a defective verb, whose root is *be*—

*gégā kúra tilō tsúrō pānēmbēm'bétsi, "there is one large tree within thy premises."*

*kāmū píndi pántsen'bétsi. "there are twenty wives in his house."*

*wu ni kálā dīniábēten'bétsi, nōnēsganī, "I did not know that thou wast still in this world."*



*tsúrō kitábubēn tsabá ngalā mbétsi*, "there is a good way within the book."

*kām nīgā kóntsena mbétsi diyē?* "is there indeed one who surpasses thee?"

This defective verb has also sometimes to be rendered in English by "to have"—

*mánāni tīlō mbétsi*, "I have one word."

*yántse gána ganá kénigalī mbétsi*, "she had a little brother."

*kitábu tīlō abánibē mbétsi*, "my father had one book."

2. By *degáskin*, "I live, am, abide, remain"—

*kām áte* "wu tūlōníma ágō nónigī" *tsédegāni?* "may there not be any one who says, I alone know any thing."

*tútāni áte kágenemma fóniné, nánemin dagū*, "join this my child with thine, that they may be with thee."

*nátēn kárgū dūgō búltuyē létse*, "there they were till the hyena went."

*pátō bélamābēn kárgā*, "he was in the magistrate's house."

3. By *nábgoskō*, "I sit, I am"—

*dínā nábgonōman, kōángā, pérōntse tsambúnagā kámurō tsédinté ni pánēmbú?* "hast thou heard since the world began of a man having married his daughter whom he had begotten?"

*kérmaándinígāsō—komándē mánāndē gadérō tséde—nábgeiyē*, "at present all of us are such whose language our Lord has divided."

§. 268. The enclitic verb *nigin* or *neskin* generally precedes the "verba sentiendi et declarandi," and introduces in direct speech what the Latin language would turn into an "accusative cum infinitivo." In English *nigin* remains unexpressed, and only the following verb is translated.

1. Thus *neskin* is joined—

With *gúlugin*: "nā āmniberō lēneskin," *neskē gulgasgányā*, "when I had said, I will go to my people."

*námnyē! tṣe kámūnémyē nīrō gulúntšín*, "let us sit down, said thy wife to thee."

With *kóreškin: ndárā léngmín? tṣe kigōrényā*, "he having asked me, Where wilt thou go?"

*áfi ngáfon dímin? tṣe šīgā kigórō*, "what didst thou do afterwards? asked he him."

With *lalángin: áfi lambónem? tṣe šīgā lalágonō*, "she scolded him, saying, What business is it of thine?"

With *neméngin: nem témnem, kámūnémwā námnuwī, nem neméngemín*, "thou saidst that thou wouldst build a house that thou and thy wife might sit down."

*nándi kámū ndí rágū nū neménuwī*, "ye said that ye liked two wives."

With *ntsúngin: mártegené, wóté béla tárnemmi! tṣe meiyē šīgā ntsúngonō*, "the king entreated him, saying, Please, do not destroy the town."

With *tamángin: "tsánnā tšibándṣkō" tṣe tamátšī kárgentsen*, "he expected in his heart that he would (*lit.* I shall) obtain heaven."

2. When *neškin* refers to an inward speaking, a thought, or an opinion, it is often followed by *kargóškō*, which then cannot be rendered into English, and which seems to convey the idea, that one rested quite satisfied with his opinion, and did not entertain any doubt; as,

*kóántṣe kábin tsúrō ngérgibēn nōtsení, lemán tṣe kárgā*, "she did not know that her husband was a corpse in the bag, she thought it was goods."

*kóántsa bélamáširō légonō, tsā kárgū*, "they were of opinion that their husband had gone to a neighbouring town."

*tátāntsétemā debánṣkin tṣe ši kárgā*, "he fully believed that I would kill his child."

§. 269. It must be observed as a striking peculiarity of the Kanuri, that, in quoting a speech, the subject alone, or the subject with the remote object, usually stand before the speech,

and *neşkin*, the predicate of that subject, follows the quotation however long it may be, and frequently with a repetition of both the subject and the remote object ; as,

*meiyē sandırō* : “*lénógō, tsúrō bérnübēn ndúyāye kām létse, kéngal nā tsúlūgin tsúruiya, wólte íšia, wu šírō pērōni tšéskō kámurō*” *kónō meiyē kōganāwa kām yásgurō*, “the king said to three soldiers, Go ye ; and any person within the town who goes, and, after having seen the place where the sun rises, comes back again, to him will I give my daughter for a wife.”

*ngúdō kóarō* : *pérturō bām, pátorō lēnemā, kēndegei meibēn nígā meiyē ntsugórīa, meirō*, “*wu nā kau tsúlūginno sunótēm* :” “*léné, rum, tsemā, pērōni níró kámurō ntšískin*,” “*tsámmáté, wu léneškē tšeski*,” *gúllé meirō, mei níró nemé neméntsęge páné, kónō ngúdoýē kóarō*, “the bird said to the man, Mount this horse, and, having gone home, say to the king when he shall have asked thee in the king’s court, ‘as thou hast sent me to the place where the sun rises, and hast said, Go, see, and having returned, I give thee my daughter for a wife : I went and have returned,’ and hear what the king will tell thee.”

*ámāntsę kašinyā, ámāntsurō* : *ándi búrgō tšyente, minagā díballan kirúyēndeā, táta sōbānítíyē minagā kátsagāntsęn tsátse, mína létse, kértsakkonō. Kértsakkányā, ándi kúrū lényenté, mína kúrū gergátse, tšítse, andirō tsukkúrinté, tátayē ngáidōntségū kán báktse, šilā tšétúlugī ; mína létse, kértsaktši, ándi kónyē, lényē. Légeiēndeā ndúmārō gúllendé, bésgēndé párnýē ; kašéndēā, táta béla bésgēwábétíē mína núnārō nótšení ; ši minagā kirúnyā, tšénāntsę pítse, létse, minagā tsátse, tēmbáltse, kolótsi. Kológányā, wúyē léneškē bólōntsaskē, ísū, tátōa kām `di átę, ndúntsa kamárwagō, wúrō gulúšenógō pángē kónō péroyē ámāntsurō*, “when her people had come, the girl said to her people, When we first came, and had seen a lion on the way, a boy, this my friend, stuck the lion with his javelin, and the lion went on and sat down. After he had sat down and

we had again come, the lion was again vexed, arose, and when he fell upon us, the boy smote his jaw with a stick, so that a bone fell out; the lion went, sat down, and we passed by and went on. When we had gone, we did not tell it to any body, but performed our dance; and when we came back, the boy of that town where the dance had been, knew not that the lion was dead; but having seen the lion, he drew his sword, went, stuck the lion, rolled him over and left him. Having left him, I went, called you to come, and now I will hear: tell me, which of these two boys is the most courageous?"

§. 270. The use of the verb *teḡēreṣkin* (see Dictionary) is also so peculiar that it will not be superfluous to illustrate it by a number of examples—

*gōgányā, wu rō yākēskin neṣkē, badigasgányā, wūrō teḡēri rō ntsókō*, "when I had taken him, I wanted to put life into him; but when I had begun, I could not put life into him."

*Fuláta yókturō nírō teḡēri kwōya, aré*, "if it be too hard for thee to drive the Phula, come."

*góturō badigányā, šírō góturō teḡēri*, "when he began to take it, he could not take it."

*dinā tsūtsi, nandírō teḡēri, ándi tsáman nōnyēna*, "we knew it beforehand, that times would be unsettled and hard."

*tšē tātšia, dzádzirma tšéyē kéntārō teḡēri*, "when he had fastened the rope, the rope did not succeed in catching the leopard."

*kóatē pērōntsurō manátseḡiyāyé, pērō šírō teḡēri*, "whenever the man spoke to his girl, she did not yield to him."

*ši keigamā yásge kínōtosō, Fuláta kríḡurō sandírō tagúrū*, "although he had sent three generals, the Phula were too strong for them in war (*lit.* for war)."

§. 271. It only remains to notice a peculiar use of verbs denominative. From every Kanuri substantive a verb in *nḡin*

can be derived, which, with the same substantive as its subject, expresses what we convey in English by, "to prosper, thrive; to answer one's idea, purpose, destination; to be right, proper, good," &c.—

*bḗlándō kurámi dḗgūa bḗlátsanni*, "your town, having four chiefs, will not prosper."

*tátātḗ ṅḡḡlārō tatátšín*, "this boy thrives beautifully."

*nḗnní nḗntsín ganí*, "my house no longer answers its purpose: it is old, dilapidated."

*kámū sḓbānībē kāmútsī*, "my friend's wife is become an excellent woman."

*pḗrntḡ pḗrštín bágō*, "his horse is not a good one, or will never be a good one."

*kríḡḡ Fulátabē kríḡḡtší*, "the wars of the Phula are wars indeed."

Sometimes, however, the substantive is not converted into a verb, and yet becomes the predicate; *e.g.*

*bḗlándē átḡ bḗlā ganí*, "this our town is no longer good."

*sḓbāni sḓbā*, "my friend is a friend indeed"

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

### CERTAIN SUFFIXES.

---

#### I. *Interrogative Suffixes.*

§. 272. The interrogative suffix *ba*, which is used in inquiring after really uncertain or unknown things, can be appended to nouns as well as verbs. Its original form seems to have been *ra*, which, though rarely, is still in use. The reason why *ra* was changed into *ba* was probably this, that it has so often to be suffixed to the second person of the indefinite II., which terminates in *m* and which is so much more easily followed by *b* (perhaps at first *v*) than by *r*. After the change had taken place in this

most common case, it was easy to retain it also where there was no phonetic reason for it. This interrogative *ra*, and the conjunction *ra*, had probably the same origin. The only instance where I have met with *ra* instead of the common *ba* is—

*wáa nandyúasō lényerrá?* “shall I and thou go together.”

§. 273. The interrogative sign is always suffixed to the particular word in question; and if a whole proposition is interrogative, it stands after the verb; as,

*ntsérágesganí, dúgō dā nánemín tsímāgeskōbá?* “did I not love thee before I accepted meat from thee?”

*wúgā nōsēmba?* “knowest thou me?”

*meíba rágū?* *meíma rágē,* “do you want a king? Yes.”

*dunónyimba nábgoškō?* “did I sit down by my own strength? or: did I remain by force?”

*ni tīlōnēmbē múskōba kám̄tsa?* “did they cut off thy hand only?”

*kámū átibē kōátē niba yētsem?* “didst thou kill the husband of this woman?”

*átē tsqúba?* “is this hard?”

*mei Ibrám̄ba kríge tsúgutō?* “did king Abraham bring war?”

*abándē yándégā wátsenábá, dúgō yánde kánū?* “did our father dislike our mother before our mother died?”

§. 274. This suffix is generally marked out by a very strong accent when preceded by several unaccented syllables; but if the latter is not the case it is toneless, and especially so after the negative mood—

*ni mána bísgā guluntsēs̄gana pánem̄m̄iba, kū wóltem, nānirō kádim?* “didst thou not hear the word which I was telling thee yesterday, that thou comest again to-day?”

*níte kóa málam dēlātē nónem̄m̄iba? ándi dā kárágābē nígásō šíma málamdégō ni nónem̄m̄iba?* “didst thou not know priest jackal? didst thou not know that he is the priest of all of us, the beasts of the forest?”

*wúgā sūrūnim̄bá dúgō kōátiyē šš̄sin?* “dost thou look at me when this man is about to kill me?”

§. 275. Sometimes the suffix is altogether omitted, so that the interrogation is expressed by the tone only ; and this, after verbs in the indefinite I., may even be considered as the rule.

*agóṭemāté ñgalátšonō ?* “ will this thing be for good ? ”

*agóṭé ñgásō meiyē súdō ?* “ has the king given me all these things ? ”

*ĩsem, wúgā sōbásẽmin ?* “ dost thou come and befriend me ? ”

*ni wúgā súwũrẽmin ?* “ dost thou laugh at me. ”

*kām komāndē dširntšẽ tsúktšẽnāmá, ni aširntšẽ pẽrẽmnẽmin ?*  
“ wilt thou disclose the secret of him, whose secret our Lord is concealing ? ”

§. 276. But in a few cases the indefinite I. assumes the suffix, and with the indefinite II. its assumption is a rule, rarely departed from—

*kām gadé nótšĩnbá, sai ulla ?* “ will any body else know it except God ? ”

*wu logóṭẽnem páñgĩnba ?* “ can I hear thy supplication ? ”

*dágel góñgana súrūba ?* “ did you see me take a monkey ? ”

*nándi kasánnūba ?* “ will ye consent ? ”

*kámurō tséđinté ni páñẽmba ?* “ didst thou hear that he made her his wife ? ”

§. 277. In a language which has no subjunctive mood, we must be prepared to find no distinction made between direct and indirect questions. Accordingly the interrogative *ba* is also used in indirect questions, where it has to be translated by *whether* or *if*.

*abāndoye nandígā kóreškē gonō, nándi ñgásō dātšĩba ?* “ your father told me to ask you, whether you are all here ? ”

*tígĩni ñgásō wũnć, birtĩ kábē rumba ?* “ behold my whole body, whether thou canst see the wale of a stick ? ”

*ñgásō ĩa dātšĩba, andĩrō wũnć ?* “ see for us, whether all are come ? ”

§. 278. It is another proof of the economy which the Kanuri observes in the use of forms (comp. §. 257.), that it dispenses with

the interrogative suffix whenever the question is expressed by an interrogative pronoun or adverb—

*ndáguřō lálēmin?* “for how much wilt thou sell it?”

*nándi ndárān kilāgu, tatoáni?* “whence have ye come, my children?”

*labárpī wúrō kútēm?* “what news dost thou bring me?”

*ágō táta átiyē tsédēnāté ndú tsédin?* “who will do what this boy has done?”

*áfirō ñgínótō?* “why did he send thee?”

*áfigei tsédō?* “how did he do it?”

*andírō áfi sádem buiyen?* “what dost thou give us to eat?”

*mánāté ndú nandírō gúlntsa pánū?* “who told you this word that you heard?”

§. 279. The *interrogative enclitic* “*genya*” may likewise be ranked among the suffixes (comp. §. 323.). It is used when the question is not after something uncertain or undecided; but when an answer is anticipated as sure, and not admitting of any doubt. It is, therefore, not the object of questions with *genya*, to have a doubt dissolved, or information given, but by raising a doubt, or by producing an artificial uncertainty, to make a fact or statement appear the more certain and indubitable. Herein the use of *genya* differs from that of *ba*. In English, negative questions answer the same purpose, and, therefore, *genya* is usually translated by them; as,

*nándi kú rúwui genya, tsírētē átēma komándē tserágō?* “have ye seen to-day, that what our Lord loves is truth?”

*kúllōnyin genya ñgeibuskō?* “have I not bought thee with my money?”

*šimā genya andígā sásibū?* “has not he bought us?”

*ši nandígā búrgōn kótsei, náudi rāwí genya?* “did ye not see that he exceeds you in intelligence?”

*wátē karáminite dántse rāwí genya? gányā,* “when he had said, Do ye see the flesh of my little brother?”

*mána nemētšenāté ni pánēmī genyá?* “hast thou heard the word which he was saying?”



*állā gēnya yāntségā gótse?* “was it not God that took away his mother?”

*tsā pērtē tsūrō bibítša wu ášerní gēnya?* “if the mare had miscarried, had not the loss been mine?”

## II. Predicative Suffix.

§. 280. The suffix *go* is of very frequent occurrence, after the predicate of a proposition, with the purpose, as it would seem, of marking it as such, thus answering, in a measure, to the copula of other languages. But probably it is expressive, at the same time, of some emphasis or distinction. It is chiefly used when a noun, pronoun, adjective, or participle is the predicate; as,

*mána tsírētē šima ŋglāgō*, “as to this true word, it is good.”

*wu ši kāmō nōŋganí*, “I did not know that it was a person.”

*ši kánigō neškē*, “I thought it was a goat.”

*bélāga átē šima pānīgō*, “this hole is my home.”

*tīlōtē šima rāgēsganāgō*, “this one, him I love, or: him alone I love.”

*átēma náptē meínābēgō*, “this is the habit of a prince.”

*nīma kōa pērōnībēgō*, “thou art the husband of my daughter.”

*ŋgō bélā kērdībē nandīrō guluntsásganātē, átēmā šīgō*, “behold the heathen town of which I told you, this is it.”

*tīlōtēma kágōgō*, “one be mine.”

*ndúyāye nā komāndēbēten šima kām bēgō*, “every one who is with God, is a free man.”

*ši Áber bōgátāgō nōtsēní*, “he did not know that the Aber was lying there.”

*yāntse bāgō, wūma yāntsúgō, wūma abāntsugō*, “he has no mother, I am his mother, I am his father.”

§. 281. Besides this more common use of *go*, its occurrence in the following instances must be noticed as somewhat peculiar—

1. In a question and after a finite verb, especially a participial; but its use in such instances, appears to be rare—

*áfi sányānēmgō?* "what is thy profession?"

*áfi kárge tsélamgō?* "what is a black heart."

*áfi šigā tsébuigō?* "what will eat her?"

*kōa kāmāntse púltigō nōtsi,* "the man knew that his wife had become with child."

*keári tilō loñ nōtsenāgō,* "one single old man knew it."

*kām Fulátayē rītsenāté šōa tilō loñ rītsenāgō,* "as for the people whom the Phula fear, they fear only the Shoas."

2. In the following example where it is added to the object of a transitive verb—

*kūliāté áfi nēmgalāntsiyāyé, tátānem díbigō tsétní,*  
"whatever be the goodness of a slave, he does not equal thy bad child." But this example also admits of the translation, "(suppose) thy child is bad, he does not equal it;" and then it belongs to §. 280.

3. In cases like the following, where it contrasts with a negative—

*pērōntsurō káritugō rúsganí,* "I have not seen so beautiful a girl as his."

*meínderō nēmgalāgō bágō,* or *meínderō ŋgalāyō bágō,* or *meínderō mei ŋgalāgō bágō,* "there is no king so good as ours."

### III. Emphatic Suffixes.

§. 282. The suffix *ma* expresses emphasis, or gives prominence to a word. In English its force is chiefly conveyed by the accent, and sometimes by words like, "even, very," &c.

*wígā sōbamárō skirágem kwōya,* "if thou like me for a friend."

*állāma šimni tsáktse,* "it is God that shuts my eyes," *i. e.*  
"that causes my blindness."

*wu níma ntserágeskō,* "thee I love."

*wu kermāma dēlin kadisgānyā*, "having just now come from abroad."

*āndi ūgāsō nem tīlōṭeman nāmnyogō*, "let all of us abide in one house."

*nī mālam nauḡa tsānnā pāndem bāgō ; kām kārḡe būlwātē, śīma tsānnā tsebāndin*, "on account of thy being a priest thou dost not obtain heaven ; if one has a clean heart he will obtain heaven."

*āṭe gādīmā Bōrman tsādīn*, "thus they do in Bornu."

*sāndi ganī, wūma śīgā yētsēskō*, "not they, I have killed him."

*āṭe nauḡāṭemārō "Gēdīṭe śīma kūrāgō" kēla hām wūrayē*, "on this account the great men say, The east is most excellent."

§. 253. Being emphatic, *ma* is used with especial propriety and frequency—

1. To respond, in an answer, to the interrogative *ba*—

*komāndē sandīrō, meība rāḡū? Sandīyē, meīma rāḡē*  
"our Lord said to them, Do ye like a king? They said, A king we like."

"*āṭe ndū?*" *tse ābayē. Tīlōye, "wīmā" tse yēgonō.*  
"the father said, Who is this? One replied, I."

2. In negative propositions—

*tsābamārō gāgendē*, "we have not entered on the road."  
*kēnyūlī tīlōma bāgō dābuntsan*, "not one male was among them."

*kām tīlōma nemēma bāgō tsūrō bēlāben*, "there was not one man speaking within the town."

3. When an adjectival qualification is expressed by a relative proposition—

*nā lēṅskīnma nōṅsganī*, "I did not know where I was going."

*āndi rōndēwa nābgātāma, yānūlē śīmdēn tām, yētsēmīn?*  
"wilt thou catch and kill our mother in our sight, who remain alive?"

*kām kām tsélam rítšení kwōya, komándē andígā aláge-sanútema rítsciyendé,* “if one does not fear a negro, neither will he fear our Lord who has created us.”

*kóá nígebal dítšenāma tšítse,* “the man who had boiled the egg arose.”

§. 284. Although this suffix combines most frequently with nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, yet it is also found after finite verbs; as,

1. Indefinite I.—

*yayāntsúsorō* “*wu lénginma*” *gúltsení,* “he did not tell all his brothers, that he went.”

*nā létšinma nótšení,* “he did not know where to go.”

2. Indefinite II.—

“*mána búrgō gultsétēmā*” *gonō,* “he said the word which he spoke at first.”

*áfíyāye dímtēma,* “whatever thou wilt do.”

3. Aorist—

*wu katambúskōman nígáltē nā tilon lényendé,* “since I was born, we never went anywhere.”

*wu šígā pānírō kíguskōman, kábū tīlōma šígā kārǎinesganí,* “since I brought her home, I have never come near her one day.”

4. Conjunctive mood, past and future—

*gána tusgányāma, kóatē íši,* “when he had waited a little, the man came.”

*kitábūga pérémgányāma, kómāndéye šímtse pérémgonō,* “when he had opened the book, our Lord opened his eyes.”

*kirúnyāma, mína tšítši,* “when they had seen him, the lion arose.”

*ártse dátsiāma, pépetóntse pértē,* “when they were dried, we plucked out their wings.”

§. 285. In reference to the *position of ma* we may observe—

1. That it always takes precedence of a case-termination, as—

*kóá tsúruskō šimníman*, “I shall see the man with mine own eyes.”

*ši dégarō šim kámmán tsúlūgin bágō*, “it does not come out in the sight of man.”

*šitēman āmpátin tárgunātē*, “by the same the rabbit is guarded.”

2. But if both *tē* and *ma* are affixed to a word, sometimes one and sometimes the other occupies the first place ;

*e g.*

*légēlányā, fúgubēmátīē ŋgebał ŋgíjibē tsúrūní, kótši ; kádu-gúbētīē ŋgebałtégā tsúrui*, “when they had gone, the one who was before did not see the pigeon’s egg, and passed on ; but the one behind saw the egg.”

*tílómátīyē kádi bōgáta tsúrō bełágāben kírū*, “the one saw a serpent lie in a hole.”

*nā kídābē tsátānítēmā ni rum*, “thou sawest that they had not yet arrived at the age for work.”

*kādítē yímtēmā komándē sandígā gerágonō*, “at that time our Lord hid these serpents.”

§. 286. There are some other suffixes or enclitic appendages which likewise appear to be of an emphatic force but of much rarer occurrence. They are *digē*, or *diyē*, and *yē*. The first two are also abbreviated into *dē*—

*kām nígā kóntsēna mbétši diyē*, “there is certainly one that surpasses thee.”

*wot’ ámmō péłēgēmmi digē*, “do not by any means show it to the people.”

*wu kídāni díski diyē*, “I have done my work.”

*abáni mbétši digē*, “I have a father.”

*agóte nuiya fútsē, kurátse kurugútšinyé*, “what has died swells up, grows big and long.”

*ši abánigéiyē*, “he is like my father.”

*abáni wúrō šō dē*, “my father gave it to me.”

## CHAPTER XX.

## SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

§. 287. *Deflected adverbs* with case-terminations are used in a similar manner to the cases by which they are formed—

1. Adverbs of place with a dative termination are therefore employed when the verb implies a motion, direction, or tendency; and adverbs with the locative termination, when the energy of a verb is considered as exercised in a certain place, without referring to the tendency or direction of the energy—

*kōa tšítšę, ngáforō wólgaṭę*, “the man arises and turns back.”

*bílge fávírō tšítšī*, “a vapour rose up.”

*kádi fúgurō kótšę, kōa šígā tségei ngáfon*, “the serpent passed on before and the man followed behind.”

*ágō fúgun wūagátšintę wu nōngani*, “I do not know what will happen in future.”

*sándi ndísō tsagášin, kórō fúgun, kir ngáfon*, “both of them ran, the ass before and the female slave behind.”

2. Sometimes, however, the Kanuris seem to consider as tendency what we represent as being at rest—

*béla kúyinturō kolōgedányā*, “when they had left the town far behind.”

*kámuntšę fúgurō tsáke, bēlāntsārō lēgęda*, “he put his wife before, and so they went home.”

3. The locative termination has so entirely coalesced with certain adverbs of manner that they scarcely ever appear without them, as *dūan, ilān, kánadin, sęrin*.

§. 288. When connected with verbs, the adverbs derived from adjectives usually assume the dative termination; those not so derived may be with or without it: but when adverbs qualify adjectives, they are always without case-termination—

*ši ngáburō nemétsi*, “he has spoken much.”

*nā Yorubáben ñgúburō nábgoskō*, "I remained a long time in a place in Yoruba."

*meiyē śīgā tsgúrō tserágena*, "the king loved him ardently."

*nyúu kámūñemma ñgqlārō námnógō*, "sit down well, thou and thy wife."

*pérō mána pāngányā, kětširō pántsēni*, "when the girl had heard the word, she did not feel comfortable."

*ni kídāñem dibirō kídēm*, "thou hast done thy work badly."

*ganá lēgányā*, "when he had gone a little."

*sóbāni tússē ganárō dátši*, "my friend has already rested a little."

*sérin lētsa, ndúsō nā túlon sérin náptsei*, "they went away quietly, and all of them sat down quietly in one place;"

also *sérinnō lēngin*, and *sérinnō námgin*; but only *sérin nēngin*, "I keep silent."

*ši nemētšin bāgō, kádeq nēmtsēna*, "he never spoke, but was holding his peace."

*kádeggō nēmné*, "hold thy peace."

*kitábūni kárīte ganá*, "my book is rather beautiful."

*ndú kúrūgu lintāgō?* "who is the tallest?"

§. 289. The Kanuri language has a peculiar kind of adverbs, which we may call *specific* or *confined adverbs*, each being confined in its use to one or a few particular adjectives or their denominative verbs, as illustrated in the following examples. These singular adverbs which seem to be common in African languages, as they exist also in the Aku and Vei, have something in their nature which may be compared to the *onomatopoeica*, or something in which the immediate, instinctive sense of language particularly manifests itself. They are eminently expressions of feelings (German, *Gefühlsworte*), or manifestations of vague impressions rather than of clearly defined ideas.

*bug, búggō*: *wu śīgā búggō bāngi*, "I have struck it violently."

*dē*: *bērāge dē*, "quite naked;" *bērāgēngi dē*, "I have become quite naked."

*járei*: *būnyē járei*, "quite night, or pitch dark."

*fōg* : *búl fōg*, "very white;" *ši búltši bul fōg*, "it is very white."

*fōg* : *tším fōg*, "very bitter;" *ši tšimtši tším fōg*, "it is very bitter."

*fór* : *dē fór*, "quite empty;" *ši dētši dē fór*, "it is quite empty."

*karañ* : *ndí karañ*, "only two."

*kēñ* : *dúnōa kēñ*, "very strong;" *ši dunoátši dúnōa kēñ*, "he is very strong."

*kédeg* : *némgata kédeg*, "very silent;" *kédeñi némgin*, "I am very silent."

*lai* and *lei* : *kaláfia lai*, "very well;" *kaláli lai*, "very meek, gentle;" *kánadiwa lai*, "very meek."

*las* : *kaláfia lás*, e.g. *tsábātę kaláfia lás*, "this road is quite secure;" *tělala lás*, "very soft;" *kaláli lás*, "very meek."

*loi* : *tílō loi*, "only one, a single one."

*měu* or *múu* : *kětši měu*. "very sweet, pleasant."

*ntsíl* : *ganá ntsíl*, "very little."

*paú* : *ángalwa paú*, "very intelligent;" *ši aňgalwátši paú*, "he is very intelligent."

*pęt* : *tsęlam pęt*, "jet black;" *tsęlamtši tsęlam pęt*, "he has become jet black."

*přot* : *kúrřgu přot*, "very long;" *ši kurugřtši přot*, "it has grown very long."

*přit* : *tsou přit*, "very hot;" *wu tsoúňgi tsoú přit*, "I have become very hot."

*póleg* : *kágāfu póleg*, "very stupid;" *kagāfřtši póleg*, "he is very stupid."

*póteę* : *kámpřu póteę*, "quite blind;" *kampřtši póteę*, "he is quite blind."

*sálag* : *kálām sálag*, "very insipid;" *ši kálāmtši kálām sálag*, "it is very insipid;" *kámpoi sálag*, "very light."

*sul* : *dē sul*, "quite empty, destitute;" *dētši sul*, "it is quite empty;" *bęrāęę sul*, "quite naked."

*šiliū* : *ámāšę šiliū*, "very cold;" *dínā amāšętši šiliū*, "it is very cold."



*tarét* : *kalí tarét*, "quite blue;" *ši kalítsi kalí tarét*, "it is quite blue."

*téles* and *télessō* : *tsébed télessō*, "the whole day long."

*ten* and *ndén* : *káfūgu ten*, "very short;" and *káfūgundén*, id. ; *káfūgútsi káfūgundén*, "it is very short."

*tés* : *kárgūge tés*, "very near;" and *káfūgu tés*, "very shallow, not deep."

*tím* : *kúrā tím*, "very great;" *ši kurátsi tím*, "it is very great."

*tsai* : *bélin tsai*, "quite new;" *bélintsi bélin tsai*, "it is quite new."

*tsar* : *ngámdē tsár*, "quite dry;" *ši ngámdétsi ngámdē tsár*, "it is quite dry;" *kibū tsár*, "very hard."

*tsēr* : *ngā tsér*, "very well."

*tšrít* : *kau tsou tšrít*, "the sun is very hot."

*tšit* : *kámē tšit*, "very red;" *ši kamétsi kámē tšit*, "it is quite red."

§. 290. The adverb *lintá*, which answers to our "very, highly, exceedingly, most," can take the place of any of these specific adverbs, with the exception of *karañ*, *loiñ*, *téles*, and *fúrei*; it also is joined with those adjectives for which there are no confined adverbs in existence. In connexion with all common adjectives it has the form *lintá*; as, *kúrā lintá*, *kamé lintá*, *bélin lintá*, &c. In connexion with derived adjectives in *wa*, it can be *lintá* and *lintárō*; as,

*áinghwa lintá* or *lintárō*, "very intelligent."

*nōngūa lintá* or *lintárō*, "very bashful."

*lemánwa lintá* or *lintárō*, "very wealthy."

And in connexion with verbs it can likewise have both forms, but the one in *rō* predominates; as,

*ši létšin*, or *létsena lintá* and *lintárō*, "he goes very often."

*ni karánemñ*, or *karánemma lintá* and *lintárō*, "thou readest very well."

*sándi nemétsai*, or *nemétsāna lintá* and *lintárō*, "they talk a great deal."

*ši nēmts̄in*, or *nēmts̄ena* or *nēmgata lintá* and *lintárō*, “ he is very silent, quiet.”

§. 291. The interrogative adverbs are the same, whether they be in a direct or indirect question—

*ába kámpū*, *áfirō búrgō yākémín?* “ thou blind man, why dost thou cry for help?”

*kánnu túlurte*, *málammō alákkēda* ; *áfirō málammō alákkēda kánnu túlurgā*, *málamtē*, *ši kitábū nót̄s̄ena*, *tsábā ṅgālā tsúrui*, *tsábā díbī tsúrui*, “ as for the seven fires, they were made for the priests ; the reason why the seven fires were made for the priests is this, that the priests, knowing the book, see the good road and see the bad road.”

*áfigei kām sū gót̄s̄e*, *kánnu bágō kášagar tsegárin?* “ how can one take iron, and beat it into a sword without fire?”  
*sóbānirō p̄él̄geskē*, *áfigei kidānt̄s̄e tsédin*, “ I will show my friend how he must do his work.”

§. 292. The Kanuri has *three negative adverbs*, *bágō*, *ganí*, and *átē*, all of which may be rendered by our “ not ;” and this is the place to define the use of each of them. All three can be used to qualify a verb, *ganí* also to qualify adverbs, and *bágō* and *ganí* can by themselves form the predicate of a proposition.

In general they may be thus characterised: *bágō* is unlimited or absolute, *ganí* limited or relative, and *átē* prohibitive ; comp. also §. 234.

§. 293. *In connexion with verbs*, the following remarks may be made on the three negatives—

1. *bágō* can be joined to

a. The participial—

*wu mána nírō gults̄ásgana bágō*, “ I shall not tell thee a word.”

*ši kām rītsena bāgō*, "he does not fear any body."

*kām śīgā, tsūrūna bāgō*, "no one was seeing him."

*tātātē ājīma nōtsena bāgō*, "this boy knows nothing at all."

b. The indefinite I.—

*āndi nīrō biārō bānāntśīgēn bāgō*, "we shall not help thee for nothing."

*śīgā gōtsai bāgō, dīnīa lēmśīa*, "they never take it when it has become night."

*āgō pānēskē yūrusganātē nīrō gulntśēskīn bāgō*, "I shall never tell thee what I have heard, and why I laugh."

*wu nīgā ntsērāgēkin bāgō*, "I do not like thee."

c. The indefinite II.—

*kōa lemānwa ši sadāktśīn bāgō, mālanmāsō śīgā tsāruī.*

*Sandīyē śīrō : abā kōa ājīrō ni nīgūmōri tśīa laia debānēm, sadāinēm bāgō? kēda mālanwāyē śīrō*, "a certain rich man never brought sacrifice, and all the priests saw him. The priests then said unto him, Man and father, why dost thou not kill and offer the Easter-lamb when Easter is come?"

*kāfī lāgerā, dīnīa bētśīa, śīgā rām bāgō, dibdīfūtśīa, rum bāgō, nēngālī tsēptśīa, rum bāgō, bigelātśīa tīlō tīlō rūmīn, bīnēmśīa, sandīgā rūmīn gūburō*, "thou dost not see the Lagera locusts in the dry season, thou dost not see them in the hot season, thou dost not see them when the rainy season has set in, thou seest one here and there in the spring, but thou seest them in great numbers in the cold season."

In all these instances *bāgō* negatives an act that is continuous or repeated at certain periods.

2. *ganī* is only joined to—

a. The indefinite I.—

*wu nāntsūrō lēngīn ganī*, "I will not go to him."

## b. The aorist—

*ši múnāte wūrō gulgónō ganí*, “he did not tell me the word.”

In these instances the negative particle refers to a definite fact: it is not general like *bāgō*, but special; not abstract, but historical. This, therefore, was the proper particle with which to form the negative mood (see §. 88.).

3. *āte* is only connected with the negative mood, and then forms a negative optative or imperative, which appears the more natural from its verbal origin—

*nāten fūgun ātegei āte dīmmiti*, “henceforth do so no more.”

*kōaigāfiyāyē āte āširntse nigāsō kāmūrō gūltsegeṇi*, “let no man whatever tell even one of his secrets to a woman.”

*āte āširndē dēgan pāntsāni*, “may they not hear our secret without.”

§. 294. *In connexion with adverbs, or adverbial qualifications, or the subject of a proposition, ganí only is used. It always stands immediately after the word which it negatives—*

*kídāṇem ṅgalārō ganí kideṁ*, “thou didst not do thy work well,” *i. q.* *kídāṇem ṅgalārō dīmmiti*.

*bisgā ganí kideškō*, “not yesterday did I come,” *i. q.* *bisgā wu isseṣganí*, “I did not come yesterday.”

*kómbū naṅga ganí kúdiskō*, “I did not come on account of food.”

*abāni ganí isō*, “it was not my father who came.”

*āngallēmtē wu ganí nūrō ntšiskō*, “it is not I who have given thee thy wisdom.”

*āndi ganí nigā bóbōntšyē, álla nigā ntsešānge*, “it is not we who did call thee, God raised thee up.”

§. 295. When used as the predicate of a proposition, there is likewise a difference between *bāgō* and *ganí*. The former

denies the *existence*, the latter the *nature* or quality of a subject. It may be easily perceived, that this difference between them bears a close analogy to that which exists when they are connected with verbs. For to say that a thing is not in existence is an absolute or general statement, and that a certain general idea is not realised in this or that object is a special one. In English *bāgō* must be rendered by "there is not," or the like, and *ganí* by "is not;" comp. also §. 235.

1. Examples of *bāgō*—

*kāmū bāgō, tātā bāgō, šī tīlōntsę loñ tsúrō pāntsiben*, "there was no woman, there was no child, he was quite alone in the house."

*kām andírō níkē šédęna bāgō*, "there is not one who could give us water."

*tātāntsę tīlōwa náptsęna, gaděntsę bāgō*, "he remained possessed of only one child, he had nothing else."

*kāmm-šōiūā bāgō*, "there was no lamp there."

*ām bēlabē ūgāsō, tīlōma tsúrō bēlaben bāgō*, "as to all the people of the town, there was not one of them within the town."

2. Examples of *ganí*—

*māna wúrō gūlęmmāté kátugū ganí*, "the word which thou hast told me is not a lie."

*ní kōeįę ganí, tātāni*, "thou art not a coward, my son."

*ní úgō rúmmāté gęsgā ganí, mágarā krígibē*, "what thou seest is not a tree, but a man of war."

*kóa tīlōtę šī kándęlī, kóa tīlō šī kándęlī ganí*, "one man was jealous, and the other man was not jealous."

*kām dā gádubē tsegęrena kėrdī ganí*, "a man who eats pork is not a heathen."

*šī tsédin rúmmāté šī kámmā ganí*, "the footsteps which thou hast seen on the ground are not the footsteps of a person."

§. 296. The adverb *dúgō* regularly stands between two propositions, and must sometimes be construed with what precedes

it, and sometimes with what follows it. In certain cases it is quite evident that it belongs to what follows; e.g.

*ájigēi dúgō kágou?* lit. "how was it before you escaped?"  
i.e. "how did you escape?"

In others it is equally evident that it belongs to what it precedes, which is best proved by a few examples, when it stands at the end of a proposition with which the following has no connexion; as,

*pérōyē, léngē, abánirō gúlīgē dúgō. Pérō létse, &c.,* "the girl said, I will go and first tell it to my father. The girl went," &c.

But there are also a great many cases where it might equally be construed backwards or forwards, and where it is very difficult to decide which construction was intended by the speaker. On this account we will here arrange a number of examples, according to the English words, by which in each instance *dúgō* had better be translated. But although in English the adverb usually belongs to what follows, yet in Kanuri it seems more frequently to belong to what precedes; signifying properly, *first, previously, before*. When it belongs to what follows, it must be translated into English by *ere, before*.

The following are the words by which *dúgō* is rendered in English—

1. Before—

*dándē wáné dúgō léneskē,* "look at our meat before I go."  
*ntsérágesganí dúgō dā nánemín tsímāgeskōbá?* "do I not love thee ere I accept meat at thy hand?"

*lóktęte wu ángallyúa dúgō pádgigeskō,* "at that time, before I was lost, I was in possession of my senses."

2. Except—

*wúa šyúa lágāndē tsúrūní dúgō pártēn bágō,* "we shall not part, except one of us fall."

*kām kām tserágení dúgō ágō nántsen tsímāgení,* "one does not like a man, except one accepts something from him."

*málamgā láfiátšení dúgō káragārō létšin bágō,* "he never goes to the wood, except he salutes the priest."

*tšilwā dīnā bunétsenī dūgō dégan lelétšin bágō*, "a rat never walks about openly, except at night."

3. First—

*ganá gértigē dūgō ! Ganá gérgutagányā*, "let us first move on a little! When they had moved on a little."  
*wu léngē dūgō, wágē pānirō léné*, "I will go first, then go thou to my house."

4. That—

*áfi dískē dūgō wu méréskin*, "what must I do that I may recover."  
*núte áfi nígáfon róntse dūgō déregē nānirō kádim ?* "what kept thee back, that thou didst come last to me?"  
*áfi dískē dūgō tsábā tsánnabē pándeskin ?* "what must I do to find the way to heaven?"

5. Then—

*wu gésgā ganá rúskin dūgō gésgā kúra góngimbá ?* "shall I see a little tree, and then go and take a large one?"  
*wírō dógun tīlō skéinyā, wu yurúskē dūgō tšhngē nānénmō kádiskō*, "when he had given me one knock, I fell, and then arose and came to thee."

6. Till—

*kómbū mátsē andirō súde búiyen dūgō kábū tīlō kúrūa tštse*, "she sought food and gave it us to eat, till one day a storm arose."  
*kírntsáwa káliāntsáwa tátāntsáwa wátsei dūgō kāmū kásuwāyē sígā tséteí*, "they beheld their female slave, and their male slave, and their child, till a sickness seized the woman."  
*nemsóbānde áudi ganánden díyenté áte kolónyendé dūgō komándē andígā páresā*, "let us not leave off our friendship, which we have had from our childhood up, till our Lord separates us."  
*dégā dūgō léngē kúlónígā rúskē*, "stop till I go and see my farm."

*páton ganátsena dúgō pērō wurátsē*, "he kept her at home till the girl grew up."

7. When—

*kúlōntse tsáltšin dúgō kūrū kōa kórōntse arásgūa kádiō nāntsúrō*, "he cut (*i. e.* cleared) his farm, when a man with three asses came again to him."

*wu kentsíngana dúgō labárntse tsédi Afunóben pānigóskō*, "I was in slavery when I heard news of him in the Hausa country."

*búnnyē bótsena dúgō ši nāšíngonō*, "she was sleeping at night when she dreamt."

*kámpū sei kām dégē pē debátsei dúgō kíruskō*, "the four blind men killed a cow when I saw them."

*bēlāndētēn ndúyāye pésgāntséggā Gēdirō tšō dúgō sāltsin*, "in our country every one turns his face towards the east when he prays."

§. 297. The suffix *gadi* or *gei*, although usually a postposition, is converted into an adverb of manner when appended to a finite verb, and may be rendered by "as, as if, as when, like"—

*ām kúlōlan bārētsei dúgō dínia dūargányā, kéyerā Gēdin tšin gadi, Pótē wūgédányā, káfì kámanwa Pótēn tšitsē, Gēdirō tšin kērū*, "people worked on the farm till it became dark as when a thunder storm comes from the east, and looking to the west, they saw the Kamanwa locusts rise in the west and come towards the east."

*dínia nigásō tsélamtsi, dínia bunētse gadi*, "the whole atmosphere became dark, as when it is night."

*wūrō ségdémmāgei wúyē nūrō ntšigdéskō*, "as thou hast done to me, I will do to thee."

§. 298. The adverb *ngō* corresponds to the Hebrew נָגַדְנָה, but has less of a verbal character than this, inasmuch as it never subordinates the subject; *e.g.* *ngō wu*, "behold me," (never *ngō wugā*); *ngō ši*, "here it is," (never *ngō šigā*). They also agree sometimes when connected with a verb; for then נָגַדְנָה can likewise stand without having the subject



of its dependent proposition expressed separately (*vide* Ewald's Gram., §. 296. *d.*), which is the rule with regard to *ńgō*. When connected with a pronoun, *ńgō* usually takes its place before, but sometimes also after it. A few examples may follow by way of illustration—

*andī ńgō ńsýē*, "behold we have come."

*ńgō ágō lagá*, "behold here is something."

*wu ńgō sabaráťskī*, "behold I am ready."

*ńgō pānī, rui ńgalārō*. "here is my house. look at it well."

*ńgō andī kóronđē lámnyē dāťsi*, "behold, I have already loaded our asses."

*ńgō nírō kaligimō tīlō ntśiskī*, "behold, I give thee a camel."

*kómbū pēlēsęęmmátý wu pándęskī, ńgō ši*, "I have got the food which thou hast shewn me: here it is."

*ńgō ši. ńćgan dāqáta*, "behold, he is standing without."

*ńgō kókō gęrágata*, "behold the toad hidden, or here is the toad hidden."

§. 299. The peculiarity of *ńgūburō*, that it is often used where we employ the corresponding *adjective*, may here be noticed and illustrated—

*kúqui ńgūburō tśībī*, "he bought many fowls."

*bęri ńgūburō dęťsa*, "they cooked much vegetable food."

*śógę sandiqā tśęťsin ńgūburō*, "the Sheikh killed many of them."

*śima bānnā tśędō Bórnun ńgūburō*, "it occasioned much desolation in Bornu."

*wńa abánęmma nęmsóbū ńgūburō dęyi*, "I and thy father have had much friendship."

§. 300. The adverb *sō*, which always suffixes itself to the verb, refers to a past point of time, and thus far coincides with the past tense of the conjunctive mood; but like the "*so*" which converts interrogative pronouns into indefinite ones, and with which it has doubtless one common origin, it generalises the word to which it is affixed, so as to form a contrast with something which is to follow. Hereby it differs from the conjunc-

tional mood, and assumes the office of a conjunction. It may be translated by "when, even when, since, although"—

*yásgurō kām kinótōsō, léturō wátši*, "although he sent one the third time, he did not want to go."

*kántāge pal kitōsō, nāten tšítse Fulátaberō léturō wátši*, "even when it had become one month, or even at the end of one month, he did not want to get up there and go to the Phula."

*náyā dégusorō ngúgonōsō, kām šígā tsúrūna bágō*, "when he bowed down to the four quarters, no one was looking at him."

*tútāni, wáa abánemma nígā díyē nábeiyesō, ni tilōnema komándē andírō sádō*, "my child, since I and thy father married and settled, our Lord has only given thee to us."

*ni Fulátāwa nyúá, dínā wágonosō, gáduwí, dúyō kau dábū kítō ; kau dábū tsétnāsō, ni Fuláta yókturō níwō tegéri kwóya, aré*, "the Phula and thou have fought since daybreak till it became mid-day ; if, although it has become mid-day, thou art not able to drive away the Phula, come."

*Nyamnyámýe sandígā dútsei, kolótsāni, dúgō dínā wágonō ; wágonosō, Nyamnyám sandígā kolótsa, wólturō wátsei*, "the cannibals pursued them, and did not leave them till it had become day ; and even since it became day, the cannibals did not want to leave them and to return."

§. 301. The enclitic suffix *yāye* has much in common with *sō*. It also forms indefinite pronouns of interrogative ones ; and as then it can be separated from the pronoun and attached to a succeeding word (see §. 189.), this latter may happen to be a verb, so that merely the context, generally the preceding interrogative pronoun, can decide whether *yāye* is an adverb or part of an indefinite pronoun. But if no interrogative pronoun precedes, it may be presumed that *yāye*, suffixed to a verb,

is an adverb, meaning, "whenever." Then *yāye* may also pass into a conjunction, just as the suffix *so*.

1. Instances of *yāye* as adverb—

*gésḡā ṅáámǎ tsebándi yāye, tsɛbui, kɛli tsebándi yāye, tsebui, kátsim tsebándi yāye tsɛbui*, "whenever it reached a dry tree, it devoured it; whenever it reached a green one, it devoured it; whenever it reached grass, it devoured it."

*nandyúá kámwa ná tilon námnūwa yāyé, nandígá kām ntšórūna báḡō*, "whenever ye sit in the same place with any body, no one shall see you."

*kām tsɛlam tǐlōtɛma dāḡáta tsáruiyāyé, dátsa gurétsei báḡō*, "whenever they see a black man, they do not stop and wait"

*dimi dúbántse Potérō kálaktši yāyé, kóá Gédírō kálaktseḡe*, "whenever the sheep turned its neck to the west, the man turned it towards the east."

*kóáte pǎrōntsuro manátseḡiyāyé, pǎrō širō tɛḡéri*, "whenever the man spoke to his girl, he did not succeed with her."

2. Instances of *yāye* as conjunction—

*tsúró bɛlábɛtɛn kámte dúbū déḡá yāye, tǐlōma kolótšin, báḡō*, "even if there be a thousand people within that town, it will not leave one."

*kúlitu róntse tsúlūḡení yāyé, sándi tamótsagei*, "even if the life of the insect has not yet expired, they finish it."

§. 302. Notice may here also be taken of certain modes of expression in Kanuri in whose stead we employ adverbs. We sometimes use *adverbs* for the following *substantives*—

*nā* ; as, *gésḡá túria, kádítégá wáné nā ḡáḡinté*, "when the tree falls, watch where the serpent enters."

*rū*; as, *pántsen rúntse nemétsin*, "he was talking to himself in his house."

*kólle rúntsemā létse*, "let her go alone."

§. 303. The following *verbs* also have often to be rendered by *adverbs*—

1. *burgóngin* by "first"—

*dugulgúlimī burgótse tsō*, "the muck-worm came first."

*gúbōgum burgótse tsítse*, "the cock rose up first."

2. *dángin*, in its impersonal forms *dátšin*, *dátse*, *dátse ní*, *dátši*, by—

a. "Quite, fully, completely, entirely, wholly, altogether"—

*áte kóganāndē nigāsō Fulátayē tsétsé dátse ní*, "lest the Phula kill our soldiers altogether."

*kām tsēsšēnāté róntsemā tsúluge dátse ní dugō dārō kámtese*, "when they kill one, they cut him up for meat before his life has quite left him."

*nátēmān kāmte gā dārō kámte sū dátšin*, "then they cut the man completely up as meat."

b. "Already, now, then"—

*ándi belága lánýe dátši tsa*, "they said, We have already dug the grave."

*Fuláta tsédini nigāsō tártsā dátši*, "the Phula have now wasted my whole land."

*sándi dégusō debátsa dímintsa dátši*, "they have now, all four of them, killed their sheep."

*komāndē kídāntsa tsō dátši*, "our Lord had then given them their work."

3. *kārǎngin*, by "nearly, soon, almost"—

*wu kídāni dískē kārǎntši*, "I have nearly done my work."

*ngō gēs gā ntsúrōntse kārǎntši*, lit. "behold the tree's falling has approached," i. e. "the tree will soon fall."

4. *kélin̄gin*, in conjunction with *dérin̄gin*, by “entirely, completely” —

*kóganāwa ngāsō béla dérītsā kélt̄sā*, “all the soldiers completely surround the town.”

5. *lén̄gin*, by “on, further, longer;” or the verb “to continue” —

*šyúa táta gálijubē sōbāntsúa létsei, n̄msōbāntsa tsádin*, “he and the rich man’s son, his friend, continued their friendship.”

6. *lúḡskin*, by “out” —

*šim tátabē bakt̄se kit̄ulugō*, lit. “he struck the boy’s eye that it came out,” *i. e.* “he struck the boy’s eye out.”

7. *n̄mḡin*, by “silently” —

*pánt̄sen n̄m̄t̄se nápt̄ši*, “he sat down silently in his house.”

8. *wól̄t̄skin*, by “again” —

*gúbōgum wól̄t̄e kádiō nā p̄rōberō*, “the cock came again to the girl.”

§. 304. The word *nda* appears to be an adverb of mood, whose occasional connexion with an optative or imperative increases the emphasis or solicitation, which we may express by “do, pray.”

*l̄né, nā k̄sgimāberō, nda tsédi wúrō tsúrū*, “go to the diviner, do, let him see the ground for me.”

*nda wu rúskē*, “pray let me see it.”

*nda wúrō šē*, “pray give it to me.”

*nda l̄né*, “do go.”

## CHAPTER XXI.

## SYNTAX OF POSITIONS.

§. 305. In many languages prepositions are used to supply the want of cases, to such an extent, that one cannot but be struck with the great affinity which exists between them and case-terminations. But in a language in which, instead of prepositions, there are postpositions or suffixes, which bear the greatest resemblance to terminations, it becomes really difficult to distinguish between them. We may therefore consider it fortunate that the Kanuri has so few postpositions, that occasion for confusion cannot often occur.

The postpositions also share this peculiarity with the case-terminations, that they can be separated from the word to which they grammatically belong, cf. §. 154.—

*bínyē tīlōma nā kálgū gótsēnālan tsátē ganátse, wólti*, “in one night he carried it and laid it on the place whence he had taken the shirt, and returned.”

*nā dzádzirmā tšétsēnālan dātsēna*, “he was standing on the spot where he had killed the leopard.”

§. 306. The postpositions, *gadi*, *lan*, and *nan̄ga*, are of frequent occurrence. In English they must often be rendered by another part of speech. Their use is also peculiar in other respects, so that we had better give some examples by way of illustration—

1. *gadi* or *gei*, “as, like; as it were, as if”—

*kām átē búrgōntse búrgō kēnyéribē gadi*, “this man’s subtilty is like the subtilty of a weasel.”

*ni lemán̄nem kágē gadi tšítōba?* “will thy goods be equal to mine?”

*kálgū wāsilibēgei tsárūn’*, “they did not see a shirt like that of the white man.”

*kú gadi Mák̄kārō katamún̄yā, b̄l̄i gadi lémā*, “having

entered Mecca, as it were, to-day, the morrow, as it were, was a Friday."

*kégerā Gédin ísin gadi, káfí kámanwa Pótèn tšítse, Gédirō ísin kírū,* "they saw the Kamanwa locusts rise in the west and go towards the east, as if a thunder storm were coming from the east."

2. *lan*, which must be very differently rendered in English, comp. the Hebrew לַי—

a. "On, upon"—

*kóá bútsilan náptse,* "the man sat down on the mat."

*léné dígallan bōné,* "go and lie down on the bed."

*dígallan léttsa,* "they slept on the bed."

b. "On the ground of, because of, from"—

*nemsóbantsálan ágō tsádenáté kām tšídēna bágō,* "none will do what they have done from friendship."

c. "Out of"—

*woladíntsusō káñemlan tsesáñge, sabarátu,* "he awakened them out of sleep to get ready."

d. "In"—

*kaúlan tártsa,* "they dry it in the sun."

*kitábūlan kírū,* "they saw it in the book."

*ámde wúra dándallan sálitsā,* "our great people pray in the mosque."

*magarántilan kánnu fúnyē,* "we lighted a fire in the school."

*íšem, káfíālam bógam,* "thou camest and didst sleep in the shade."

*kām kaúlan íšena segétšín,* "one pants if one comes in the sun."

e. "Before"—

*tšinnālan tšígā tsédin ganátse,* "he puts the bag down on the ground before the gate."

*dándal kúralan dátse, álam méogunderi bóbotse* "he

stood before the large mosque and called the twelve regiments."

f. "After"—

*kúgui burgóbēlan tsítsə*, "he rises after the first crowing of the cock."

g. "From on, from"—

*périlan tséptsā*, "they dismount from the horses."

*kúlōlan kádiskō*, "I come from the farm."

*dígalntsəlan tsígonō*, "he arose from his bed."

h. "For"—

*kómbū sandílan gáptši*, "there is food left for them."

*kémil andílan gáptši, áfisō andílan gáptši*, "rum was left for us, any thing was left for us."

i. By the genitive—

*tátu pérbē ndílan tilō gótsə, tilō wúrō skéinō*, "of the two colts, he took one, and gave me the other."

*nemé ndí gáptsenālan tilō badígonō*, "of the two tales that were left, he began one."

*ándi yásge .gamnyénnālan ndí kašígāna, wu tilōni kéngalígō*, "of the three of us that were left, two were females, and I the only male."

k. "Whilst, during"—

*sándi mēlteilan kurgúlirō kátī pítsagei*, "whilst they wrestled, they threw dirt at the lion."

*ándi lényenlan pángeiyē*, "we heard it whilst walking."

3. *naŋga*, "on account of, for the sake of, because of"—

*ní málam naŋga tsánnā pándəm bágō*, "thou wilt not obtain heaven, on account of being a priest."

*kū kóāni pátom bágō naŋga wúgā serágemin nem*, "thou sayest that thou lovest me on account of my husband's not being at home to-day."

*átə naŋga kádiskō*, "therefore I am come."



*pérōa wátšisō tsásširin péntsa bágō naiga*, "the girls wept all day long on account of their cow being no more."

*šigā kětšyē, kásundē dábęsánā naiga*, "we killed him, because he denied the debt he owed us."

*kéntširō komándē sédi naiga, kátugū kámgin bágō*, "I do not tell lies, because our Lord has given me into slavery."

§. 307. As the language is deficient in postpositions, it makes up for the want of them either by the following grammatical forms, or by the use of certain substantives—

1. The adjectives in *wa* are sometimes used where we have a noun and the preposition "with"—

*tšiligindērō tsúkkūrin, kásagar múskōnwa*, "he was jumping down into our ship with a sword in his hand."

*ngásō šin sálgāwa*, "all were with chains on the feet."

*kóá kálfūma kálfūntę nigántšinwa nábgata*, "the man who had the natron was sitting with his natron before him."

2. The conjunctive mood sometimes stands for our "in," or "after," with a noun—

*kábū máęę tsétia, tšyē*, "we will come in one week."

*kábū wári kítényā, wu tšigē*, "I rose up after a fortnight."

3. The dative case is usually employed instead of our preposition "to"—

*wu pérōtúrō nemé tilō neméęeskē*, "I will speak a word to this girl."

*wúrō pélēsegeni kwōya*, "if thou wilt not show it to me."

*nā méiberō kásšō*, "he came to the king's place."

4. Even the genitive and the locative must often be rendered by a preposition—

*tsábā Sámbulbē tsítā*, "they took the way to Constantinople."

*yándē šimdēn tām, gęřem, yétsęmin?* "wilt thou seize, tie, and kill our mother before our eyes?"

*wu Bórnun námganāté*, "when I lived in Bornu."

*ši bēlāntsen tšítšia*, "when she arose in her town."

§. 308. It has been proved that the Indo-European prepositions are not original but derived (see §. 84. of "Das Wort in seiner organischen Verwandlung," von Dr. Karl F. Becker); and some of them, *e.g.* "beside, behalf, forsake, instead, in spite," still bear the mark of their substantival origin on their faces: it also appears that most of the Hebrew prepositions are properly substantives (see Gesenius' Gram., §. 99.): hence the Kanuri language would seem to be entitled to the character of high antiquity from this circumstance also, that it still expresses a great many relations, for which other languages have developed prepositions, by real substantives. These substantives, when used to express a prepositional relation, are either in the locative or in the dative case, as the verb may require it. We will here enumerate the chief of these substantives, with a few examples for illustration—

1. *bátagū*, "side" = with, close by, close to—

*andi ganá ganá bátagūntsun námnyena*, "we very little ones sat down with them."

*pērōni, nite námne batagūnyin*, "my daughter, do thou sit down close by me."

2. *dábū*, "midst" = through, among—

*kókō dábūntsa rétsé kótšin*, "the tead tore through them, and passed on."

*kéngali tīlōma bāgō dábūntsan*, "not one male was among them."

3. *gédī*, "place over which the branches of a tree spread" = under—

*gédī gésgā kūrāberō nāgēga*, "they arrived under a large tree."

*bōgēda gédī gésgāben*, "they lay under a tree."

4. *kūtē*, "interval, space interposed" = between—

*lebālā bāgō wúa nyúa katēndēn*, "there is no palaver between either of us."

*nyúa šyúa katéndōn lebálā búgō*, "there is no dispute between you two."

5. *kílā*, "head" = on, upon—

*sándì nígásō tséptsā, kílā pērntsáben*, "all of them dismounted from (on) their horses."

*nígálō kílā kánnubēn*, "the beans were on the fire."

6. *nā*, "place" = to, with. Sometimes even with the ellipsis of *na*—

*nā meiberō kádíō*, "he came to the king."

*nántsen bárū kām dége mbétsi*, "there were four thieves with him."

*wúte, yānibēn tīlōni*, "as for me, I was alone with my mother."

7. *nígáfō*, "back," *kádugū*, "rear" = behind, after—

*nígáfōntsān gérágata*, "he was hidden behind them."

*nígáfō táta kēngaliben táta pērō tsasámbi*, "after the boy they became parents of a girl."

*tšénāntse gótse kádugūntsa gígā*, "he took his knife and followed after them."

8. *fári*, "top, upper part" = on, upon—

*kóā fári gésgāberō tsébā*, "the man climbed upon a tree."

*fári gésgāben kómbū mátsē*, "it sought food on the trees."

9. *fúgū*, "front" = before—

*fúgūnēmin dugulgúlemi tšō*, "the muck-worm came before thee."

*fúgūntsēn gāndūgē*, "I will lay it down before him."

*fúgū kómāndēberō kígutō*, "he brought them before our Lord."

10. *tsédīga*, "bottom" = under—

*tsédīga dígalberō kánnū fútsege*, "he made a fire under the bed."

*kām tīlō tsédīga dābēn bótsēna*, "somebody was lying under the meat."

11. *tsúro*, "belly, interior" = inside, within, in, into, among—  
*tsúrō kaṅgádībēn tsetúlūgē* "he took it out from within  
the horn."

*mána tsúrō wōkítābē pányē*, "let us hear the words in  
the letter."

*ágō tsúrō kárgentsíbē ándi nónyēba ?* "do we know what  
is in his heart?"

*tsúrō kábū árásgībēn léngē*, "I will go within six days."

*kábū tilō tsúrō káragāberō gágē*, "one day he entered  
into a forest."

*tsúrō woínā yásgíben woínā ndí gótse*, "from among the  
three cakes, she took two."

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

### SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

---

§. 309. A number of conjunctions bear the character of suffixes, and have the peculiarity of being attached not only to the word which is joined, but also to the one to which it is joined. In form one of them is identical with the plural termination, or an adjective termination, and another with the locative termination; but they are always easily recognised as conjunctions by the context, and more especially by their repetition in several succeeding words. The difference in the use of *wa* (*a*) and *n* (*nyin*) seems to be this, that *wa* refers merely to number, *n* also to quality, *wa* simply adds or co-ordinates, but *n*, at the same time, contrasts what it joins together; *wa* (cf. Hebrew ו) generally answers to our "and;" when this is merely copulative, *n* corresponds more to our conjunctions, "both—and, as well—as, not only—but." In practice, however, these two forms are not always kept so distinct, and sometimes we find them alternating with each other.

§. 310. Instances of the correlative conjunction *wa—wa—*

*štyē, kálgonyúá yáigēnyúá, tsógānyúá, pátelei kāmūnībēwa,*  
 “he said, a shirt for me, trousers for me, a cap for me, and  
 clothes for my wife, (viz. I like.)”

*wáa kōátāa kāmpigítē,* “I and this man have contended.”

*abāntsāwa wáa ábā tilō sasámbō,* “one father has begotten  
 their father and me.”

*kírntsāwa káliāntsāwa tátāntsāwa wútsei,* “they look at their  
 female slave, their male slave, and their child.”

*kárabū níkwá kánnūa, kāmúrsoábē,* “fable of the water, the  
 fire, and an old woman.”

*kúlum lífulābēwa, kúlum dímarbēwa, déggerger áwílībēwa pērorō*  
*keínō,* “he gave a silver-ring, a gold-ring, and a scarlet  
 neck-tie to the girl.”

*ába nántsēn wurátsēnāwa, abāntse šigā tsambínāwa lebulū*  
*tsádiríté,* “when the man with whom he had grown up,  
 and the man who had begotten him, made a contest.”

§. 311. Instances of the correlative conjunction *n—n—*

*kámun, tátan, kōāngan, ngásō šin súlqāwa,* “women, children,  
 men, all had chains on their legs.”

*ándi kōāngátē kurátēn ganátēn, keárítēn komúrsoān ngásō,*  
*andígā satapátki,* “the men, both great and small, the  
 hoary men and the hoary women, all of us he would have  
 ruined.”

*nembunyényin, kaínyin, ndásō ngúbugō?* “of which is there  
 a greater number, of nights or of days?”

*álegā komāndēbēté, tsélmntēn, kamētēn, káfugútēn kúrūgútēn*  
*ngásō šimā aláktse,* “as for the creation of our Lord, he  
 has created all, both the black and the red, the short and  
 the tall.”

*kámūtēn tátātēn, kōāngátēn, ganátēn kurátēn, pētēn pētēn,*  
*kaligimótēn korótēn, kaúamótēn dimítēn, kánítēn kuguítēn,*  
*gabagátēn kullótēn, ájisō úgō lemántē ngásō tsoróre,* “they  
 took all, whatever was property, the women and the chil-  
 dren, the men both small and great, the cows and the horses,

the camels and the asses, the oxen and the sheep, the goats and the fowls, cloth and money."

*tšā ši kámuntsurō gúltsení kwōya, úlēgā állabéte ngásō, kámnyin, búndin, ngúdon, báni tsúrō níkbēn, ndúyē tšā mána kámāntsibē pántšín,* "if he had not told it to his wife, the whole creation of God, the men and the beasts, the birds and the fish in the water, would each understand the language of the other."

§. 312. Instances of *wa* and *n* used promiscuously—

*káliātúa kirtúa ndísō kámbe állārō kolónęskī,* "both this male slave, and this female slave, I set free for God's sake."

*kír tīlō átēn kália tīlō átēn álla tīlórō wu sandígā kámberō kolónęskī,* "this one female slave, and this one male slave, I set free for God's sake"

*kománden, kálū gęsgáben, kátšimnyin, kíginyin, kátin genya rńęmma bágō,* "thou fearest nothing, except our Lord, leaves of trees, grass, and flies."

*ni kām rńęmma bágō, kátšimwa, kígiwa, tsédiwa, kálū gęsgábēwa rńęm nęm,* "thou dost not fear any body, only the grass, flies, the ground, and tree-leaves.

§. 313. It sometimes occurs that a word to which another is joined by *wa* is itself without it. It may even happen that this word, if a pronoun, is omitted altogether, and has to be gathered from the finite verb, cf. §. 333.—

*kōa kámuntsūa pántšān náptsāna,* "a man and his wife were sitting in their house."

*meína meimúwa kaláindō díyenté,* "when I and the royal prince played."

*ámāntsūa tsúbui,* "they eat it with their people."

*ńgō ándi bóbōsam, tatoányūa ntségeiyē, ándi tšyē,* "behold, thou hast called us: I and my children followed thee and came."

§. 314. Mention may here also be made of a few adverbial phrases formed by the correlative conjunction *n—n—*

*nāten fūgun āte ātegei dīnmī*, “in future do no more so.”

*bēlān kuīyintēn kolótseiya*, “they having left it far from town.”

*kām wān fūgun bāyō*, “there is no man before me,” *i. e.* “superior to me.”

*kōā āteṭe āllān kāsen kām šīgā kótseṇa bāyō*, “none exceeds this man, except God.”

§. 315. The correlative suffix *ō—ō* answers to our “whether—or,” and takes its place after the words which are to be represented as doubtful—

*lēnyē ruīyogō kīnā kūguibē tšétsšiskōō, tšétsšīsgányō*, “let us go and see whether I may appease (*lit.* kill) the hunger of fowls, or whether I may not appease it.”

*krīge mbétsiwō, krīge bāgoō, kū nāndī tšīrā*, “to-day ye shall see, whether there is war, or whether there is no war.”

*tšīremārō gūlūginō kātugumārō gūlūginwō tsūrum*, “thou shalt see, whether I speak true, or whether I speak false.”

*meiō meinaō ām kandegeibē ŋgāsōō sāndī nótānī*, “neither the king, nor the prince, nor all the people of the court knew it.”

*tšīremāō kātugumāō, ām wūra ŋemétsa*, “whether it be a truth, or whether it be a falsehood, the great men have said it.”

But as is the case with the suffix *wa*, so also here the antecedent member of the conjunction can be omitted—

*āgō dīsgānāte ŋgālā, nāndī ruīgō, dibiwō, nāndī ruīgō*, “see what I have done, whether it be good, or whether it be bad.”

§. 316. The correlative conjunctions *ra—ra*, and *yē—yē*, or *yen—yen*, appear to be of a similar force with *o—o*, but of less frequent occurrence—

*āji gadé nī mánṇemin? kōmbu mánṇemírā kēntsā mánṇemírā?*

“ what else dost thou seek ? dost thou seek food, or dost thou seek drink ? ”

*komándē sandírō ndí ñgǎlāyē gúltsení, díbiyē gúltsení, tílō ñgǎlāyē gúltsení, díbiyē gúltsení,* “ our Lord did not tell them whether two were good, and did not tell them whether they were bad ; he did not say whether one was good, and did not say whether she was bad.”

*serágiyē wu nōtsóskō serágeníyē wu nōtsóskō,* “ I shall know whether she loves me or not.”

*tseméríyēn ni tšúrum, tseméréníyēn, ni tšúrum,* “ thou wilt see, whether he will recover or not.”

§. 317. The suffixal conjunction *sō—sō* is not disjunctive or exclusive, like *ō—ō* and *rā—rā*, but inclusive, removing a contrast—

*lebásarsō, yálōsō, kugudógusō ñgásō nā átēn bārétsei,* “ there they cultivate all, both onions, and yalo, and sweet potatoes.”

*kálemte, kámuásō péroásō tsógōntsārō pít sagei,* “ as for the intestines, both the women and the girls put them into their baskets.”

§. 318. The suffixal conjunctions which we have now considered have all the peculiarity of being double or correlative; and in this peculiarity they are joined by some other conjunctions which are not suffixes, viz. *tšā—kwōya*, *tšā—tšā*, and *tšā kwōyo—kóa*. Of these, *tšā—kwōya* is always in the subordinate proposition, and seems to be the fullest and most regular form of a conditional statement; as,

*tšā gádútē rúiyendé kwōya, ándi ñgásō pérndewāsō ñgúdúyē šéšéši,* “ if we had not seen this hog, thirst would have killed us all, and our horses.”

*tšā kríge bágō kwōya, kām Bórnun támbunáté pátsegin bágō,* “ if there had not been war, no man born in Bornu would have been lost.”



*tšā burgóte kániyē bálturō tsédeni kwōya, tše tátu kánibē nigásō tīlō tīlōn góitse dātšin*, “if the goat had not played this trick to the hyena, she would have come and taken all the young ones of the goat one by one.”

*tšā ni tšenmī kwōya, kām wūrō wōkītātē karátsanna bágō*, “if thou hadst not come, there would not have been a person able to read this letter to me.”

*tšā karámintsúsō búrgō tsáde, šīgā tsátā, meirō tsádeni kwōya, mei gergátse*, “if his younger brothers had not made a conspiracy, caught him, and given him up to the king, the king would have been wrath.”

§. 319. This full form, however, is not always used, and we often find a condition expressed either by *tšā* or by *kwōya* alone—

*tšā rīnemīa, pērōte ni pándemba?* “wouldest thou have had this girl if thou hadst feared?”

*yimte kaláni yetséskī kwōya, wu kōángā*, “if on that day I had killed myself, I should have been a man.”

*tšā tátānēmtē kánnuyē tšétsīa, wu rúskīa, dábūnem kámgin*, “if the fire kill thy child, and I see it, I will cut thy throat.”

*atēmā tamānem kwōya, wúa nyúa sóbāndéte pártseyē*, “if thou intendest this, we shall dissolve our friendship.”

*nānēmō tšyendé kwōya, nígā ntšéte*, “if we had not come to thee, he would have killed thee.”

*rúmīa, ni šīgā rágemī kwōya, nírō lemán `gúburō ntšéinō*, “when thou hast seen him, he will give thee plenty of goods if thou lovest him.”

§. 320. In the instances here given, *tšā* and *kwōya* are of exactly the same force, but sometimes they differ in use; for *tšā* can also stand for a condition fulfilled, or a ground, a cause, which is never the case with *kwōya*—

*tšā ándi déte tsānei andirō sádi*, “as we were naked, they gave us cloth.”

*tšā ni gálifüté, wu nígā logónjin*, "as thou art rich, I beg of thee."

§. 321. It is very rarely the case that *tšā* introduces both the condition and the consequence, *tša—tšā* then corresponding to our "if—then"—

*tšā nándi wúrō bínāseguwí kwōya, tšā wu mánāni mbétšiba?*  
"if ye had not helped me, would I then have a word to say now?"

*tšā ši kámuntsurō gúltsení kwōya, álegā állábéte, ndúyē tšā mána kámāntsíbē pántšín*, "if he had not told it to his wife, then of the whole creation of God every one would now understand the language of the other."

§. 322. But the particle which more frequently introduces the chief proposition, after a condition with *tšā-kwōya*, is *kóá*. The fullest form then of a conditional preposition appears to be this, when the condition is introduced by *tšā-kwōya*, and the consequence by *kóá*—

*ni wúrō kámū ndíté nígalā ganí neminté, tšā nígalā ganí kwōya, komándē kóá andírō gúlusāniba?* "as thou tellest me that two wives are not good, would not our Lord then have told it to us if they were not good?"

*tšā bēlāndēn wurányēna dúgō pátkgíē kwōya, kóá nígāsō nón-yēna*, "if we had grown up in our country before we were lost, then we should know all."

*tšā ni wúgā bóbōnēmī kwōya, bísgā kóá nānēmō tšeskī*, "if thou hadst called me, I would have come to thee yesterday."

*tšā búrgōn táta kóāngā wúrō tsámbo kwōya, kóá bánōni tsémāgi múskōnyín*, "if she would at first have borne me a male child, then it would have taken my hoe out of my hand."

§. 323. Of the remaining conjunctions which may require some remarks, we will first take those of an enclitic or suffixal character, and then those which maintain a more independent position.

The enclitic *genya*, the same in form and doubtless in origin with the interrogative character, §. 279., is a deflected form of the verb, just as our "except," with which it coincides in force and position—

*sándi úgu genya, kām gadé nótšimba sai ulla?* "can any other persons besides these five know it except God?"

*ši genya, kām wókítāngem áte karátsanna bágō,* "there will not be any body able to read thy letter except he."

*wúma nāntsúrō léngskin genya, ši wólte tsádeni,* "except I go to him, he will not return and come to me."

*komándē genya, kāmýē tamísse dátsanni,* "our Lord excepted, no man would ever have finished counting it."

*táta tilō genya tsasámbāni,* "they had but one child."

*ágō dégaté genya kām rítšena bágō,* "he does not fear any body, except these four things."

§. 324. Just as the English conjunction "that" and the German "dass," were originally pronouns; so also in Kanuri the pronoun *te* is converted into a conjunction, vide also §. 173.

*sándi nótšāni, búltu kómbuntsārō kádióté,* "they did not know that the hyena had come to eat them."

*ulla šigā kolótsim bágōte ni nónemmba?* "dost thou not know that God will never forsake him?"

*pánem pándem námne mmāté, wu rōníyē tšerágē,* "my own soul likes that thou shouldst get a house for thyself and dwell there."

*abánnemmō gúllé ágō tséde tšimérenáté,* "tell thy father what to do that he may recover."

§. 325. The conjunction *ya* is suffixed to the predicate only, and then can be temporal as well as conditional, answering to our "when" and "if."

*ni mána pánem bágō kwōya, fúgū áten wu pátom bágōya, kōáingā gadé bóbōnem,* "if thou dost not hearken to my word; and, in future, when I am not at home callest another man."

*kām kámtse árgem `gúbūa mbétsiya, létse, kásurō gótšin,* "if

one has an acquaintance who has much guinea-corn, he goes and borrows.”

*kóu bēlāma Tsarāmi Dáduima kóandéya lárē, kúra bēla Dáduibē kóandéya, lárē*, “if the governor of Dadui, the son of Sarah, be our husband, we shall rejoice; if the chief of the town of Dadui be our husband, we shall rejoice.”

*ájima nígā ntsébándenu bágōya, ni wúgā kósemī*, “if nothing befall thee, thou surpassest me.”

§. 326. A merely assumed or possible condition is expressed by *yāye*, which attaches itself to the particular word represented as doubtful, and has to be rendered in English—

1. By “whether”—

*šima kóatē tšétsō yāye, kú nándi nígásō nótsoú*, “to-day ye all shall know whether he killed the man.”

*mána yántsiyē abántsurō nemētseginginté ši pántsi yāye nótšaní*, “they did not know whether he had understood the word which his mother had spoken to his father.”

*búmi yāye kām nótseña bágō, búmmí yāye kām nótseña bágō*, “whether he has eaten, no one knows; and whether he has not eaten, no one knows.”

2. By “even if, although”—

*Bórnu nígásō dátšinyāye, wu Fuláta kal tšígagani*, “even if all Bornu should be ruined, I shall not follow the Pulo rascals.”

*kárgunmā nígásō tsei yāye, kárguntséte nótsei bágō*, “although all the doctors should come, they do not know a medicine for it.”

*karánem kitábū dīniabē nígásō dátši yāye, kárgenēmtē tsélam kwōya, ni tsánnā pándem bágō*, “although thou have read all the books in the world, if thy heart be black thou shalt not obtain heaven.”

§. 327. When the adverb *átē* is governed by a verb, it becomes converted into a conjunction, and answers to our “lest.”

*berníte sandírō kolónyē, átē kóganāndē nígásō Fulátayē, tšétsē*

*dátseni*, “let us leave the capital to them, lest the Phula completely kill all our soldiers.”

*are lényē, áte ām pátoḃē tšítsāni*, “come and let us go, lest the people of the house rise up.”

§. 328. Some adverbial forms of the demonstrative pronoun are used as consequential conjunctions, viz. *átemā*, *átemárō*, and *átemān*. They always take their place at the head of the proposition which contains the effect or consequence; as.

*pátō meibēn náptšinté, átemā ágō kárgeñiyē wátse kidiskō*, “because they have sat down in the king’s residence, therefore I have done what my heart did not like.”

*ńgō, Fulátasō wókita tsebágeda wírō, átemárō wu nandígā bóbōntsaskē*, “behold the Phula have sent me a letter, therefore I called you all.”

*Fuláta sándi ńgalā ganí, átemān mei Tšígāḃē kálāntse gógēda*, “the Phula are not good, therefore they supported the king of Tshiga.”

*mei Tšíga sandírō agō ńgalā tsédin; tsapádgī sándi kerínyā, átemān búrgōn Deiatēn krígurō Fulátasōyē badítsa*, “the Tshiga king had favoured them; therefore when they saw that he had been killed, the Phula began a war in Deia for the first time.”

§. 329. As *átemárō* introduces a natural consequence, so the adversative conjunction *áteyāye* or *áteyaéřō*, by silently annulling the natural consequence, introduces the opposite of what the preceding proposition would have led one to expect—

*wu kátsalla kríqibē; áteyāye krígurō tšíngīa, léngīa, kríqēten šesšōsō nónqanā kwōya, wu pányin tšíngē krígurō létsganí*, “I am a chief officer of war; yet if I should rise to go to war, and should know that they were going to kill me in that war, I would never rise at home and go to war.”

*ni mei abáni, wu meiram, ágō rágēsḡana diskín; áteyaéřō kóāni sóbānem, kátsalla kríqibē neminté, šímā wu meíya rágēsḡō*, “thou art my father the king; I am a princess

and do what I like; nevertheless I wish he were king who is my husband, thy friend, whom thou callest war-general."

*káliāye, úgō rāgésqana dískin pánemín, kómbū rāgésqana búskin, níkí rāgésqana yéskin; áteyaérō, wu belánden fúnōnyúa, dā gádubē wúgā sétia, kímēlni yéskē, dígallílan bóngē, átemā rāgésqō, kónō káliāye abántsurō,* "the slave said to his master, I do in thy house whatever I like, I eat food when I like, I drink water when I like; but in spite of this I should like to have merely a waist-cloth, and, having eaten enough hog-meat, to drink beer, and to sleep on my bed, provided it were in our own country."

§. 330. The conjunction *rā* corresponds to our "or," and is placed between the two words which are represented as exclusive of one another; as,

*áfí yífum, kánī rā dími?* "what didst thou buy, a goat or a sheep?"

*ndú ntšō, kámū rā kōa?* "who gave it thee, a woman or a man?"

*muskóji átsege, dul lā bíge?* "which hand did he stretch out, the right or the left?"

§. 331. The use of some conjunctions is avoided in Kanuri by employing other forms—

1. "And" is avoided by a kind of encasement of propositions one in the other—

*nírō tséskē gulntséskē,* "I come and tell thee of it."

*andígā tsé násga,* "may he come and meet us."

*ām wúra "sandígā lényē párnien," tsa,* "the great men said, Let us go and separate them."

*šéareāye šírō ndísō tsémāge kéinō,* "the court took both and gave them to him."

2. "If" is avoided by the use of the conjunctive—

*nírō mána tilō gulntséskia tsídembá?* "if I tell thee a thing, wilt thou do it?"

*wúrō kálgā tilō šimīa wúgā sėti*, “if he give me one shirt, I am satisfied.”

3. “Also” is avoided by the verb *wólteškin*—

*málam goní mána tátabē pántši* ; *pāngányā, wólte, pērōga kigorō*, “the reverend priest heard the boy’s words : and having heard them, he also asked the girl.”

*sóbāntsę lāfiántę kimāgényā, šiyē wólte, sóbāntsęgā kigorō*  
“when his friend had accepted his salutation, he also inquired of his friend.”

*álam mēogu ndurí bóbōtsę, nāntsúrō ísei* ; *kúrū wólte kóganā bérnibē ngāsō bóbōtsę*, “he called the twelve regiments to come to him ; he also called all the soldiers of the capital.”

§. 332. But besides this, we also find examples in Kanuri of phrases which omit the conjunction, where, in English, we should insert it. Thus we find omitted—

1. “And” between several verbs closely following each other ; *e.g.*

*šírō gállé, wólte, létę, sabarátę, íę, nígāndē díyē*, “tell him to turn, go, get ready, and come, that we may perform the marriage.”

*ši mána sóbāntsibē pántsę, létę, kámuntsūa pántsān náptsei*, “he heard the word of his friend, went, and he with his wife sat down in their house.”

*wu tšínęskē, nānémō kádiskō, nírō gúlturō*, “I arose and came to thee, to tell thee of it.”

2. “That” may be omitted in all its various capacities ; *viz.*—

*a.* As the propositional article or conjunction before propositions dependent on “*verba sentiendi et declarandi*” = *ὄτι*—

*léttši tsā*, “they thought that he slept.”

*kúyuiyē tsábū dātši, nándi rúba?* “do you see that the fowls have eaten it?”

*sándi wu búrgōn sandigā kóngana nōtsānī,* “they did not know that I surpassed them in sense.”

*keígamā mei tsúlvū pāngányā,* “when the general had heard that the king had come out.”

*yíntēmā nōgōnō, kōāntse búrgōwa,* “then she knew that her husband was cunning.”

b. As expressing a purpose, end, or object=ὥς, ἵνα—

*ándi níró per ntšiyē, létsam,* “we will give thee a horse, that thou mayest go.”

*komándē wūgā sūnotō, mína gulntsáškē,* “our Lord has sent me, that I should tell you a word.”

*nā ganá šē, nemní témgē,* “give me a little space, that I may build a house for myself.”

*sóbānémmō gulgěškē, níró mátsē,* “I will tell it to thy friend, that he may seek it for thee.”

c. As expressing a consequence=ὥστε—

*áfi tsédē, kibándō, wu nōnesgani,* “what he did so as to get it, I know not.”

*wúrō nā šē bóngē,* “give me a place, so that I may sleep.”

*šim tátabē baktse kitúlugō,* “he smote the boy’s eye, so that it came out,” *i.e.* “he smote the boy’s eye out.”

*neírō níkí ntšédō tšau,* “she will give you water, so that ye may drink,” *i.e.* “water to drink.”

4. “Except,” “but,” or “but that,” is often omitted after negatives, especially *gadé* with a negative—

*ši tsánei ilíjima wátši, kátigī kamáunbē tserágō,* “she dislikes any kind of cloth, but the elephant-hide she likes.”

*kómბū naniga gani kádiskō, ní naniga kádiskō,* “I did not come for the sake of food, but for thy sake.”



*ši nā gáden náptšin bágō, tsúrō kēnderbēn náptšin*, "it never sits down in any other place, except within the cotton shrub."

*tsúrō tsígāben ágō gadé tilōma bágō, ngāsō búrgō*, "there was nothing else in the bag, but pure sense."

*áte sandirō manáǵemmi, wu nírō manáǵené, neškia, ni sandirō manáǵené*, "do not speak to them, except when I tell thee to do so."

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### FIGURES OF SPEECH.

#### I. *Ellipsis*.

§. 333. The *ellipsis* is not uncommon in Kanuri, and consists in the omission of—

#### 1. Certain substantives—

*ágō*, "thing, matter :—" *kábete kátsi, báli júgun áte gadé jókkemmi*, "the matter of to-day is passed; do it no more in future."

*níyē dā, gónǵemmayē dā, nándi ndísō dāni*, "thou art meat, and what thou hast taken is meat; both of you are meat for me."

*dúgō állayē tsédinté ándi ruíyogō*, "till we may see what God will do."

*ítī*, "kind, sort :—" *kálgū wāsilibē gadi rúwā*, "if you see a shirt like that of the white man's :—" compare *kálgū íli wāsilibē gadi bágō*, "there was no shirt like that of the white man's."

*káǵentse* : *masenántsa dǵtse, abántsi bē tšō*, "she cooks their food, and gives her father his," *i. q.* *abántsi bē káǵentse sírō tšō*.

*kām, kōa*, “man:” *lēgedányā, jūguēbmātiyē n̄gebał n̄ḡgibē tsúrūnī, kótši; kádūgubētiyē n̄gebałtégā tsúrui*, “when they went, the foremost one did not see the pigeon’s eggs; but the one behind saw the eggs.”

*kārā*, “reading:” *lukránbē dāgányā, wúrō abāniyē kidā s̄kkēli*, “the reading of the Koran being over, my father taught me work.”

*kidā*, “work:” *kōābē tsūlugī, wóntē kágenem gáptse*, “the man’s work is over, now thine remains.”

*labár*, “news:” *wúrō tságūtē gúlesgēgányā*, “when they had brought the news and told it to me.”

*lókte*, “time:” *tégamnyin kámtābē kītēnyā*, “when it had arrived at the time to be weaned.”

*lókte bāmbābē kilugényā, Fulátābē kargágō*, “when the time of the plague had passed, the time of the Phula set in.”

*nā*, “place:” *sándiyē, abándōberō kās̄yē*, “they said, We came to your father’s place.”

*sā*, “time:” *sáfi k̄ogutō? Lēngmmāten k̄ogutō*, “at what time did they bring it? At the time when thou wast gone they brought it.”

## 2. Personal pronouns—

*nirō mās̄ena mán̄gē, tatoán̄emma b̄u*, “I seek food for thee, that thou and thy children may eat it.”

*kádīwa t̄š̄tsa, b̄ela kádībērō lét̄sa*, for *š̄yúa kádīwa &c.*, “he and the serpent arose, and went to the serpent’s town.”

*s̄bānts̄úa nābḡēda*, “he and his friend sat down.”

*mālam fūgun, mei n̄ḡáfon t̄sa, Fulátāwa k̄lā f̄óktsei*, “they came, the priest before and the king after, and met the Phula.”

## 3. Verbs: see also §. 242.—

*alla bārgāndō*, “a curse;” *i. q. alla bārgāndō ḡótsē*, “may God take his blessing from you.”

II. *Absolutism and Pleonasm.*

§. 334. *Absolutism* arises if a word, instead of occupying its regular place, is abruptly introduced at the beginning of a proposition, and is represented in its proper place by the corresponding pronoun if it is a substantive, or by the corresponding finite verb if it is an infinitive. The purpose of the absolute use of a word is, to mark emphasis or a contrast; but as this figure of speech is employed very freely in Kanuri, its peculiar force may sometimes be so weakened as to be entirely lost, in which case the representative word may be considered as a *pleonasm*. The absolute word is frequently distinguished by the demonstrative pronoun *tɛ*, *atɛ*; and may be either the subject, or the object, or a verb, or a more subordinate part in the proposition.

1. Absolutism of the *subject* (pleonasm)—

*kóá*, *šyúa kámuntsúá nem<sup>ɛ</sup> nem<sup>ɛ</sup>tšedāna nótšāní*; *kóá tsáneima*, *ši* “*tsáneini ladžski kélfurō*,” *tɛ*, “the man, he and his wife had not a word to say; the cloth-owner, he said, I have sold my cloth for natron.”

*dáǵel*, *sándi nótšāní*, “the monkeys knew it not.”

*kām kárǵe nguláwáté kām kárǵe búlwáté*, *šíma tsánnā tšebándin*. *Kárǵeté*, *šíma kām kánnurō tsátin*, *šíma kām tsánnārō tsátin*, “one with a good heart, one with a white heart, he obtains heaven. The heart, it carries one to hell, and it carries one to heaven.”

*ágō ǵéđintše bágōtɛ nem<sup>ɛ</sup>rō*, *ši áram*, “to relate any thing which has no foundation is aram (unclean).”

*kām kánadīwa*, *šíma wágé tsánnārō ǵáǵin*, “the meek man, he will enter into heaven in the next world.”

*kām lemán ngúbuáté*, *ši nuíya*, *wágé*, *yim tšinógōben*, *ndúyē tšitšéíya*, *kóá lemánma pátō tsánnābē ši tšebándin bágō*, “the man of much wealth when he dies, then in the next world, on the day of resurrection when all will rise—then the man of wealth will not obtain a heavenly home.”

2. Absolutism of the *object* (pleonasm)—

*kām andīgā kōsanāté, wu tšīņeskē kū, lēņeskē, šīgā tšúruskō,*  
 “as to the man who surpasses us I will rise to-day,  
 and go and see him.”

*dal, nātēman búltiyē šīgā kolótsē,* “then the hyena left  
 the buck.”

*sándi nigásō, kēnyēri sandīgā búrgōn kótsēna,* “the weasel  
 surpasses them all in sense.”

*kāmū kásuwāyē, šīgā tsétei,* “a sickness took hold of the  
 woman.”

*kāmpigīntšésganāté, ni wúgā tšírēn kósemī,* “as for me  
 who denied thee, thou exceedest me in truth.”

*wu, mei wúgā súnōtē,* “the king sent me.”

We may also regard it as a pleonasm when, although the objective conjugation of a verb unmistakably indicates the pronominal object, the latter is separately expressed—

*nīgā meiyē ntsugōrīa,* “the king having sent thee.”

*ši nīgā ntsúrui,* “he saw thee.”

*ni wúgā kómbān kósemīn nēm,* “thou thinkest that thou  
 surpassesest me in eating.”

3. Absolutism of the *subject* and *object*—

*tútāté, kōāngā šīgā tsámbunāté, kām ŋgalā šīgā tsámbō,*  
 “as for this boy and the man who has begotten him,  
 a good man has begotten him.”

4. Absolutism of the *verb*—

*kēndiōnīte, wīgā álla sunōtē kádīskō,* “as for my coming,  
 God sent me, so I came.”

## 5. Absolutism occurs especially in connection with possessive pronouns, the word or words to which they refer being abruptly placed before them, cf. §. 159.

*a.* By this means the use of the genitive is frequently avoided, particularly at the beginning of a narrative—

*kāmū dīniāma, yīmpisō kōāntsīyē šírō,* “the husband  
 of a certain loose woman said every day to her.”

*káliātē, tsántse wu rágesganāté, málammo gúllógō,* "tell the priest the name of this slave whom I like."

*tátántseté, tsántse Dúnōma,* "his son's name was Dunoma."

*kām lága, kāmū méogu pántsen 'bétši,* "in some man's house are ten wives."

- b. Words are sometimes used absolutely, with the apparent design of pointing out the precise persons to whom a plural form refers—

*wúa nyúa, ndúndē lemánwāgō?* "which of us is more wealthy, I or thou?"

*wúa nyúa nemsóbāndē kētšiši,* "pleasant is our friendship, the one between me and thee."

*wúte sandite, abántsa wa wúa, ába tīlō šasámbo,* "as for me and them, one father has begotten their father and me."

- c. Sometimes the absolute word appears to be purely pleonastic—

*wu, kāmūni kómāndébé tseřámbi,* "my wife has paid the Lord."

*ši, mána bīndi káragābeyē manātsēya, mána manātsanāté ši pántšin,* "when the beasts of the forest spoke, he understood the words which they spoke."

6. The absolute word sometimes occupies the exact place of a *genitive*—

*kōángā kām 'dí, túlō tšítse,* "of two men, one arose."

*tatoántse ndi, tīlō dal tīlō kqálágō,* "of her two kids one was male and one female."

*tširē yásgete, tīlō nemēnemī, ndi gáptse,* "of the three truths, thou hast told one and two remain."

*nāndi kām pīndi degáwī yāye, nigāsō, tīlōma kolótšim bágō,* "though you may be twenty, yet of all it will not leave one."

*kímilntse, tšibi tilō gótsē*, "he takes one calabash of beer for himself."

### III. Apposition.

§. 335. When *apposition* occurs in Kanuri, the case-terminations and all other suffixes are only appended to the last word in apposition, although they logically belong to the preceding words as well.

In reference to the location of the case-terminations, see §. 154.—

*kánemte, ši bárba, wágā gósgonō*, "sleep has taken me as a thief."

*Bornáuten ágō, sóbātē, ši kúra*, "in Bornu the thing friendship is great."

*šyáa sóbántse, kéréwa*, "he and his friend, the heathen."

*neméntse pányē, tātānembē*, "we will hear its word, thy child's."

We must especially notice the use of apposition in connexion with *proper names*. Here the Kanuri, like the German, seldom uses the genitive of apposition. Accordingly, in connecting the proper with the common names of towns, countries, and months, it differs from the English; while in speaking of rivers, titles, &c., the two languages agree; as,

*nā keigamāberō, bēla Tsagaláriturō tsei*, "they came to the generalissimo's place, the town of *Tsagalári*."

*kášagartē meina Ibrámmō wu yiskī*, "this sword I have given to the prince Abraham."

*bēla Atšášerō sógūtē*, "they brought me to the town of *Atšáše*."

*tši kúlugū Dábalambéten námnogō*, "wait ye at the fording-place of the river *Dábalam*."

*bēla Káluáuten náptsā*, "they remained in the town of *Káluā*."

*átē régem ām yā Mamadibētē*, "this is the portion of the people of brother Muhammad."

*tsúntse málam 'Isa*, "his name is priest Jesus."

*lóktété málam Láminuyē ši bēlāntse Kánemnyin nábgata*, "at that time was priest Laminu dwelling in his country, Kanem."

*Lárde Bórñū kúra*, "the land of Bornu is large."

*wu kántāge Rátsa pátiguskō*, "I was lost on the month of Ratsab."

It must be remarked, however, that the proper names of lands and months are sometimes found in the genitive, as in English—

*tsēdi Deíabē ngásō Fulátayē tsémāgi*, "the Phula took the whole country of Deia."

*tsēdi Afunóbēn wu pāngóskō*, "I heard it in the land of Hausa.

*kántāge 'Atšibē šima burgógō*, "the month of Atshi is the first."

#### IV. Collectives.

§. 336. A number of objects, considered as one compact whole, is often expressed by a word in the singular, *i. e.* a collective noun, "especially the locusts and the Pulo warriors," as one can also say in German, "sie haben den Türken geschlagen," &c.—

*káji kámanwa, yim ši íšinte, Pótēn tšítse Gédírō íšin*, "at the time when the Kamanwa locusts come, they rise in the west and come to the east."

*ándi šigā ngúburō, teiyē*, "we caught them (the locusts) in great number."

*ngō Fuláta nānémō lebálarō íšin*, "behold the Phula come to thee for fight."

*Wádai kríge tsúgūte*, "the Wadais brought war."

*wu Bórñun námganáté, Fuláta Bórñun tšítse, tsēdi Bórñubē ngásō krígen tártse*, "when I lived in Bornu, the Phula arose in Bornu, and desolated the whole Bornu country by war."

V. *Abstractum pro concreto.*

§. 337. An instance of this is supplied by the word *kríḡe*, "war"—

*mei Wádaibē mártēge, kríḡe wúró tsubátse ! wúró kríḡe tsubá-tseni kwōya, kōa málam Láminū áte nányin kērmei mógō tserágena*, "may the king of Wadai be pleased to send me warriors ! if he does not send me warriors, this priest Laminu wishes to take the kingdom from me."

*kríḡe tsáptsā lēgēda*, "they assembled the warriors and went."

VI. *Anakoluthon.*

§. 338. *Anakolutha*, or sentences concluding differently from what their beginning leads one to expect, are now and then met with in Ali's narrations ; *e.g.*

*kámāntsiyē : ni, kómāndēte mánāndēte pānigányā, ṅgalāyē gúl-tseni dibiyē gúltseni, kédeg nēmtsē, nāndēn, tšitsenāté, ágō kārḡentsen degánā, áudi nōnyēba ?* "his companion replied, As for thee, our Lord having heard our word, did not tell us whether it was good, or whether it was bad, but kept his peace, could we know then what was in his heart when he rose from our place?"

*šiyē, "ām wúra, sōbāni áte, ágō wúró tsédenāté, kām tšidēna mbétsi kwōya—wu nemēnḡskē, pānógō," kónō tátayē ām wúráwō,* "the boy said to the great men, Ye great men, if there is any one who may do what this my friend has done for me : I will narrate it to you, hear it."

VII. *Hendiadys.*

§. 339. There is a sort of *hendiadys* in the following junction—

1. Of *kámgin* and *kōngin*—

*ṅgalī ndi kámtsē kōgányā*, "two years having passed by." *ṅgúdō fāribē kámtsa kótseiya, nemétsēiya, nemé nemétsa-nāté ši pāntšin*, "when the birds of the air passed by, and spoke, he understood the speech which they spoke."



3. Of *kúrū* and *wóbigin* = “also, again”—

*táta p̄rō kesāmbúngā, kúrū wólta, k̄ngalī tsasámbī; k̄ngalī kesāmbúnyā, kúrū wólta, táta p̄rō tsasámbī*, “when they had begotten a girl, they also begat a boy; and when they had begotten a boy, they again begat a girl.”

*kúrū wólte, nemé t̄lō bad̄iyonō*, “again he began another saying.”

VIII. *Synecdoche.*

§. 340. It is not uncommon in Kanuri to put a *part for the whole*. This takes place through the use of the following words, which are more impressive than a mere pronoun—

*kálā*, “head:” *ndúyē kálántse āmpátse*, “let every one mind himself.”

*wu kálāni rāgēsana*, “I love myself.”

*áte kálānem yētsemmi*, “do not kill thyself.”

*kárgē*, “heart:” *kām lága mána kitábubē pántšia, kárgents̄iyē tsoúrō wátsena; kām lága, mána kitábubē pántšia, kárgents̄iyē tsoúrō tserágena*, “some person hearing (having heard) the word of the book, strongly dislikes it; and some person hearing the word of the book, loves it ardently.”

*rō*, “life, soul:” *ágō rōnemyē tserágenáté wu n̄rō kúskī*, “I have brought thee what thou likest.”

*áji rōnemyē tserágō wúgā bóbōsgam?* “what didst thou want, that thou calledst me?”

*šim*, “eye:” *bānts̄éte šimnyē tsúrūni kwōya, kásuāté wúgā kolóšim bágō*, “if I do not see his blood, this sickness will not leave me.”

*tsúrō*, “belly:” *sóbāntse táta tsúrōnts̄ibē tsétā*, “his friend took his own son.”

IX. *Nomina conjugata.*

§. 341. Verbs are not unfrequently followed by nouns of kindred meaning (*nomina conjugata*) in the accusative. This happens—

1. When the notion of the finite verb requires to be more clearly defined—

*sabarātē krīgibē sabarāta*, “they made preparation for a war.”

*kandīra lētē ŋūdōbē lētšin*, “the hunter walked the walk of birds,” *i. e.* “as birds walk.”

2. When the “*nomen conjugatum*” expresses the objective result of the finite verb—

*kanāsinni átē našingānātē wu léneškē, gédintse, tšíruskō*,  
“I will go and see the meaning of this my dream which I have had.”

*mána manátsanātē ši pántšin*, “he understood the saying (word) which they said.”

*Átē dátši.*















U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C046967746

